# PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design
4th Edition
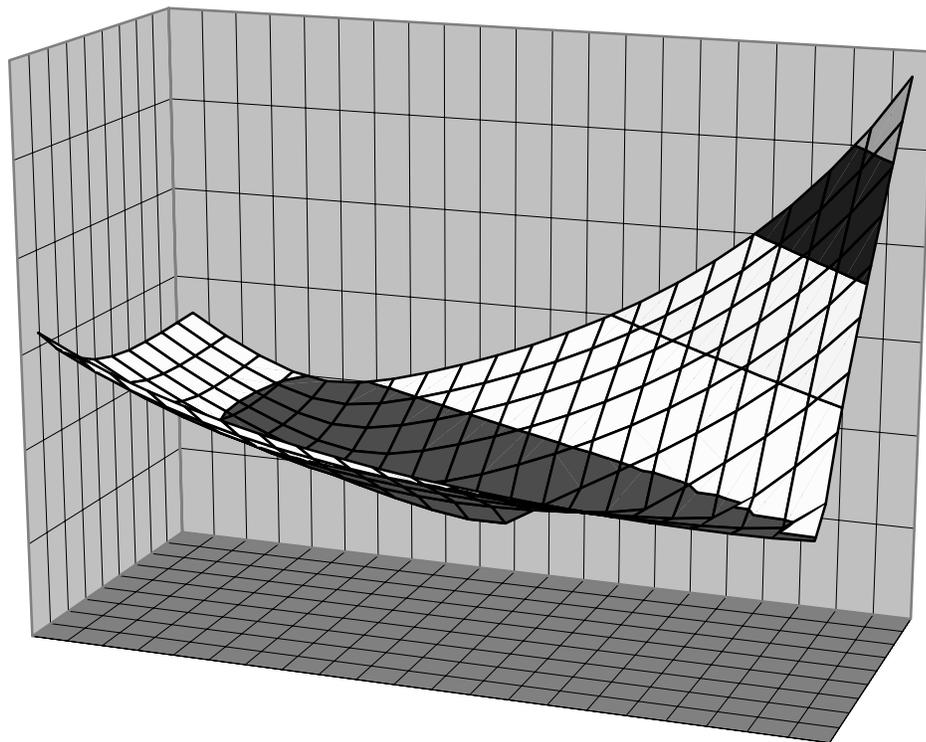
Dean Banerjee

To Nancy, Caleb, Olivia, and Anabelle

**"Make Everything as Simple as Possible, but not Simpler."**

- **Albert Einstein**

Credits

I would like to thank the following people for their assistance in making this book possible. Some of these people helped directly with things like editing and cover design, while others have helped in indirect ways like useful everyday conversation and creating things that helped me grow in my understanding of PLLs.

Person	Editing			Useful Insights
	2nd Ed.	3rd Ed.	4th Ed.	
Boaz Aizenshtark	-	-	X	Pointed out a math error with filter coefficient, A2.
Deborah Brown	X	-	-	Thorough editing from cover to cover
Bill Burdette	X	-	-	
Robert Hickley	-	-	X	
Stephen Hoffman	-	X		
John Johnson	X	X	X	Special thanks to John Johnson for doing the cover design for the 3rd Edition and thorough editing from cover to cover. John also did a lot of the illustrations
Yuko Kanagy	-	-	-	Useful insights into PLLs
Bill Keese	-	-	-	Wrote National Semiconductor Application Note 1001, which was my first introduction to loop filter design.
Tom Mathews	-	-	X	Useful insights into RF phenomena and VCOs.
Shigura Matsuda	X	-	-	Translation into Japanese.
Khang Nguyen	-	-	-	Developed the GUI for EasyPLL at wireless.national.com that is based on many of the formulas in this book.
Tien Pham	-	X	-	Cover to cover editing.
Ahmed Salem	-	X	-	
Devin Seely	-	-	X	Editing for some chapters
Ian Thompson	-	-	-	Useful insights into PLLs, particularly phase noise and how it is impacted by the discrete sampling action of the phase detector.
Timothy Toroni	-	-	-	Developed a TCL interface for many of my simulation routines in C that proved to be very useful.
Benyong Zhang	-	X		Useful insights into delta-sigma PLLs in general and the LMX2470 in particular.

Preface
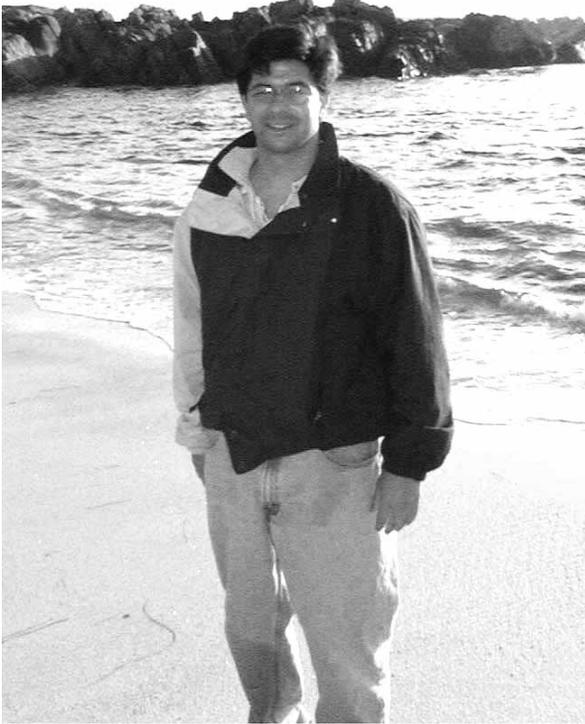
I first became familiar with PLLs by working for National Semiconductor as an applications engineer. While supporting customers, I noticed that there were many repeat questions. Instead of creating the same response over and over, it made more sense to create a document, worksheet, or program to address these recurring questions in greater detail and just re-send the file. From all of these documents, worksheets, and programs, this book was born.

Many questions concerning PLLs can be answered through a greater understanding of the problem and the mathematics involved. By approaching problems in a rigorous mathematical way one gains a greater level of understanding, a greater level of satisfaction, and the ability to apply the concepts learned to other problems.

Many of the formulas that are commonly used for PLL design and simulation contain gross approximations with no or little justification of how they were derived. Others may be rigorously derived, but from outdated textbooks that make assumptions not true of the PLL systems today. It is therefore no surprise that there are so many rules of thumb to be born which yield unreliable results. Another fault of these formulas is that many of them have not been compared to measured data to ensure that they account for all relevant factors.

There is also the approach of not trusting formulas enough and relying on only measured results. The fault with this is that many great insights are lost and it is difficult to learn and grow in PLL knowledge this way. Furthermore, by knowing what a result should theoretically be, it makes it easier to spot and diagnose problems with a PLL circuit. This book takes a unique approach to PLL design by combining rigorous mathematical derivations for formulas with actual measured data. When there is agreement between these two, then one can feel much more confident with the results.

The fourth edition of this book adds a lot of information about partially integrated loop filters and oscillators, as well as cleaning up some minor mistakes in the third edition.

Table of Contents

PLL Basics

Chapter 1   Basic PLL Overview

Figure 1.1 The Basic PLL

Basic PLL Operation and Terminology

The **PLL** (Phase-Locked Loop) starts with a stable crystal reference frequency (**XTAL**). The **R** counter divides this frequency to a lower one, which is called the comparison frequency (**Fcomp**). This is one of the inputs to the phase detector. The phase-frequency detector outputs a current that has an average value that is proportional to the phase error between the comparison frequency and the output frequency, after it is divided by the **N** divider. The constant of proportionality is called **Kϕ**. This constant turns out to be the magnitude of the current that the charge pump can source or sink. Although it is technically correct to divide this term by 2π, it is unnecessary since it is canceled out by another factor of 2π which comes from the VCO gain for all of the equations in this book. So technically, the units of **Kϕ** are expressed in mA/(2π radians).

If one takes this average DC current value from the phase detector and multiplies it by the impedance of the loop filter, **Z(s)**, then the input voltage to the **VCO** (Voltage Controlled Oscillator) can be found.   The VCO is a voltage to frequency converter and has a proportionality constant of **Kvco**. Note that the loop filter is a low pass filter, that is often implemented with discrete components. The loop filter is application specific, and much of this book is devoted to the loop filter. This tuning voltage adjusts the output phase of the VCO, such that its phase, when divided by **N**, is equal to the phase of the comparison frequency. Since phase is the integral of frequency, this implies that the frequencies will also be matched, and the output frequency will be given by:

$$Fout = \frac{N}{R} \bullet XTAL \tag{1.1}$$

This applies only when the PLL is in the locked state; this does not apply during the time when the PLL is acquiring a new frequency. For a given application, **R** is typically fixed, and the **N** value can easily be changed. If one assumes that **N** and **R** must be an integer, then this implies that the PLL can only generate frequencies that are a multiple of **Fcomp**. For this reason, many people think that **Fcomp** and the channel spacing are the same. Although this is often the case, this is not necessarily true. For a fractional N PLL, **N** is not restricted

to an integer, and therefore the comparison frequency can be chosen to be much larger than the channel spacing. There are also less common cases in which the comparison frequency is chosen smaller than the channel spacing to overcome restrictions on the allowable values of N, due to the prescaler. In general, it is preferable to have the comparison frequency as high as possible for optimum performance.

Note that the term PLL technically refers to the entire system shown in Figure 1.1 ; however, sometimes it is meant to refer to the entire system except for the crystal and VCO. This is because these components are difficult to integrate on a PLL synthesizer chip.

The transfer function from the output of the R counter to the output of the VCO determines a lot of the critical performance characteristics of the PLL. The closed loop bandwidth of this system is referred to as the loop bandwidth (Fc), which is an important parameter for both the design of the loop filter and the performance of the PLL. Note that Fc will be used to refer to the loop bandwidth in Hz and ωc will be used to refer to the loop bandwidth in radians. Another parameter, phase margin (ϕ), refers to 180 degrees minus the phase of the open loop phase transfer function from the output of the R counter to the output of the VCO. The phase margin is evaluated at the frequency that is equal to the loop bandwidth. This parameter has less of an impact on performance than the loop bandwidth, but still does have a significant impact and is a measure of the stability of the system.

Phase noise, Spurs, and Lock Time

Phase noise, spurs, and lock time are important performance . Phase noise is related to the power of the noise of the PLL. The parameter that has the largest impact on the phase noise is the N counter value. The smaller this value is, the better the phase noise should be because the N counter value multiplies the noise. Another parameter is spurs. This is noise energy that is focused at discrete offset frequencies from the carrier. Lock time is the amount of the PLL takes to change frequencies when the N counter value is changed. In later chapters, these concepts will be covered in much more detail, but for now, these rudimentary definitions will suffice.

Example of a PLL Being Used as a Frequency Synthesizer

The PLL has been around for many decades. Some of its earlier applications included keeping power generators in phase and synchronizing to the sync pulse in a TV Set. Still other applications include recovering a clock from asynchronous data and demodulating an FM modulated signal. Although these are legitimate applications of the PLL, the primary ocus of this book is the use of a PLL as a frequency synthesizer.

In this type of application, the PLL is used to generate a set of discrete frequencies. A good example of this is FM radio. In FM radio, the valid stations range from 88 to 108 MHz, and are spaced 0.1 MHz apart. The PLL generates a frequency that is 10.7 MHz less than the desired channel, since the received signal is mixed with the PLL signal to always generate an IF (Intermediate Frequency) of 10.7 MHz. Therefore, the PLL generates frequencies ranging from 77.3 MHz to 97.3 MHz. The channel spacing would be equal to the comparison frequency, which would is 100 kHz.

A fixed crystal frequency of 10 MHz can be divided by an R value of 100 to yield a

comparison frequency of 100 kHz. Then the *N* value ranging from 773 to 973 is programmed into the PLL. If the user is listening to a station at 99.3 MHz and decides to change the channel to 103.4 MHz, then the *R* value remains at 100, but the *N* value changes from 886 to 927. The performance of the radio will be impacted by the spectral purity of the PLL signal produced and also the time it takes for the PLL to switch frequencies.

Chapter 2   The Charge Pump PLL with a Passive Loop Filter

Introduction

The phase detector is a device that converts the differences in the two phases from the N counter and the R counter into an output voltage. Depending on the technology, this output voltage can either be applied directly to the loop filter, or converted to a current by the charge pump.

The Voltage Phase Detector without a Charge Pump

This type of phase detector outputs a voltage directly to the loop filter. There are several ways that this can be implemented. Possible implementations include a mixer, XOR gate, or JK Flip Flop. In the case of all these implementations there are some limitations. If the loop filter is passive, the PLL can not lock to the correct frequency if target frequency or phase is too far off from that of the VCO. Also, once the PLL is in lock, it can fall out of lock if the VCO signal goes more than a certain amount off in frequency. Even when the PLL is in lock, there is steady state phase error. For instance, the mixer phase detector introduces a 90 degree phase shift. There are ways around these problems such as using acquisition aids or using active filters.   Although active filters do fix a lot of these problems, they require op-amps that add cost and noise. Floyd Gardner's classical book, *Phaselock Techniques*, goes into great detail about all the details and pitfalls of this sort of phase detector. Gardner's book presents the following topology for active loop filters.
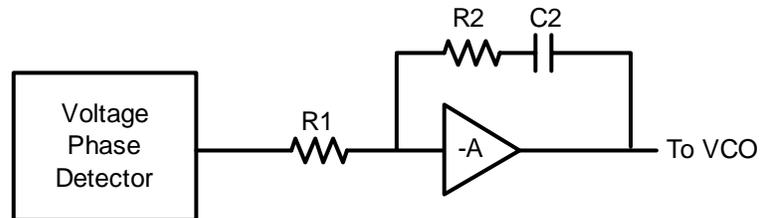
Figure 2.1 *Classical Active Loop Filter Topology for a Voltage Phase Detector*

The Modern Phase Frequency Detector with Charge Pump and its Advantages

The phase/frequency detector (**PFD**) does a much better job dealing with a large error in frequency. It is typically accompanied with a charge pump.   The PFD converts the phase error presented to it into a voltage, which in turn is converted by the charge pump into a correction current. Because these two devices are typically integrated together on the same chip and work together, the terminology is often misused. The term of PFD can be used to refer to the device that only converts the error phase into a voltage, or also can be used to refer to the device with the charge pump integrated with it. The term of charge pump is only used to refer to the device that converts the error voltage to a correction current. However, it is understood that a charge pump PLL also has a phase/frequency detector, because a charge pump is always used with a phase frequency detector. Even though the PFD and charge pump are technically separate entities, the terms are often interchanged.

Now that the use and abuse of the terminology has been discussed, it is time to discuss the benefits of using these devices. The charge pump PLL offers several advantages over the voltage phase detector and has all but replaced it. Using the PFD, the PLL is able to lock to any frequency; regardless of how far off it initially is in frequency and does not have a steady state phase error. The PFD shown in Figure 2.2 can be compared to its predecessor in Figure 2.1 .
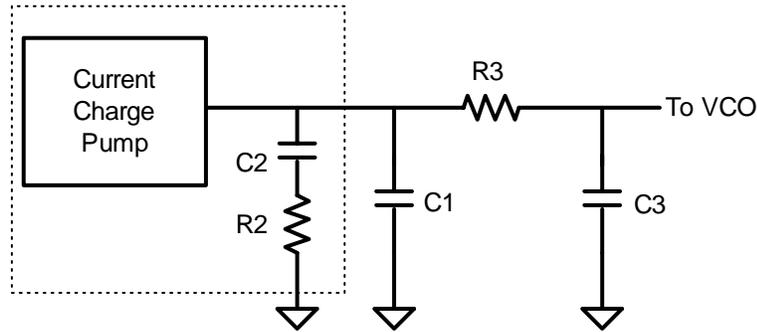
Figure 2.2 *Passive Loop Filter with PFD*

The functionality of the classical voltage phase detector and op-amp is achieved with the charge pump as shown inside the dotted lines. It is necessary to divide the voltage phase detector voltage gain by *R1* in order convert the voltage gain to a current gain for the purposes of comparison. The capacitor *C1* is added, because it reduces the spur levels significantly. Also, the components *R3* and *C3* can be added in order to further reduce the reference spur levels.

Conclusion

The classical voltage phase detector was the original implementation used for PLLs. There is excellent literature covering this device, and it is also becoming outdated. The charge pump PLL, which is the more modern type of PLL, has a phase/frequency detector and charge pump that overcomes many of the problems of its predecessor. Although op-amps can be used with the voltage phase detector to overcome many of the problems, the op-amp adds cost, noise, and size to a design, and is therefore undesirable. The only case where the op-amp is really necessary is when the VCO tuning voltage needs to be higher than the charge pump can supply. In this case, an active filter is necessary. The focus on this book is primarily on charge pump PLLs because this technology is more current and the fact that there is already a substantial amount of excellent literature on the older technology.

Chapter 3   Phase/Frequency Detector Theoretical Operation

Introduction

Perhaps the most difficult component to understand in the PLL system is the phase/frequency detector (PFD).   The PFD compares the outputs of the N and R counters in order to generate a correction voltage. This correction voltage is converted to a current by the charge pump. Because the charge pump and PFD are typically integrated together, this book will treat them as one block for the sake of simplicity.

Looking carefully at Figure 3.1 , it should be clear that the output is modeled as a phase and not a frequency. It makes more sense to model the phases and not the frequencies because the phase detector works in terms of phases. The VCO gain is divided by *s* in order to convert it from a frequency to a phase. Recall that in the Laplace Domain, dividing by *s* corresponds to integration.   Also recall that the integral of frequency is phase. If the frequency output is sought, then it is only necessary to multiply the transfer function by a factor of *s*, which corresponds to differentiation.   So the phase-frequency detector not only causes the input phases to be equal, but also the input frequencies, since they are related.
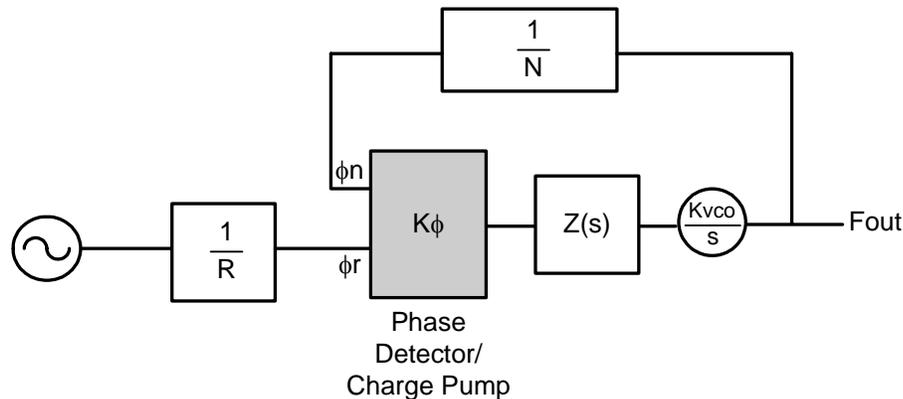
Figure 3.1 *The Basic PLL Structure Showing the Phase/Frequency Detector*

Analysis of the Phase/Frequency Detector

The output phase of the VCO is divided by N, before it gets to the Phase-Frequency Detector (***PFD***). In order to analyze the PDF, it is useful to first introduce some notation. Let ϕn represent the phase of this signal at the PFD, and *fn* represent the frequency of this signal. The output phase of the crystal reference is divided by ***R*** before it gets to the PFD. Let ϕr be the phase of this signal and *fr* be the frequency of this signal.
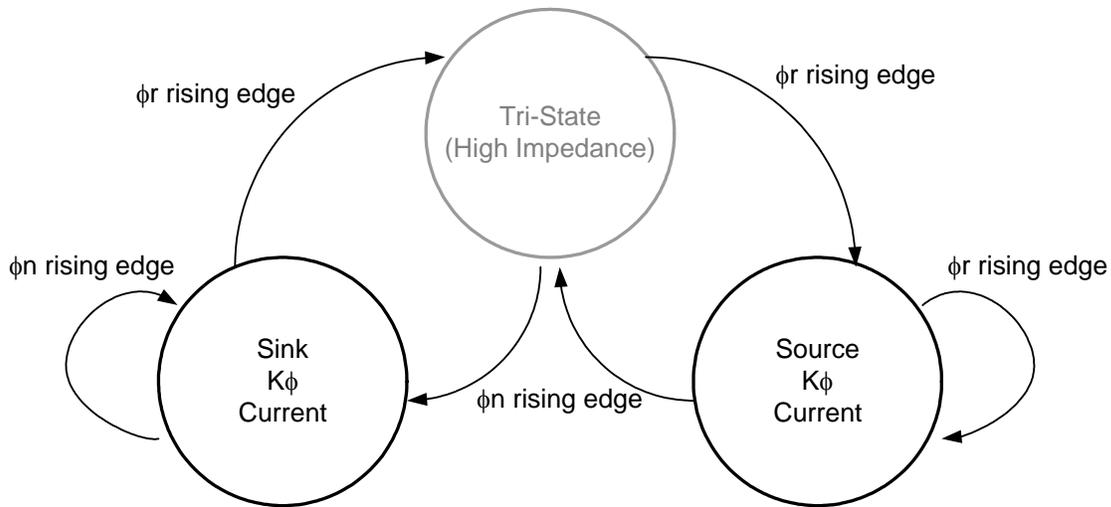
Figure 3.2 *States of the Phase Frequency Detector (PFD)*
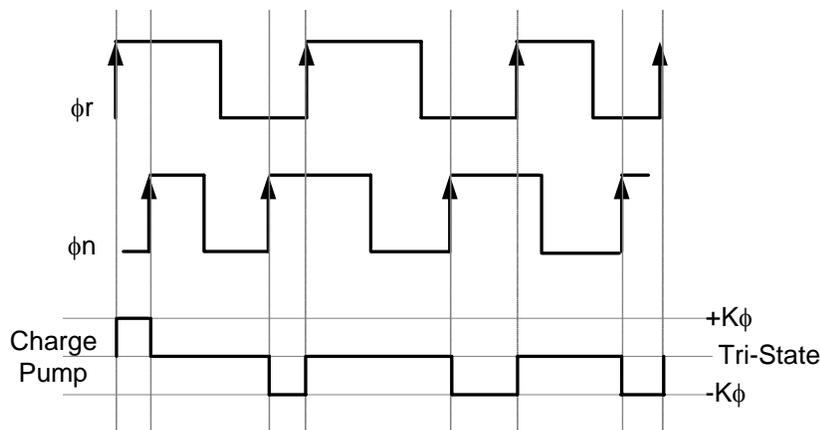
Figure 3.3 *Example of how the PFD works*

The PFD is only sensitive to the rising edges of the ϕr and ϕn signals. Figure 3.2 and Figure 3.3 demonstrate its operation. Whenever there is a rising edge from the output of the R counter there is the positive transition from the charge pump. This means that if the charge pump was sinking current, then it now is in a Tri-State mode. If it was in Tri-State, then it is now sourcing current. If it already was sourcing current, then it continues to source current. The rising edges from the N counter work in an analogous way, except that it causes negative transitions for the charge pump. If the charge pump was sourcing current, it now goes to Tri-State. If it was in Tri-State, it now goes to sourcing current, if it was sourcing current, it continues to source current.

Analysis of the PFD for a Phase Error

Suppose that ϕn and ϕr are at the exact same frequency but off in phase such that the leading edge of ϕr is leading the leading edge of ϕn by a constant phase, ϕr - $\phi n = \Delta\phi$. The time averaged output of the phase detector, $\overline{K\phi}$, as a function of the phase error, $\Delta\phi$., is illustrated by Figure 3.4 .
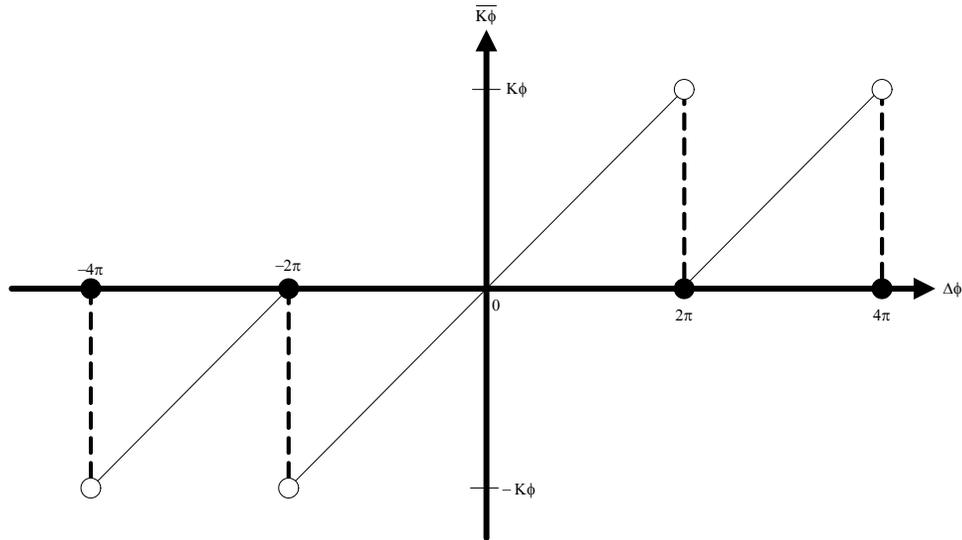
Figure 3.4 *Time Averaged Output of the PFD of Positive Polarity*

There are three possible cases:

$\Delta\phi$ = 0: For this case, there is no phase error, and the signals are synchronized in frequency and phase, therefore there would theoretically be no output of the phase detector. In actuality, there are some very small corrections from the phase detector due to dead zone elimination circuitry and gate delays of components. The charge pump output in this case is a series of positive and negative pulses, alternating in polarity.

-2π < | $\Delta\phi$ | < 2π :   For this case, the PFD is operating in the linear region. The slope of this line, which corresponds to the charge pump gain can be calculated as follows:

$$\overline{K\phi} = \frac{K\phi - (-K\phi)}{2\pi - (-2\pi)}\Delta\phi = \frac{K\phi}{2\pi}\Delta\phi \qquad\qquad (3.1)$$

For this equation, there is debate over the factor of 2π. Mathematically and theoretically, it is correct, but it is typically left out because this current eventually will get multiplied by the VCO gain, which contains a factor of 2π to convert it from MHz/volt to MRad/volt.. Knowing that these will cancel, this book will use the practical definition rather than the academic version of this formula in order to simplify calculations and reduce the possibility for round off errors.

$$\overline{K\phi} = K\phi \bullet \Delta\phi \qquad\qquad (3.2)$$

$|\Delta\phi| \geq 2\pi$: This may seem a little odd to even talk about a phase error that is greater than 2π, but there is reason to think about it. In truth, if the phase error exceeds 2π then the cycle is considered what it would modulo 2π. A better way to think of this is in terms of cycles. If one counter gets ahead of another counter by more than one cycle, then the phase detector current resets to zero and then continues. This typically happens when a large phase error is presented to the phase detector. If the PLL loop can not correct fast enough, then cycle slipping can occur if too large of a phase error is allowed to accumulate. The net effect of this is that it can slow the lock time of the PLL. Note that the PFD does not put out the wrong polarity of signal for a cycle slip, but rather it does not output a correction current that is proportional to the full phase error.

Phase Detector Polarity

Unless otherwise stated, it will be assumed that the phase detector polarity is positive as illustrated in Figure 3.4 . This means that it will put out positive correction currents when the phase of the R counter leads the phase of the N counter. This would be the case if the output frequency from the R counter was higher than the frequency coming from the N counter. For most VCOs, when the tuning voltage is increased, the output frequency is increased, and this is considered to be a positive tuning characteristic. If it is actually the opposite of this, then the VCO is said to have a negative tuning characteristic, and the phase detector polarity needs to be reversed to have the PLL properly function. There is also the possibility that an op-amp is placed before the VCO, which can invert the tuning characteristics if it is used in an inverting configuration. For the case that the VCO has a negative tuning characteristic, or that active devices invert the characteristic of the VCO, then the phase detector characteristic needs to also be inverted as well. Typically, phase detector polarity can be made positive or negative by changing the value of a programmable bit or the voltage at a pin.

Analysis of the PFD for Two signals Differing in Frequency

Although this analysis of the PFD for a phase error is sufficient for most situations, there are situations where it might be good to better understand how it behaves for two signals differing in frequency. One such situation where this might of interest is the construction of lock detect circuits and the calculation of the time to the first cycle slip of the PFD.

Before doing the detailed analysis, it is helpful to introduce some simplifying assumptions. The first assumption is that the time period of interest is a large number of reference cycles, but too short for the PLL to make any significant corrections to the VCO frequency. This may seem unrealistic, but it is still meaningful. Typically, one is interested in the time when the frequency error is initially presented, for which this assumption serves as a good approximation. Another simplifying assumption is to assume that the R counter frequency is greater than the N counter frequency. If it is the opposite is the case, then the *fr* and *fn* terms can be swapped in the equations. In addition to these simplifying assumptions, it is also helpful to define the time in terms of cycles of the R counter. In general, the output of the R counter is constant, and it is the frequency out of the N counter that changes. The last assumption that will be made is that the counters start off in phase at time zero. If this is not

the case, then the results will can be altered. In general, when the N counter value is changed, it is done such that both counters start off a the same time. In the case of a hard power up, there is often a counter reset function provided to ensure that this is the case.

To start with the analysis, consider one cycle of the R counter output, which is equal to *1/fr*. After this period of time, the phase of the R and N counters expressed in reference cycles would be:

$$\phi r(\,^1/_{fr}\,) = fr \bullet \left(\,^1/_{fr}\,\right) = 1$$

$$\phi n(\,^1/_{fr}\,) = fn \bullet \left(\,^1/_{fr}\,\right) = \,^{fn}/_{fr}$$

(3.3)

Assuming that cycle slipping is not involved, the cycles the time-averaged phase error of the PFD, expressed in cycles (not radians), can be calculated as:

$$\overline{\Delta\phi} = \begin{cases} 1 - \,^{fn}/_{fr} & fn \le fr \\ 1 - \,^{fr}/_{fn} & fr > fn \end{cases}$$

(3.4)

Calculating the Approximate Time to the First Cycle Slip

In order to calculate the time to the first cycle slip, one just adds one cycle to the output of the counter with the slower frequency and checks to see what time these quantities will be equal. For the purposes of this calculation, it is important to remember that this is not based on the time-averaged phase error, but on the actual phase error as a function of time, *t*.

$$\Delta\phi(t) = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow t \bullet \left(1 - \,^{fn}/_{fr} \right) = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow t = \frac{1}{1 - \,^{fn}/_{fr}} \quad (\,in\,reference\,cycles\,)$$

$$\Rightarrow t = \left(\,^1/_{fr}\,\right) \bullet \frac{1}{1 - \,^{fn}/_{fr}}$$

(3.5)

If the frequencies are equal, the result of the formula is infinite, which indicates that a cycle slip will never occur. Also note that this calculation assumes that the VCO is not correcting the output frequency. The real way to interpret this result is that if this theoretical time is much less than the theoretical rise time of the PLL, not accounting for discrete sampling effects, then cycle slipping is likely to occur. If this time is much greater than that, this indicates that the PLL should be able to correct the output frequency of the VCO fast enough so that cycle slipping does not occur. Formula (3.5) can easily be generalized to the case that *fn>fr*.

$$ t \geq \begin{cases} \infty & fn = fr \qquad\qquad (3.6) \\[2em] \left(\dfrac{1}{fr}\right) \bullet \dfrac{1}{1 - \dfrac{fn}{fr}} & fn < fr \\[2em] \left(\dfrac{1}{fr}\right) \bullet \dfrac{1}{1 - \dfrac{fr}{fn}} & fn > fr \end{cases} $$

The reason for replacing the equality sign with a greater than or equal to sign is that the impact of the PLL correcting the output frequency of the VCO will cause this time to the first cycle slip to be longer than it would be in an open loop system.

So far, it has been assumed that the changes in the VCO frequency are small over the time periods being considered. This is what one would assume in a practical situation. If the ratio of the frequencies is two or greater, tit turns out that this analysis is still valid and meaningful. For the one who is curious about the case that the time period is very long compared to the first cycle slip, simulations need to be done for a closed loop system. For an open loop system, the behavior of the phase detector can be understood, assuming that the initial phase error is zero. Figure 3.5 shows the behavior of a PFD in a system and an isolated PFD in an open loop setup.
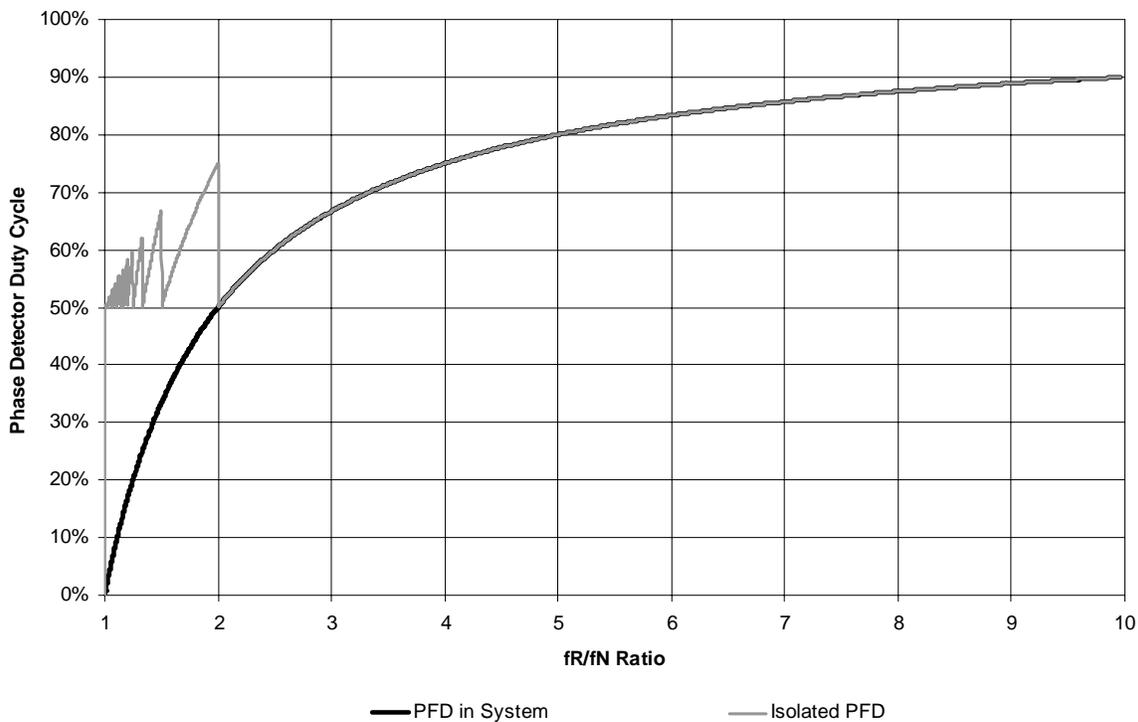
Figure 3.5 *Duty Cycle of the Phase Detector*

If the *fn/fr* ratio is exactly one, then the time averaged duty cycle of an idea isolated PFD would be zero. As this ratio approaches one from the right, this ratio approaches 50%. When the ratio is 1+1 = 2, the duty cycle is 1/3. When this ratio is 1+1/n, this duty cycle is 1/(n+1). If it is assumed that *fr*>2*fn*, then the cycle slip will occur every cycle, and simply taking the phase difference will suffice.

If one is interested in actually measuring the magnitude of the phase detector current, Figure 3.5 suggests to put as high as a frequency on the input to the R counter, and as low as a frequency as possible to the input to the N counter. However, even if the ratio of these frequencies is ten, still the duty cycle of the charge pump is only 90%. The best way to do this is to actually remove the input to the N counter completely and set the N counter value to the maximum value. Theoretically, the N counter value should not matter, but if there is no signal there, there could be some self-oscillation at this pin. To see the sink current, invert the polarity of the phase detector.

The Continuous Time Approximation

Technically, the phase/frequency detector puts out a pulse width modulated signal and not a continuous current. However, it greatly simplifies calculations to approximate the charge pump current as a continuous current with a magnitude equal to the time-averaged value of these currents from the charge pump. This approximation is referred to as the continuous time approximation and is a good approximation provided that the loop bandwidth is no more than about one-tenth of the comparison frequency. This approximation loses accuracy as the loop bandwidth approaches the comparison frequency. Despite this fact, this approximation holds very well in most cases and is used in order to derive the transfer functions that are necessary to analyze the PLL system. The discrete sampling effects that are not accounted for in the continuous time approximation introduce minor errors in the calculation of many performance criteria, such as the spurs, phase noise, and the transient response. These performance criteria will be discussed in greater detail in chapters to come, but the impact of these discrete sampling effects will be discussed here.

Discrete Sampling Effects on Spurs and Phase Noise

The impact of discrete sampling effects on spurs is typically not that great. However, if the loop bandwidth is wide relative to the comparison frequency, then sometimes a cusping effect can be seen. The discrete sampling action of the phase detector seems to have a much greater impact on phase noise. The phase detector/charge pump tends to be the dominant noise source in the PLL and it is these discrete sampling effects that cause the PFD to be nosier at higher comparison frequencies. Since a PFD with a higher comparison frequency has more corrections, it also puts out more noise, and this noise is proportional to the number of corrections. It is for this reason that the PFD noise increases as *10•log(Fcomp)*.

Discrete Sampling Effects on Loop Stability and Transient Response

The continuous time approximation holds when the loop bandwidth is small relative to the comparison frequency. If it is not, then theoretical predictions and actual results begin to differ and the PLL can even become unstable. Choosing the loop bandwidth to be $1/10^{th}$ of the comparison frequency is enough to keep one out of trouble, and when the loop bandwidth approaches around $1/3^{rd}$ the comparison frequency, simulation results show that this causes instability and the PLL to lose lock. In general, these effects should not be that much of a consideration.

The Phase/Frequency Detector Dead Zone

When the phase error is very small, there are problems with the phase/frequency detector responding to it correctly. Because the phase detector is made with real-world components, these gates have delays associated with them. When the time that the PFD would theoretically be on approaches the time delay of these components, then the output of the charge pump gets some added noise. This area of operation where the phase error is on the order of the component delays in the phase detector is referred to as the dead zone. Many PLLs have dead zone elimination circuitry ensures that the charge pump always comes on for some amount of time to avoid operating in the dead zone.

Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the PFD (Phase Frequency Detector) and has given some characterization on how it performs for both frequency and phase errors. For the phase error, it can be seen that the output is proportional to the phase error. For frequency errors, it can be seen that there is some output that is positively correlated with the frequency error.

References

Best, Roland E.,   *Phase-Lock Loop Theory, Design, Applications*, 3rd. ed, McGraw-Hill
     1995

Gardner, F.M.,   *Charge-Pump Phase-Lock Loops*, IEEE Trans. Commun. vol. COM-
     28, pp. 1849 – 1858, Nov 1980

Chapter 4 Basic Prescaler Operation

Introduction

Until now, the *N* counter has been treated as some sort of black box that divides the VCO frequency and phase by *N*. If the output frequency of the VCO is low enough (on the order of 200 MHz or less), it can be implemented with a digital counter fabricated with a low frequency process, such as CMOS. It is desirable to implement as much of the *N* counter in CMOS as possible, for lower cost and current consumption.   However, if the VCO frequency is much higher than this, then a pure CMOS counter is likely to have difficulty dealing with the higher frequency. To resolve this dilemma, prescalers are often used to divide down the VCO frequency to something that can be handled with a lower frequency process. Prescalers often divide by some power of two, since this makes them easier to implement. The most common implementations of prescalers are single modulus, dual modulus, and quadruple modulus. Of these, the dual modulus prescaler is most commonly used. For notation purposes, upper case letters will be used to name counters and lower case letters will be used to denote the actual value of that counter, if it is programmable. For instance, *b* represents the actual value that the physical *B* counter is programmed to. If the counter value is fixed, then the upper case letter will denote the name and the value for that counter.

Single Modulus Prescaler

For this approach, a single high frequency divider placed in front of a counter. In this case, $N = b \bullet P$, where *b* can be changed and *P* is fixed. One disadvantage of this prescaler is that only *N* values that are an integer multiple of *P* can be synthesized. Although the channel spacing can be reduced to compensate for this, doing so increases phase noise substantially. This approach also is popular in high frequency designs (>6 GHz) for which it is difficult to find a fully integrated PLL. . In this case, divide by two prescalers made with the GaAs or SiGe process can be used in conjunction with a PLL. Also, single modulus prescalers are sometimes used in older PLLs and low cost PLLs.
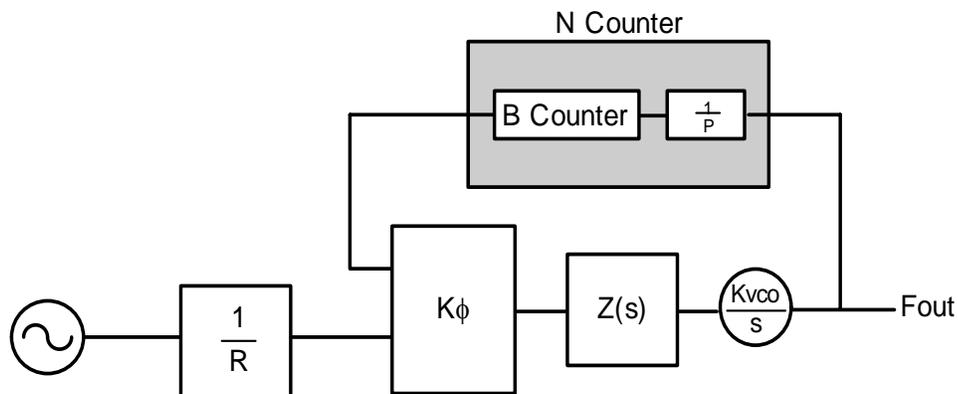
Figure 4.1 *Single Modulus Prescaler*

Dual Modulus Prescaler

In order not to sacrifice frequency resolution, a dual modulus prescaler is often used. These come in the form *P/(P+1)*. For instance, a *32/33* prescaler has *P = 32*. In actuality, there is really only one prescaler of size *P*, and the *P+1* value is implemented by putting a pulse swallow function before the prescaler. Since the A counter controls whether or not the pulse swallow circuitry is active or not, it is often referred to as the swallow counter.

Operation begins with the *P+1* prescaler being engaged for a total of *a* cycles. It takes a total of *a•(P+1)* cycles for the A counter to count down to zero. There is also a B counter that also counts down at the same time as the A counter. After the A counter reaches a value of zero, the pulse swallow function is deactivated and the A counter stops counting. Since the B counter was counting down with the A counter, it has a remaining count of (*b – a*).

Now the B counter starts counting down with the prescaler value of *P*. This takes *(b-a)•P* counts to finish up the count, at which time, all of the counters are reset, and the process is repeated. From this the fundamental equations can be derived:

$$N = (P+1)•a + P•(b-a) \quad = P•b + a \qquad\qquad (4.1)$$

$$(4.2)$$

$$b = N \ div \ P \ \text{(N divided by P, disregarding the remainder)}$$

$$(4.3)$$

$$a = N \ mod \ P \ \text{(The remainder when N is divided by P)}$$
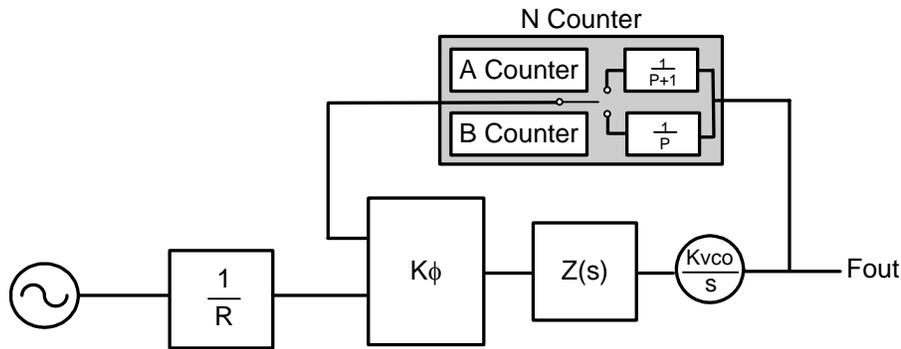
Figure 4.2 *Dual Modulus Prescaler*

Note that $b \geq a$ is required for proper operation. If this constraint is not satisfied, the counters reset prematurely before the A counter reaches zero and the wrong N value is achieved. *N* values for which *b<a* do not satisfy this criteria are referred to as illegal divide ratios. It turns out that if N is greater than a limit called the minimum continuous divide ratio, then it will not be an illegal divide ratio.

Quadruple Modulus Prescalers

In order to achieve a lower minimum continuous divide ratio, the quadruple modulus prescaler is often used. In the case of a quadruple modulus prescaler, there are four prescalers, but only three are used to produce any given *N* value. Commonly, but not always, these four prescalers are of values *P*, *P+1*, *P+4*, and *P+5*, and are implemented with a single prescaler, a pulse swallow circuit, and a four-pulse swallow circuit.
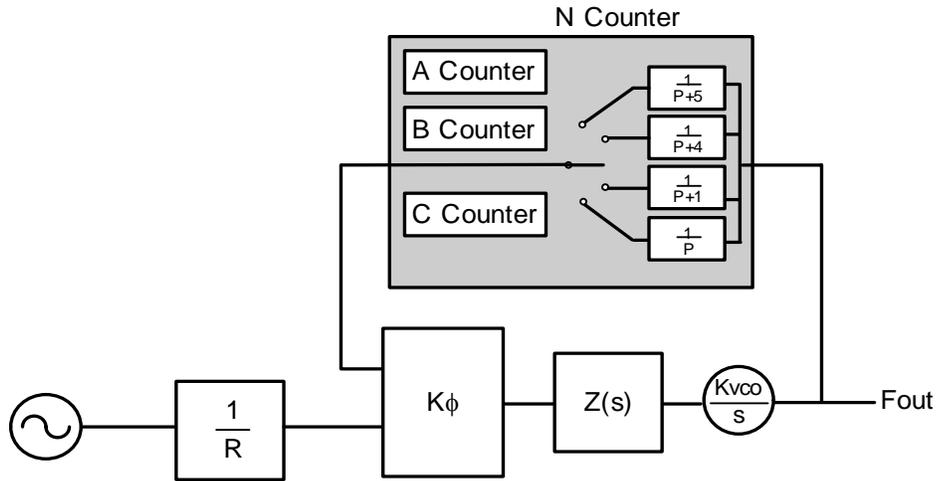
Figure 4.3 *Quadruple Modulus Prescaler*

The following table shows the three steps and how the prescalers are used in conjunction to produce the required *N* value. Regardless of whether or not *b>=a*, the resulting *N* value is the same.

| Step | If $b \geq a$ | | If b<a | |
	Description	Counts Required	Description	Counts Required
1	The P+5 prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the A counter until a=0.	*a•(P+5)*	The P+5 prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the B counter until b=0.	*b•(P+5)*
2	The P+4 prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the B counter until b=0.	*(b-a)•(P+4)*	The P+1 prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the A counter until a=0.	*(a-b)•(P+1)*
3	The P prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the C counter until c=0.	*(c-b)•P*	The P prescaler is engaged in order to decrement the C counter until c=0.	*(c-a)•P*
	Total Counts	*P•c+4•b+a*	Total Counts	*P•c+4•b+a*

Table 4.1 *Typical Operation of a Quadruple Modulus Prescaler*

Note that the **b>=a** restriction applies to the dual modulus prescaler, but not the quadruple modulus prescaler. The restriction for the quadruple modulus prescaler is **c >= max{a, b}**. **N** values that violate this rule are called illegal divide ratios. Even though the quadruple modulus prescaler has four potential values, only three of them will be used for any particular N value. The fundamental equation relating the a, b, and c values to the N counter value is:

$$N = P \bullet c + 4 \bullet b + a \qquad (4.4)$$

The values to be programmed into the A counter, B counter, and C counter can be found as follows:

$$a = N \ mod \ P \qquad (4.5)$$
$$c = N \ div \ P$$
$$b = \frac{N - c \bullet P - a}{4}$$

Minimum Continuous Divide Ratio

It turns out that for the dual modulus and quadruple modulus prescaler that all N values that are above a particular value, called the minimum continuous divide ratio, will be legal divide ratios. For the dual modulus prescaler, this is easy to calculate. Because **a** is the result of taking a number modulus **P**, the maximum this number can be is **P-1**. It therefore follows that if **b>=P-1**, the N value is legal. For the quadruple modulus prescaler, the maximum **a** can be is 3. By doing some numerical examples, the maximum that **b** can be is **max{ P/4 - 1, 3 }**. From this, the minimum continuous divide ratio for the quadruple modulus prescaler can be calculated.

Prescaler	Prescaler Type	Minimun Continuous Divide Ratio
4/5	Dual Modulus	12
8/9		56
16/17		240
32/33		992
64/65		4032
128/129		16256
P/(P+1)		P x (P-1)
4/5/8/9	Quadruple Modulus	12
8/9/12/13		24
16/17/20/21		48
32/33/35/56		224
64/65/68/69		960
128/129/132/133		3968
P/(P+1)/(P+4)/(P+5)		max{ P/4 - 1, 3 } x P

Table 4.2 *Minimum Continuous Divide Ratios*

Adjustments for Fractional Parts

Fractional parts can introduce exceptions for both the dual modulus prescaler and the quadruple modulus prescaler. This is for several reasons. One reason for this is that fractional PLLs achieve an N value that is fractional by alternating the N counter value between two or more values. The sequence and different values that the fractional part goes through can change with the design of the part. For the desired fractional N counter to be legal, all of the values that the N counter switches between must also be legal. In addition to requirements brought on by the use of additional N counter values, there are additional intricacies of the fractional N architecture that can put additional requirements. In general, when dealing with fractional parts, there can be many exceptions, which often reduce the number of legal N counter values and raise the minimum continuous divide ratio.

Conclusion

For PLLs that operate at higher frequencies, prescalers are necessary to overcome process limitations. The basic operation of the single, dual, and quadruple modulus prescaler has been presented. Prescalers combine with the A, B, and C counters in order to synthesize the desired N value. Because of this architecture, not all N values are possible there will be N values that are unachievable. These values that are unachievable are called illegal divide ratios. If one attempts to program a PLL to use an illegal divide ratio, then the usual result is that the PLL will lock to the wrong frequency. The advantage of using higher modulus prescalers is that a greater range of N values can be achieved, particularly the lower N values. Fractional PLLs achieve a fractional N value by alternating the N counter between two or more values. In this case, it is necessary for all of these N values used to be legal divide ratios.

Many PLLs allow the designer more than one choice of prescaler to use. In the case of an integer PLL, the prescaler used usually has no impact on the phase noise, reference spurs, or lock time. This is assuming that the N value is the same. For some fractional N PLLs the choice of prescaler may impact the phase noise and reference spurs, despite the fact that the N value is unchanged.

Chapter 5   Fundamentals of Fractional N PLLs

Introduction

One popular misconception regarding fractional N PLLs is that they require different design equations and simulation techniques than are used for integer *N* PLLs. In actuality, the exact same concepts and equations apply to fractional PLLs that apply to integer PLLs. The performance is different, due to the fact that the *N* value is can be made smaller, which is a consequence of some fractions being allowed. The whole motivation of using a fractional N architecture is that it has a smaller N value, which theoretically means that it will have better phase noise performance. Since fractional N PLLs contain compensation circuitry for the fractional spurs, the actual benefits in phase noise may not be as good as theoretically predicted, but typically it is still a net improvement. This chapter discusses some of the theoretical and practical behaviors of fractional N PLLs.

Theoretical Explanation of Fractional N

Fractional *N* PLLs differ from integer *N* PLLs in that some fractional N values are permitted. In general, a modulo *FDEN* fractional N PLL allows *N* values in the form of:

$$N = N_{integer} + \frac{FNUM}{FDEN} \tag{5.1}$$

Because the *N* value can now be a fraction, the comparison frequency can now be increased by a factor of *FDEN*, while still retaining the same channel spacing. Other than the architecture of the PLL, there could be other factors, such as illegal divide ratios, maximum phase detector limits, or the crystal frequency, that put limitations on how large *FDEN* can be. Illegal divide ratios can become a barrier to using a fractional N PLL, because reducing the $N_{integer}$ value may cause it to be an illegal divide ratio. Decreasing the $N_{integer}$ value corresponds to increasing the phase detector rate, which still must not exceed the maximum value in the datasheet specification. The crystal can also limit the use of fractional N, since the *R* value must be an integer. This implies that the crystal frequency must be a multiple of the comparison frequency.
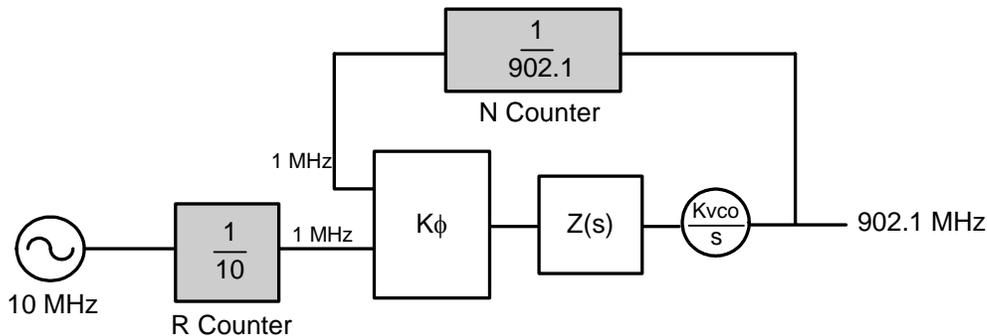
Figure 5.1 *Fractional N PLL Example Fractional N PLL Example*

Figure 5.1 shows an example of a fractional N PLL generating 902.1 MHz with **FDEN=10**. This PLL has a channel spacing of 100 kHz, but a reference frequency of 1 MHz. Now assume that the PLL tunes from 902 MHz to 928 MHz with a channel spacing of 100 kHz. The **N** value therefore ranges from 902.0 – 928.0. If a 32/33 dual modulus prescaler and the crystal frequency of 10 MHz were used, the **R** counter value would be an integer and all **N** values would be legal divide ratios. In this case, the crystal frequency and prescaler did restrict the use of fractional N. Now assume that this PLL of fractional modulus of **FDEN** is to be used and the PLL phase detector works up to 10 MHz. Below is a table showing if and how a modulo **FDEN** PLL could be used for this application. Since the comparison frequency is never bigger than 1600 MHz, there is no problem with the 10 MHz phase detector frequency limitation. In cases where the prescaler will not work, suggested values are given that will work. Since the quadruple modulus prescaler is able to achieve lower minimum continuous divide ratios, they tend to be more common in fractional N PLLs than integer **N** PLLs.

Fractional Modulo	Comparison Frequency	32/33 Prescaler Check	Prescaler Suggestion	10 MHz Crystal Check	Crystal Suggestion
1	100 kHz	OK		OK	
2	200 kHz	OK		OK	
3	300 kHz	OK		FAIL	14.4 MHz
4	400 kHz	OK		OK	
5	500 kHz	OK		OK	
6	600 kHz	OK		FAIL	6.0 MHz
7	700 kHz	OK		FAIL	7.0 MHz
8	800 kHz	OK		OK	
9	900 kHz	OK		FAIL	14.4 MHz
10	1000 kHz	FAIL	16/17	OK	
11	1100 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	11.0 MHz
12	1200 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	14.4 MHz
13	1300 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	13.0 MHz
14	1400 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	14.0 MHz
15	1500 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	15.0 MHz
16	1600 kHz	FAIL	16/17	FAIL	14.4 MHz

Table 5.1 *Fractional N Example*

Fractional N Architectures

The way that fractional N values are typically achieved is by toggling the **N** counter value between two or more values, such that the average **N** value is the desired fractional value. For instance, to achieve a fractional value of 100 1/3, the **N** counter can be made 100, then 100 again, then 101. The cycle repeats. The simplest way to do the fractional N averaging is to toggle between two values, but it is possible to toggle between three or more values. If more than two values are used then this is a delta sigma PLL architecture, which is discussed in the next chapter.

An accumulator is used to keep track of the instantaneous phase error, so that the proper N value can be used and the instantaneous phase error can be compensated for (Best 1995). Although the average N value is correct, the instantaneous value is not correct, and this causes high fractional spurs. In order to deal with the spur levels, a current can be injected into the loop filter to cancel these. The disadvantage of this current compensation technique is that it is difficult to get the correct timing and pulse width for this correction pulse, especially over temperature. Another approach is to introduce a phase delay at the phase detector. This approach yields more stable spurs over temperature, but sometimes adds phase noise. In some parts that use the phase delay compensation technique, it is possible to shut off the compensation circuitry in order to sacrifice reference spur level in order to improve the phase noise. For the National Semiconductor LMX2364, the fractional compensation circuitry can be disabled in order to gain about a 5 dB improvement in phase noise at the expense of a 15 dB degradation in fractional spurs. The nature of added phase noise and spurs for fractional parts is very part specific.

Table 5.2 shows how a fractional N PLL can be used to generate a 900.2 MHz signal from a 1 MHz comparison frequency, using the phase delay technique. This corresponds to an N value of 900.2. Note that a 900.2 MHz signal has a period of 1.111 pS, and a 1 MHz signal has a period of 1000 ns.
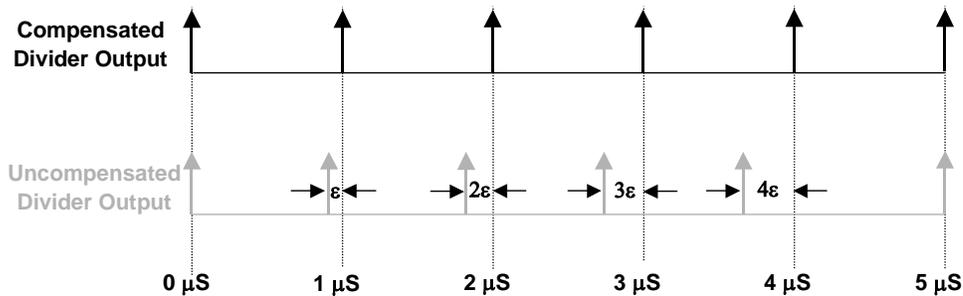
Figure 5.2 *Timing Diagram for Fractional Compensation*

Phase Detector Cycle	Accumulator (Cycles)	Overflow (Cycles)	Time for Rising Edge for Dividers (ns)		Phase Delay (ns)	Phase Delay (ns)
			Uncompensated	Compensated		
0	0.0	0	999.7778	0	0.222	0.222
1	0.2	0	1999.556	2000	0.444	0.444
2	0.4	0	2999.333	3000	0.667	0.667
3	0.5	0	3999.111	4000	0.889	0.889
4	0.8	0	4998.889	5000	1.111	1.111
5	0.0	1	999.7778	6000	0.222	0.222

Table 5.2 *Fractional N Phase Delay Compensation Example*

In Table 5.2, only the VCO cycles that produce a signal out of the N counter are accounted for. The phase delay is calculated as follows:

$$Phase\,Delay = \frac{1}{VCO\,Frequency} \bullet (\,Accumulator\,Value \; + Overflow\,Value\,) \qquad (5.2)$$

When the accumulator value exceeds one, then an overflow count of one is produced, the accumulator value is decreased by one, and the next VCO cycle is swallowed (Best 1995). Note that in Table 5.2, this whole procedure repeats every 5 phase comparator cycles, which corresponds to 4501 VCO cycles.

Phase Noise for Fractional *N* PLLs

It will be shown later that lowering the N value by a factor of **FDEN** should roughly reduce the PLL phase noise contribution by a factor of **10•log(FDEN)**. However, this analysis disregards the fact that the fractional compensation circuitry can add significant phase noise. A good example is the National Semiconductor LMX2350. Theoretically, using this part in modulo 16 mode, one would expect a theoretical improvement of 12 db over its integer *N* counterpart, the LMX2330. At 3 V, the improvement is closer to 1 db. This is because the fractional circuitry adds about 11 db of noise. Using this part in modulo 8 mode at 3 V would actually yield a degradation of 2 db. At 4 V and higher operation, the fractional circuitry only adds 7 db, making this part more worthwhile. The LMX2350 was a first generation fractional PLL from National Semiconductor. There are many parts developed after this one that have far less noise added from the fractional compensation circuitry. Depending on the method of fractional compensation used and the PLL, the added noise due to the fractional circuitry can be different. Many fractional N PLLs also have selectable prescalers, which can have a large impact on phase noise. For an integer part, choosing a different prescaler has no impact on phase noise. Also some parts allow the fractional compensation circuitry to be bypassed, which results in a fair improvement in phase noise at the expense of a large increase in the reference spurs. For some applications, the loop bandwidth may be narrow enough to tolerate the increased reference spurs.

Fractional Spurs for Fractional N PLLs

Since the reference spurs for a fractional N PLL are **FDEN** times the frequency offset away, they are often not a problem, since the loop filter can filter them more. However, fractional N PLLs also have fractional spurs, which are caused by imperfections in the fractional compensation circuitry. The first fractional spur is typically the most troublesome and occurs at **1/FDEN** times the comparison frequency, which is the same offset that the main reference spur occurs for the integer *N* PLL. For this fraction, all the fractional spurs will be present, but not in their strongest occurrence, except for the first fractional spur. In general, the kth fractional spur will be worst when the fractional numerator is equal to *k*.

It is not necessarily true that switching from an integer PLL to a fractional PLL will result in reduced spur levels. Fractional *N* PLLs have the greatest chance for spur levels when the comparison frequency is low and the spurs in the integer PLL are leakage dominated. Fractional spurs are highly resistant to leakage currents. To confirm this, leakage currents up to 5 µA were induced to a PLL with 25 kHz fractional spurs (FDEN=16, Fcomp=400 kHz) and there was no observed degradation in spur levels.

Lock Time for Fractional N PLLs

There are two indirect ways that a fractional N PLL can yield improvements in lock time. The first situation is where the fractional N part has lower spurs, thus allowing an increase in loop bandwidth. If the loop bandwidth is increased, then the lock time can be reduced in this way. The second, and more common, situation occurs when the discrete sampling rate of the phase detector is limiting the loop bandwidth. Recall that the loop bandwidth cannot be practically made much wider than $1/5^{th}$ of the comparison frequency. If the comparison frequency is increased by a factor of **FDEN**, then the loop bandwidth can be increased. This is assuming that the spur levels are low enough to tolerate this increase in loop bandwidth.

Conclusion

The behavior and benefits of the fractional N PLL have been discussed. Although the same theory applies to a fractional *N* PLL as an integer PLL, the fractional N compensation circuitry can cause many quirky behaviors that are typically not seen in integer *N* PLLs. For instance, the National Semiconductor LMX2350 PLL has a dual modulus prescaler that requires **b>=a+2**, instead of **b>=a**. One might expect the prescaler restriction might be **b>=a+1**, due to the fact that both N and N+1 need to be legal divide ratios, but the extra count is required due to the analog compensation circuitry. Phase noise and spurs can also be impacted by the choice of prescaler as well as by the Vcc voltage to the part. This is because the analog compensation circuitry may be sensitive to these things. Fractional *N* PLLs are not for all applications and each fractional N PLL has its own tricks to usage.

Reference

Best, Roland E., *Phase-Locked Loop Theory, Design, and Applications,* 3rd ed, McGraw-Hill, 1995

Chapter 6   Delta Sigma Fractional N PLLs

Introduction

Actually, the first order delta sigma PLL has already been discussed in the previous chapter. The traditional fractional PLL alternates the *N* counter value between two values in order to achieve a counter value that is something in between.   However, the first order delta sigma PLL is often considered a trivial case, and people usually mean at least second order when they refer to delta sigma PLLs.   For purposes of discussion, traditional fractional N PLL will refer to a PLL with first order delta sigma order, and a delta sigma PLL will be intended to refer to fractional PLLs with a delta sigma order of two or higher, unless otherwise stated.

Although it is theoretically possible for analog compensation schemes to completely eliminate the fractional spurs without any ill effects, there are many issues with using them in real world applications. Schemes involving current compensation tend to be difficult to optimize to account for variations in process, temperature, and voltage. Schemes involving a time delay tend to add phase noise.   In either case, analog compensation has its disadvantages. Another drawback of traditional analog compensation is that architectures that use it tend to get much more complicated as the fractional modulus gets larger. Although it is possible to have a traditional PLL that uses no analog compensation, doing so typically sacrifices on the order of 20 dB spurious performance, although this is very dependent on which PLL is used.

Delta Sigma Modulator Order

Delta sigma PLLs have no analog compensation and reduce fractional spurs using digital techniques in order to try to bypass a lot of the issues with using traditional analog compensation.   The delta sigma PLL reduces spurs by alternating the *N* counter between more than two values. The impact that this has on the frequency spectrum is that it pushes the fractional spurs to higher frequencies that can be filtered more by the loop filter.
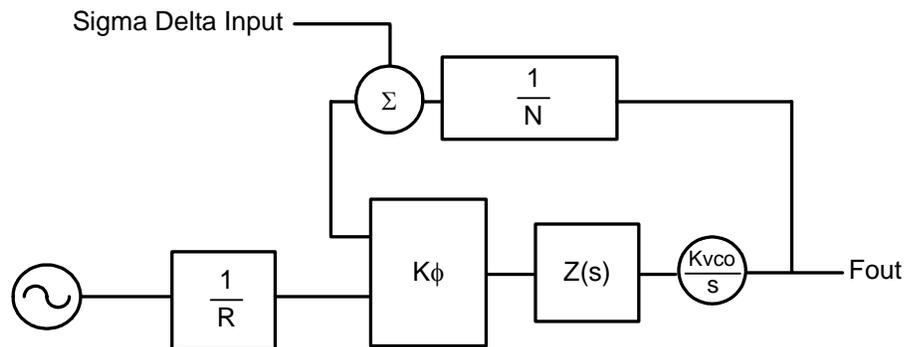
Figure 6.1 *Delta Sigma PLL Architecture*

Delta Sigma Order	Delta Sigma Input
1 (Traditional Fractional PLL without Compensation)	0, 1
2nd	-2, -1, 0, 1
3rd	-4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3
4th	-8, ... +7
k^{th}	-2^k ... 2^k-1

Table 6.1 *Delta Sigma Modulator Example*

For example, consider a PLL with an *N* value of 100.25 and a comparison frequency of 1 MHz. A traditional fractional N PLL would achieve this by alternating the *N* counter values between 100 and 101. A 2nd order delta sigma PLL would achieve this by alternating the *N* counter values between 98, 99, 100, and 101. A 3rd order delta sigma PLL would achieve this by alternating the *N* counter values between 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, and 103. In all cases, the average *N* counter value would be 100.25. Note that in all cases, all of the N counter values must be legal divide ratios. The first fractional spur would be at 250 kHz, but the 3rd order delta sigma PLL would theoretically have lower spurs than the 2nd order delta sigma PLL. If there was no compensation used on the traditional fractional N PLL, this would theoretically have the worst spurs, but with compensation, this would depend on how good the analog compensation was.

Generation of the Delta Sigma Modulation Sequence

The sequence generated by the delta sigma modulator is dependent on the structure and the order of the modulator. For this case, the problem is modeled as having an ideal divider with some unwanted quantization noise. In this case, the quantization noise represents the instantaneous phase error of an uncompensated fractional divider. Figure 6.2 contains expressions involving the Z transform, which is the discrete equivalent of the Laplace transform. The expression in the forward loop representations a summation of the accumulator, and the z^{-1} in the feedback path represents a 1 clock cycle delay.
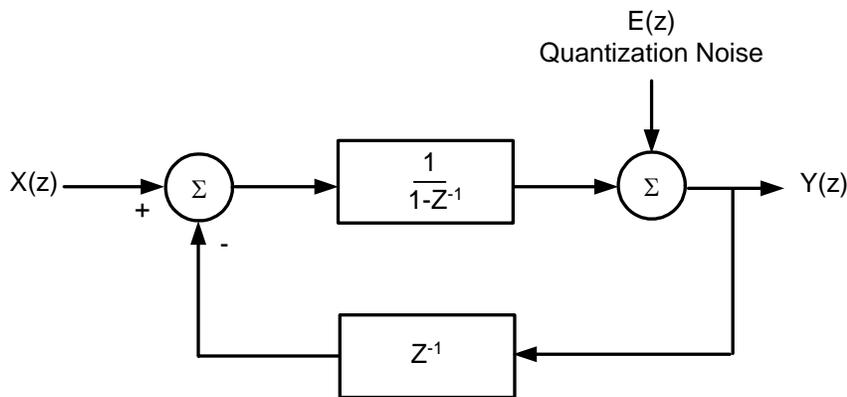
Figure 6.2 *The First Order Delta Sigma Modulator*

The transfer function for the above system is a follows:

$$Y(z) = X(z) + E(z) \bullet \left(1 - z^{-1}\right) \qquad (6.1)$$

Note that the error term transfer function means to take the present value and subtract away what the value was in the previous clock cycle. In other words, this is a form of digital high pass filtering. The following table shows what the values of this first order modulator would be for an N value of 900.2.

x[n]	Accumulator	e[n]	y[n]	N Value
0.2	0.2	-0.2	0	900
0.2	0.4	-0.4	0	900
0.2	0.6	-0.6	0	900
0.2	0.8	-0.8	0	900
0.2	1.0	-0.0	1	901
0.2	0.2	-0.2	0	900
0.2	0.4	-0.4	0	900
0.2	0.6	-0.6	0	900
0.2	0.8	-0.8	0	900
0.2	1.0	-0.0	1	901

Table 6.2 *Values for a First Order Modulator for N=900.2*

In general, the first order delta sigma modulator is considered a trivial case and delta sigma PLLs are usually meant to mean higher than first order. Although there are differences in the architectures, the general form of the transfer function for an nth order delta sigma modulator is:

$$Y(z) = X(z) + E(z) \bullet \left(1 - z^{-1}\right)^n \qquad (6.2)$$

So in theory, higher order modulators push out the quantization noise to higher frequencies, that can be filtered more effectively by the loop filter. Because this noise pushed out grows at higher frequencies as order n, it follows that the order of the loop filter needs to be one greater than the order of the delta sigma modulator. If insufficient filtering is used, then even though this noise is at frequencies far outside the loop bandwidth it can mix and make spurious products that are at much closer offsets to the carrier.

Dithering

In addition to using more than two *N* counter values, delta sigma PLLs may also use dithering to reduce the spur levels. Dithering is a technique of adding randomness to the sequence. For example, an *N* counter value of 99.5 can be achieved with the following sequence:

98, 99, 100, 101, ... (pattern repeats)

Note that this sequence is periodic, which may lead to higher fractional spurs. Another sequence that could be used is:

99, 100, 98, 101, 98, 99, 100, 101, 98, 101, 99, 100 ... (pattern repeats)

Both sequences achieve an average *N* value of 99.5, but the second one has less periodicity, which theoretically implies that more of the lower frequency fractional spur energy is pushed to higher frequencies.

The impact of dithering is different for every application. It tends to have a minimal impact on the main fractional spurs, but delta-sigma PLLs can sub-fractional spurs that occur at a fraction of the channel spacing. Dithering tends to have the most impact on these spurs. In some cases, it can improve sub-fractional spur levels, while in other cases, it can make these spurs worse. One example where dithering can degrade spur performance is in the case where the fractional numerator is zero.

Conclusion

The delta sigma architecture can be used in fractional PLLs to reduce the fractional spurs. In practice, delta-sigma fractional PLLs do have much lower fractional spurs than traditional fractional PLLs with analog compensation. Also, because the compensation is digital, there tends to be less added noise due to this compensation. Higher order modulators allow more reduction in fractional spurs, but do not always give the best results; this is application specific. One might thing that because the compensation is based on digital techniques, the delta-sigma fractional spurs would be very predictable from pure mathematical models.. However, these spurs tend to be very low, so many other factors that are harder to predict . The modulator order and dithering are two things that can be chosen. In actuality, there can be many kinds of dithering, and many hidden test bits that can impact performance. In truth, delta-sigma PLLs can be very complex, although the part presented to the end user may seem much less complex because many test bits will be defined to default values after evaluation.

Reference

Connexant Application Note Delta Sigma Fractional N Synthesizers Enable Low Cost, Low Power, Frequency Agile Software Radio

Chapter 7   The PLL as Viewed from a System Level

Introduction

This chapter discusses, on a very rudimentary level, how a PLL could be used in a typical wireless application. It also briefly discusses the impact of phase noise, reference spurs, and lock time on system level performance.

Typical Wireless Receiver Application
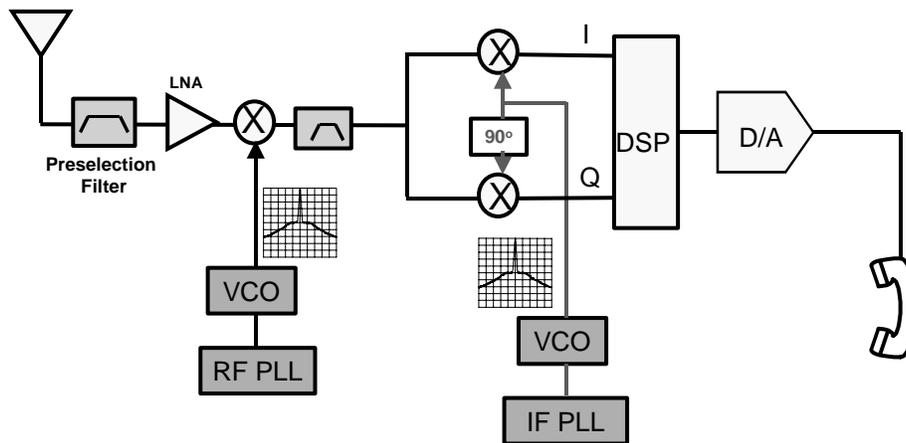
Figure 7.1 Typical PLL Receiver Application

General Receiver Description

In the above diagram, there are several different channels being received at the antenna, each one with a unique frequency. The first PLL in the receiver chain is tuned so that the output from the mixer is a constant frequency. The signal is then easier to filter and deal with since it is a fixed frequency from this point onwards, and because it is also lower in frequency. The second PLL is used to strip the information from the signal. Other than the obvious parameters of a PLL such as cost, size, and current consumption, there are three other parameters that are application specific. These parameters are phase noise, reference spurs, and lock time and are greatly influenced by the loop filter components. For this reason, these performance parameters are not typically specified in a datasheet, unless the exact application, components, and design parameters are known.

Phase Noise, Reference Spurs, and Lock Time as They Relate to This System

Phase noise refers to noise generated by the PLL. It can increase the bit error rates and degrade the signal to noise ratio of the system. This is discussed in depth in later chapters. Also, phase noise can mix with signals in order to create undesired noise products. Reference spurs are unwanted noise sidebands that can occur at multiples of the comparison frequency, and can be translated by a mixer to the desired signal frequency. They can mask

or degrade the desired signal. Lock time is the time that it takes for the PLL to change frequencies. It is dependent on the size of the frequency change and what frequency error is considered acceptable. When the PLL is switching frequencies, no data can be transmitted, so lock time of the PLL must lock fast enough as to not slow the data rate. Lock time can also be related to power consumption. For some systems, the PLL does not need to be powered up all the time, but only when data is transmitted or received. During other times, the PLL and many other RF components can be off. If the PLL lock time is less, then that allows systems like this to spend more time with the PLL powered down and therefore current consumption is reduced. Phase noise, reference spurs, and lock time are discussed in great depth in later chapters of this book.

Analysis of Receiver System

For the receiver shown in Figure 7.1 , the PLL that is closest to the antenna is typically the most challenging from a design perspective, due to the fact that it is higher frequency and is tunable. Since this PLL is tunable, there is typically a more difficult lock time requirement, which in turn makes it more challenging to meet spur requirements as well. In addition to this, the requirements on this PLL are also typically more strict because the undesired channels are not yet filtered out from the antenna.

The IF PLL has less stringent requirements, because it is lower frequency and also it is often fixed frequency. This makes lock time requirements easier to meet. There is also a trade off between lower spur levels and faster lock times for any PLL.   So if the lock time requirements are relaxed, then the reference spur requirements are also easier to meet. Note also that since the signal path coming to the second PLL has already been filtered, the lock time and spur requirements are often less difficult to meet.

Example of an Ideal System with an Ideal PLL

For this example, assume all the system components are ideal. All mixers, LNAs and filters have 0 dB gain and noise figure.   All filters are assumed to have an idea "brick wall" response. The PLL is assumed to put out a pure signal and have zero lock time.

Receive Frequency	869.03 – 893.96 MHz
RF PLL Frequency	783.03 – 807.96 MHz
IF PLL Frequency	86 MHz
Channel Spacing	30 kHz
Number of Channels	831
IF PLL Frequency	240 MHz

Table 7.1 RF System Parameters

The received channel will be one of the 831 channels. The channels will be designated 0 to 830, where channel 0 is at 869.03 MHz and channel 830 is at 893.96 MHz.   Suppose the frequency to be received is channel 453 at 888.62 MHz. This frequency comes in through

the antenna, filter, and LNA and is presented to the first mixer. The RF PLL frequency is then programmed to 802.62 MHz. The output of the mixer is therefore the sum and difference of these two frequencies, which would be 1691.24 MHz and 86 MHz. The filter afterwards filters out the high frequency signal so that only the 86 MHz signal passes through. This 86 MHz signal is then down converted to baseband with the IF PLL frequency, which is a fixed 86 MHz.

Ideal System with a Non-Ideal PLL

Now assume the same system as before, but now the RF and IF PLL have phase noise and spurs. Assume that the RF PLL takes 1 mS to change frequencies and the IF PLL takes 10 mS to change channels. For this application, the fact that the IF PLL takes 10 mS to change channels really does not have any impact on system performance. What this means is that once the phone is turned on, it takes an extra 10 mS to power up. Because the IF PLL never changes frequency, this is the only time this lock time comes into play. Now the 1 mS lock time on the RF PLL has a greater impact. If a person was using their cell phone and it was necessary to change the channel, then this lock time would matter. This might happen if the user was leaving a cell and entering another cell and the channel they were on was in use. Also, sometimes there is a supervisory channel that the cell phone needs to periodically switch to in order to receive and transmit information to the network. This is the factor that drives the lock time requirement for the PLL in the IS-54 standard, after which this example was modeled. The time needed to switch back and forth to do this needs to be transparent to the user and no data can be transmitted or received when the PLL is switching frequencies.

In the case of spurs, they will be at 30 kHz offset from the carrier. This would be at frequencies of 802.59 MHz and 802.65 MHz. Now the strength of these signals would be much less than that at 802.62 MHz, but still they would be there. Now if there were any other users on the system, these spurs could cause problems. For instance, a user at 888.59 MHz or 888.65 MHz would mix with these spurs to also form an unwanted noise signal at 86 MHz. In actuality, there are spurs at every multiply of 30 kHz from the carrier, so there are more possibilities for noise signals at 86 MHz, but the ones mentioned above would be the worst-case.

Because the phase noise is a continuous function of the offset frequency, it can mix in many more ways to produce jammer signals. Phase noise as well as spurs cause an increase in the RMS phase error as well. This will be discussed later. The next three figures are an example of what impact phase noise and spurs can have on system performance. Note that the phase noise of the RF PLL is translated onto the output signal of the mixer. The undesired channel at 888.65 MHz causes two unwanted signals. The first one is at 802.62 MHz, which degrades the signal to noise ratio. Another product is caused by this 802.62 MHz signal mixing with the main signal. However, this is outside of the information bandwidth of the signal and would be attenuated by the channel selection filter after the mixer.
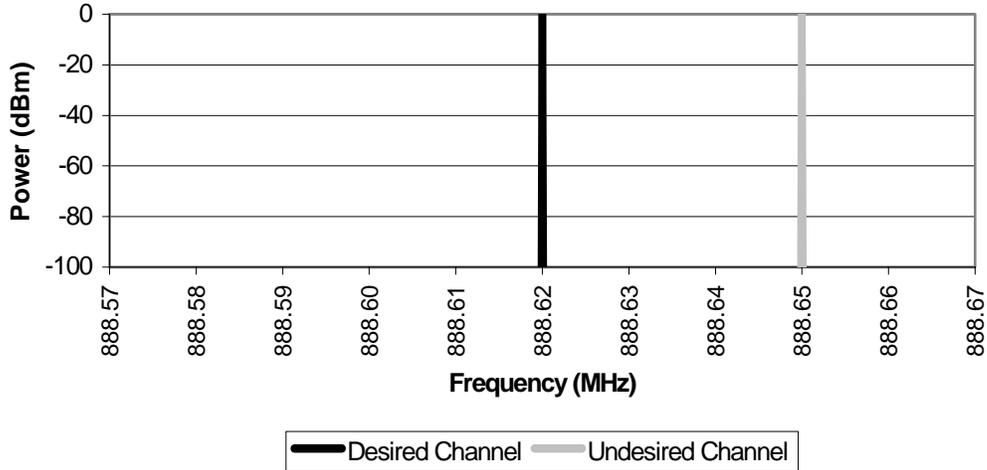
Figure 7.2 *Input Signal*
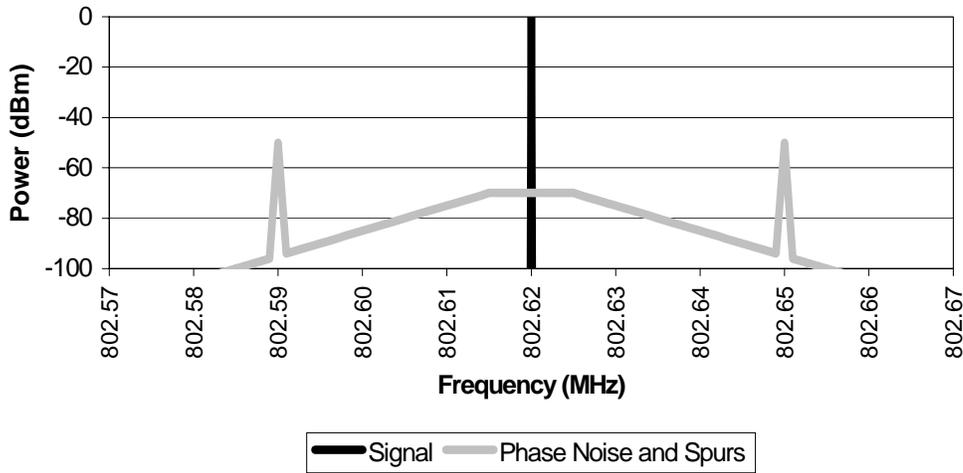
Figure 7.3 *Signal with Noise from RF PLL*
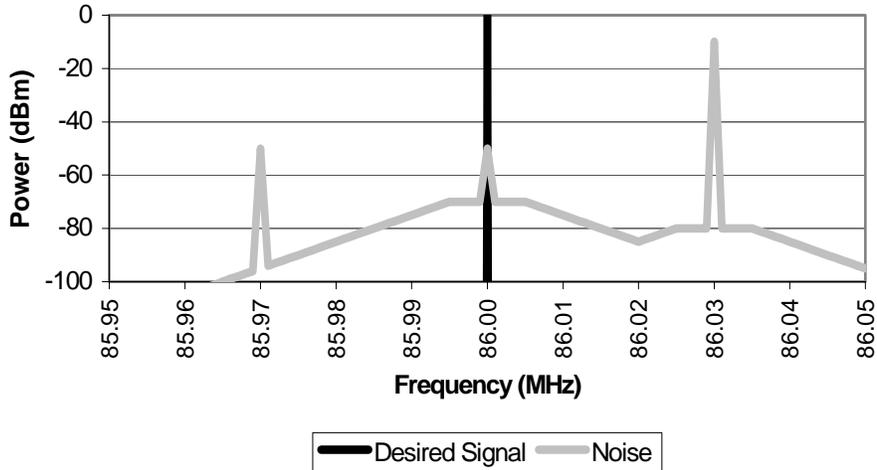
Figure 7.4 *Output Signal from Mixer*

Conclusion

This chapter has investigated the impacts of phase noise, spurs, and lock time on system performance. These three performance parameters are greatly influenced by many factors including the VCO, loop filter, and N divider value. Of course it is desirable to minimize all three of these parameters simultaneously, but there are important trade-offs that need to be made. Applications where the PLL only has to tune to fixed frequency tend to be less demanding on the PLL because the lock time requirements tend to be very relaxed, allowing one to optimize more for spur levels. There is no one PLL design that is optimal for every application.

PLL Performance and Simulation

25 kHz

ΔMkr

Avg
16

ATN   0 dB   RBW   1 kHz   VBW   1 kHz   SWP   296.7 msec

CENTER   2.400025 GHz   LO   2.3739 GHz   SPAN   200 kHz
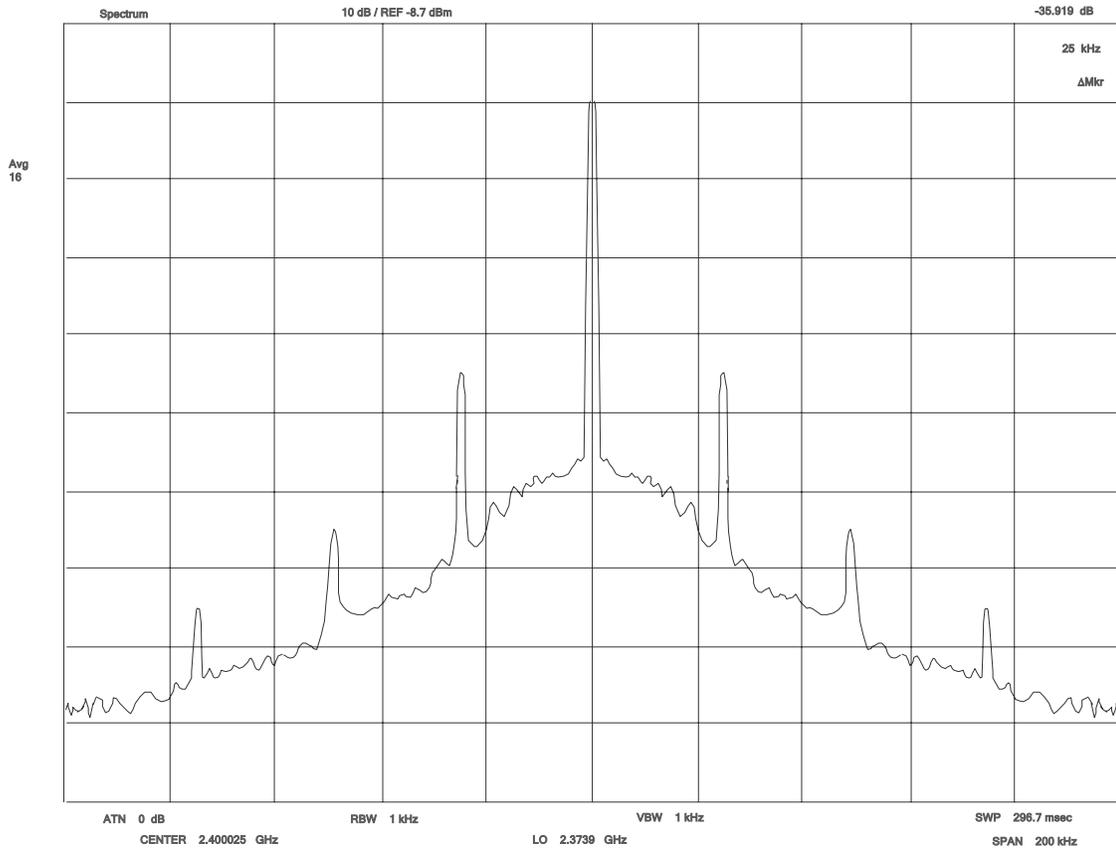
Chapter 8   Introduction to Loop Filter Coefficients

Introduction

This chapter introduces notation used to describe loop filter behavior throughout this book. The loop filter transfer function will be defined as the change in voltage at the tuning port of the VCO divided by the current at the charge pump that caused it.   In the case of a second order loop filter, it is simply the impedance. The transfer function of any PLL loop filter can be described as follows:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet \left(A3 \bullet s^3 + A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0 \right)} \quad (8.1)$$

$$T2 \quad = \quad R2 \bullet C2 \quad (8.2)$$

$A0$, $A1$, $A2$, and $A3$ are the filter coefficients of the filter. In the case of a second order loop filter, $A2$ and $A3$ are zero. In the case of a third order loop filter, $A3$ is zero. If the loop filter is passive, then $A0$ is the sum of the capacitor values in the loop filter. In this book, there are two basic topologies of loop filter that will be presented, passive and active. Although, there are multiple topologies presented for the active filter, only one is shown here, since this is the preferred approach.
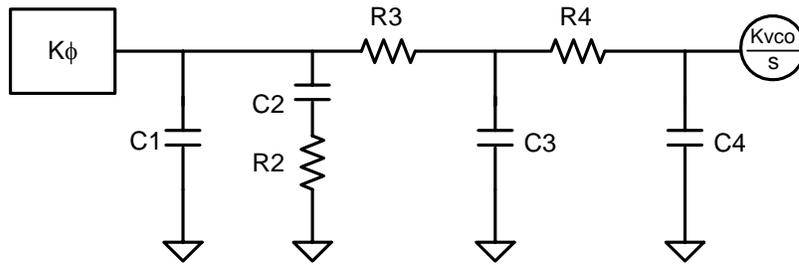
Figure 8.1 *Passive Loop Filter*
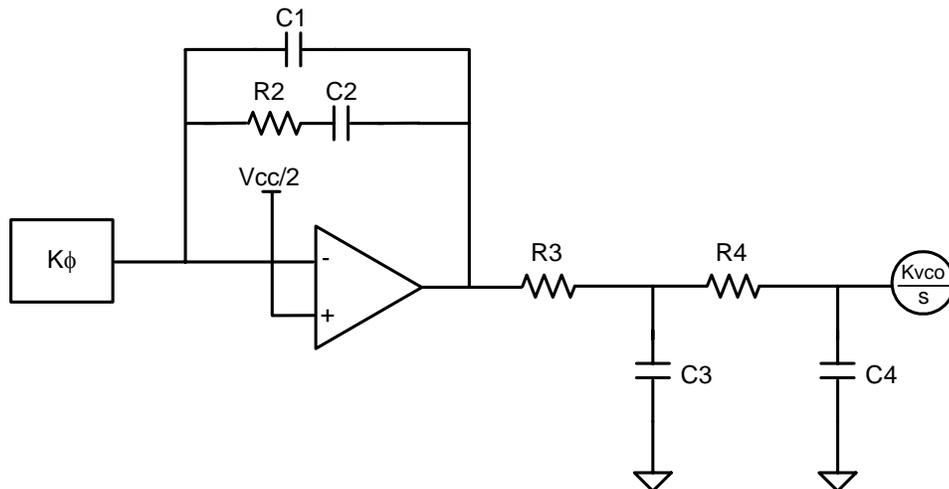
Figure 8.2 *Active Loop Filter (Standard Feedback Approach)*

Calculation of Filter Coefficients

Realize that although equations for the 2nd and 3rd order are shown, they can be easily derived from the 4th order equations by setting the unused component values to zero. In order to simplify calculations later on, the filter coefficients will be referred to many times, so it is important to be very familiar how to calculate them.

Filter Order	Symbol	Filter Coefficient Calculation for a Passive Filter
2	A0	C1 + C2
	A1	C1•C2•R2
	A2	0
	A3	0
3	A0	C1 + C2 + C3
	A1	C2•R2•(C1+C3)+C3•R3• (C1+C2)
	A2	C1•C2•C3•R2•R3
	A3	0
4	A0	C1 + C2 + C3 + C4
	A1	C2•R2•(C1+C3+C4)+R3•(C1+C2)•(C3+C4)+C4•R4•(C1+C2+C3)
	A2	C1•C2•R2•R3•(C3+C4) + C4•R4•(C2•C3•R3+C1•C3•R3+C1•C2•R2+C2•C3•R2)
	A3	C1•C2•C3•C4•R2•R3•R4

Table 8.1 *Filter Coefficients for Passive Loop Filters*

Filter Order	Symbol	Filter Coefficient Calculation for an Active Filter
2	A0	C1 + C2
	A1	C1•C2•R2
	A2	0
	A3	0
3	A0	C1 + C2
	A1	C1•C2•R2 + (C1+C2)•C3• R3
	A2	C1•C2•C3•R2•R3
	A3	0
4	A0	C1 + C2
	A1	C1•C2•R2 + (C1+C2)•(C3•R3 + C4•R4+ C4•R3)
	A2	C3•C4•R3•R4•(C1+C2) + C1•C2•R2•(C3•R3 + C4•R4+ C4•R3)
	A3	C1•C2•C3•C4•R2•R3•R4

Table 8.2 *Filter Coefficients for Active Loop Filters (Standard Feedback Approach)*

The calculation of the zero, **T2**, is the same for active and passive filters and independent of loop filter order:

$$T2 \quad = \quad C2 \bullet R2 \qquad\qquad (8.3)$$

Relationship Between Loop Filter Coefficients and Loop Filter Poles

In order to get a more intuitive feel of the loop filter transfer function, it is often popular to express this in terms of poles and zeroes. If one takes the reciprocal of the poles or zero values, then they get the corresponding frequency in radians. In the case of a fourth order passive loop filter, it is possible to get complex poles.

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} \qquad (8.4)$$

Once the loop filter time constants are known, it is easy to calculate the loop filter coefficients. The relationships between the time constants and filter coefficients are shown below.

$$\frac{A1}{A0} = T1 + T3 + T4 \qquad\qquad (8.5)$$

$$\frac{A2}{A0} = T1 \bullet T3 + T1 \bullet T4 + T3 \bullet T4$$

$$\frac{A3}{A0} = T1 \bullet T3 \bullet T4$$

Calculation of Poles for Passive Second Order Loop Filters and all Active Loop Filters

The calculation of the pole, **T1** is trivial in this case.

$$T1 = \frac{C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{C1 + C2} \qquad\qquad (8.6)$$

Now in the case of an active third order loop filter, the calculation of the pole, **T3**, is rather simple:

$$T3 = C3 \bullet R3 \qquad\qquad (8.7)$$

In the case of an active fourth order loop filter, **T3** and **T4** satisfy the following equations:

$$T3, T4 = \frac{x \pm y}{2} \qquad\qquad (8.8)$$

$$x = C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4 + C4 \bullet R3 \qquad\qquad (8.9)$$

$$y = \sqrt{x^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4} \qquad\qquad (8.10)$$

Passive Third Order Loop Filter

It is common to approximate the passive third order poles with the active third order poles. In order to solve exactly, it is necessary to solve a system of two equations and two unknowns.

$$T1+T3=\frac{A1}{A0} \tag{8.11}$$

$$T1 \bullet T3=\frac{A2}{A0}$$

$$T1,T3=\frac{A1 \pm \sqrt{A1^2 - 4 \bullet A0 \bullet A2}}{2 \bullet A0} \tag{8.12}$$

Passive Fourth Order Loop Filter

For the passive fourth order loop filter, the time constants satisfy the following system of equations:

$$T1+T3+T4 \qquad = \frac{A1}{A0} \tag{8.13}$$

$$T1 \bullet T3+T3 \bullet T4+T1 \bullet T4 = \frac{A2}{A0}$$

$$T1 \bullet T3 \bullet T4 \qquad = \frac{A3}{A0}$$

If one uses the first equation to eliminate the variable **T1**, the result is as follows:

$$x^2 - \frac{A1}{A0} \bullet x + \frac{A2}{A0} \qquad = y \tag{8.14}$$

$$y \bullet \left(x - \frac{A1}{A0} \right) \qquad = \frac{A3}{A0}$$

where

$$x = T3+T4$$

$$y = T3 \bullet T4$$

Solving the first equation for y and substituting in the second equation yields:

$$x^3 - 2 \bullet \frac{A1}{A0} \bullet x^2 + \left(\frac{A1^2}{A0^2} + \frac{A2}{A0} \right) \bullet x + \left(\frac{A3}{A0} - \frac{A1 \bullet A2}{A0^2} \right) = 0 \tag{8.15}$$

Although a closed form solution to the third order cubic equation exists, there will always be at least one real root. It is easiest to find this root numerically. Once this is found, then y can be found, and the poles can be found in a similar way as in the third order passive filter. One rather odd artifact of the fourth order passive filter is that it is possible for the poles **T3** and **T4** to be complex and yet still have a real-world working loop filter. Although this can happen, it is not very common.

$$T3, T4 = \frac{x \pm \sqrt{x^2 - 4 \bullet y}}{2} \tag{8.16}$$

$$T1 = \frac{A3}{A0 \bullet y} \tag{8.17}$$

Conclusion

It is common to discuss a loop filter in terms of poles and zeros. However, it turns out that it greatly simplifies notation to introduce the filter coefficients as well. In addition to this, the filter coefficients are much easier to calculate for higher order filters. The zero, **T2**, is always calculated the same way, but the calculations for the poles depends on the loop filter order and whether or not the loop filter is active or passive. The purpose of this chapter was to make the reader familiar with the filter coefficients, **A0**, **A1**, **A2**, and **A3**, since they will be used extensively throughout this book.

Chapter 9   Introduction to PLL Transfer Functions and Notation

Introduction

This chapter introduces fundamental transfer functions and notation for the PLL that will be used throughout this book. A clear understanding of these transfer functions is critical in order to understand spurs, phase noise, lock time, and PLL design.

PLL Basic Structure
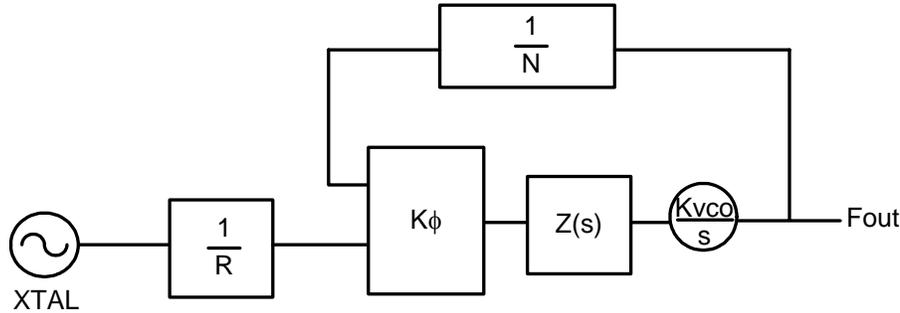
Figure 9.1 *Basic PLL Structure*

Introduction of Transfer Functions

The open loop transfer function is defined as the transfer function from the phase detector input to the output of the PLL. Note that the VCO gain is divided by a factor of *s*. This is to convert output frequency of the VCO into a phase. Technically, this transfer function is the phase of the PLL output divided by the phase presented to the phase detector, assuming the other input, ϕr, is a constant zero phase. The open loop transfer function is shown below:

$$G(s) = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet Z(s)}{s}$$

$$s \quad = 2\pi \bullet j \bullet f$$

(9.1)

The **N** counter value is the output frequency divided by the comparison frequency. Although the mathematics involved in defining **H** as the reciprocal of **N** may not be very impressive, it does make the equations look more consistent with notation used in classical control theory textbooks.

$$H = \frac{1}{N}$$

(9.2)

The closed loop transfer function takes into account the whole system and does not assume that the phase of one of the phase detector inputs is fixed at a constant zero phase.

$$CL(s) = \frac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H} \qquad (9.3)$$

The transfer function in (9.3) involves an output phase divided by an input phase. In other words, it is a phase transfer function. However, the frequency transfer function would be exactly the same. If one is considering an input frequency, this could be converted to a phase by dividing by a factor of s, then it is converted to a phase. At the output, one would multiply by a factor of s to convert the output phase to a frequency. So both of these factors cancel out, which proves that the phase transfer functions and frequency transfer functions are the same. By considering the change in output frequency produced by introducing a test frequency at various points in the PLL loops, all of the transfer functions can be derived.

Source	Transfer Function
Crystal Reference	$\dfrac{1}{R}\bullet\dfrac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$
R Divider	$\dfrac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$
N Divider	$\dfrac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$
Phase Detector	$\dfrac{1}{K\phi}\bullet\dfrac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$
VCO	$\dfrac{1}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$

Table 9.1 *Transfer functions for various parts of the PLL*

Analysis of Transfer Functions

Note that the crystal reference transfer function has a factor of **1/R** and the phase detector transfer function has a factor of **1/Kϕ**. It is also true that the phase detector noise, **N** divider noise, **R** divider noise, and the crystal noise all contain a common factor in their transfer functions. This common factor is given below.

$$\frac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H} \qquad (9.4)$$

All of these noise sources will be referred to as in-band noise sources. The loop bandwidth, ωc, and phase margin, ϕ, are defined as follows:

$$\left\| G(\,j \bullet \omega c\,) \bullet H \right\| = 1 \qquad\qquad (9.5)$$

$$180 - \angle G(\,j \bullet \omega c\,) \bullet H = \phi \qquad\qquad (9.6)$$

The loop bandwidth relates to the closed loop bandwidth of the PLL system, and the phase margin relates to the stability. If the phase margin is too low, the PLL system may become unstable. Another parameter of interest that will be of more interest in the loop filter design chapters is the gamma optimization factor, which is defined as follows:

$$\gamma = \frac{T2}{\omega c^2 \bullet A0} \qquad\qquad (9.7)$$

Using these definitions, and equations (9.1) and (9.2), and the fact that *G(s)* is monotonically decreasing in *s* yields the following transfer function:

$$\frac{G(\,s\,)}{1 + G(\,s\,) \bullet H} \approx \begin{cases} N & For\,\omega \ll \omega c \\ \\ G(\,s\,) & For\,\omega \gg \omega c \end{cases} \qquad\qquad (9.8)$$

The VCO has a different transfer function:

$$\left\| \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s) \bullet H} \right\| \qquad\qquad (9.9)$$

Note that this transfer function can be approximated by:

$$\frac{1}{1 + G(\,s\,) \bullet H} \approx \begin{cases} \dfrac{N}{G(\,s\,)} & For\,\omega \ll \omega c \\ \\ 1 & For\,\omega \gg \omega c \end{cases} \qquad\qquad (9.10)$$
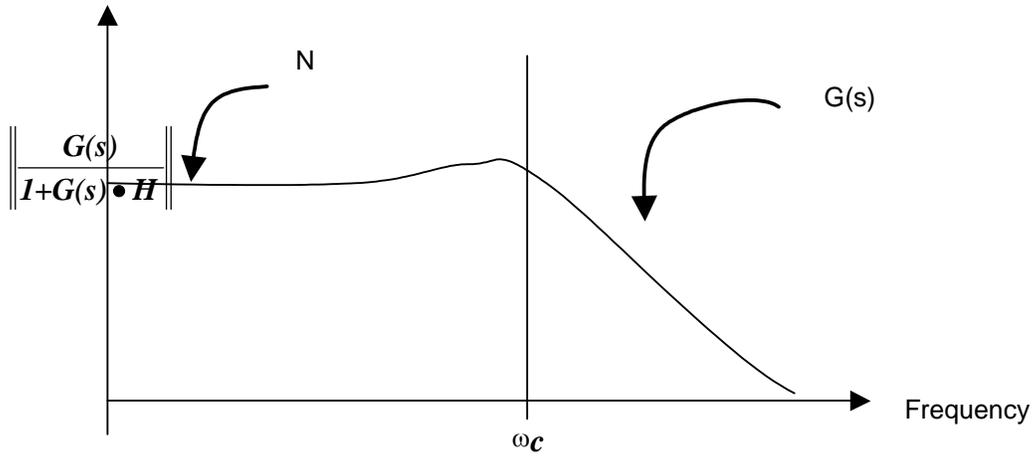
Figure 9.2 *Transfer Function Multiplying all Sources Except the VCO*
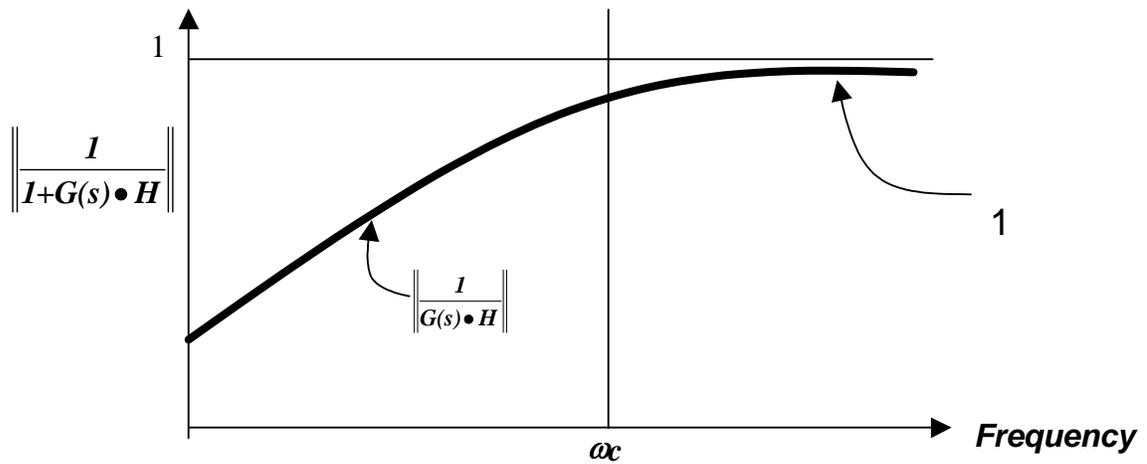
Figure 9.3 *Transfer Function for the VCO*

Scaling Properties of PLL Loop Filters

In order to discover these properties, it is easier to expand the expression for the closed loop transfer function and introduce a new variable, **K**.

$$\frac{G(s)}{1+\dfrac{G(s)}{N}} = \frac{K \bullet N \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2)}{s^5 \bullet A3 + s^4 \bullet A2 + s^3 \bullet A1 + s^2 \bullet A0 + s \bullet K \bullet T2 + K} \qquad (9.11)$$

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}$$

Loop Gain Constant

The loop gain constant, **K**, is dependent on the charge pump gain, VCO gain, and **N** counter value. From the above equation, one can see that these three parameters can be changed without impacting the transfer functions, provided that the loop gain constant is held constant. For instance, if the charge pump gain and **N** counter value are doubled, yet the VCO gain is held constant, the closed loop transfer function remains unchanged.

Scaling Property of Components

Even though loop filter design has not been discussed yet, it is not premature to show how to scale loop filter components. The first step involves understanding how the loop filter coefficients change with the loop filter values. If one was to change all capacitors by a factor of **x** and all resistors by a factor of **y**, then the impact on the loop filter coefficients can be found.

Loop Filter Coefficient	Proportionality ($\propto$) to x and y
A0	*x*
A1	$\propto x \bullet (x \bullet y)$
A2	$\propto x \bullet (x \bullet y)^2$
A3	$\propto x \bullet (x \bullet y)^3$

Table 9.2 *Relationship of Loop Filter Coefficients to Component Scaling Factors*

Equation	Implication
$x \propto \dfrac{K}{Fc^2}$	The loop filter capacitors should be chosen proportional to the loop gain divided by the loop bandwidth squared.
$y \propto \dfrac{Fc}{K}$	The loop filter resistors should be chosen proportional to the loop bandwidth over the loop gain.

Table 9.3 *The Rule for Scaling Components*

The table above shows the fundamental rule for scaling components. There are several ways this can be applied. Consider the case where the loop gain constant, **K**, is changed. An example of this is if one were to inherit a PLL design done by someone else who has since left the company. Suppose in this case, the original design was done with a PLL with a charge pump gain of 1 mA, and now the PLL is being replaced with a newer one with a charge pump gain of 4 mA. Because the loop gain changes by a factor of 4, all the capacitors should be made four times larger and all the resistors should be made to one-fourth of their original value. Consider a second case where one designed a loop filter for a loop bandwidth of 10 kHz, but now wants to increase the loop bandwidth to 20 kHz. In this case, the loop bandwidth is changing by a factor of two, so the capacitors should be one-fourth of their original value, and the resistors should be twice their original value.

Scaling Rule of Thumb for the Loop Bandwidth

This rule deals with the case when the gain constant is changed, but the loop filter components are not changed and the impact on loop bandwidth is desired. Even though the loop filter is not optimized in this case, it still makes sense to understand how it behaves. An example of this could be where the loop filter is designed for a particular VCO gain, but the actual VCO has a gain that varies considerably.

To derive this rule, recall that the loop bandwidth is the frequency for which the magnitude of the open loop transfer function is unity. It is easier to see this relationship if the open loop transfer function is expressed in the following form.

$$G(s) = \frac{K}{s} \bullet \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} \qquad (9.12)$$

Although a coarse approximation, if one neglects all the poles and zeros, one can derive the fundamental result.

$$Fc \propto \sqrt{K} \qquad (9.13)$$

This rule assumes that the loop filter is not changed. For example, suppose that it is known that a PLL has a loop bandwidth of 10 kHz when the VCO gain is 20 MHz/V. Suppose the VCO gain is actually 40 MHz/V. In this case, the loop bandwidth should be about 1.4 times larger. This rule of thumb is not exact and the loop filter may not be perfectly optimized, but it is useful in many situations.

Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the fundamental concept of PLL transfer functions. The reader should familiarize themselves with the notation in this chapter, since it will be used throughout the book. Although the PLL transfer functions are derived as phase transfer functions, the frequency transfer functions are identical.

Chapter 10   Applications for PLL Other than a Signal Source

Introduction

Aside from generating a stable and tunable reference source, the PLL can also be used to modulate and demodulate datal. There are three basic parameters that can be modulated: the N counter, the Reference Oscillator, the VCO, and the tuning voltage. Each method has its advantages and disadvantages. Other applications which are similar to modulation are clock recovery and clock cleaning and clock recovery applications, in which a noisy reference signal is cleaned up by the PLL.

General Phase and Frequency Modulation Theory

Relationship Between Phase and Frequency
To start, however the modulation is created, it is going to show up at the output of the VCO. Let the voltage output of the VCO be defined as follows:

$$V(t) = A \bullet \cos[\omega_0 \bullet t + \phi(t)] \qquad (10.1)$$

Where

A	$=$	Amplitude of Signal
$\omega_0 \bullet t + \phi(t)$	$=$	Instantaneous Phase
ω_0	$=$	Frequency of unmodulated signal
$\phi(t)$	$=$	Phase Shift of the Signal

The instantaneous frequency of the signal is the time derivative of the instantaneous phase.

$$\frac{d}{dt}[\omega_0 \bullet t + \phi(t)] = \omega_0 + \frac{d\phi}{dt} \qquad (10.2)$$

The frequency modulation can be thought of as the difference of the actual frequency and the unmodulated frequency of the signal.

$$f(t) = \frac{d\phi}{dt} \qquad (10.3)$$

It follows from this that:

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t f(x) \bullet dx \qquad (10.4)$$

Since the frequency modulation is the derivative of the phase modulation, it follows frequency and phase modulation are really different ways of looking at the same thing. It is therefore sufficient to focus the study on phase modulation. The only difference is that in traditional frequency modulation, one would not expect the phase to change abruptly because this would not be possible if the modulation function for the frequency was

continuous. To account for this subtle point, frequency modulation and phase modulation will be generalized as angle modulation. It therefore follows that (10.1) can be re-stated as:

$$V(t) = A \bullet \cos[\omega_0 \bullet t + \phi(t)] = A \bullet \cos\left[\omega_0 \bullet t + \int_0^t f(x) \bullet dx\right] \qquad (10.5)$$

When modulation is applied to a PLL in various forms, sometimes an integral or derivative finds its way worked in to the formula. This is why it is useful to understand this relationship between frequency and phase.

Sinusiodal Tone Modulation

The most basic form of modulation is a sinusoidal tone. For this type of modulation:

$$\phi(t) = \beta \bullet \sin(\omega_n \bullet t) \qquad (10.6)$$

It is easier to think of this in terms of frequency modulation. In order to do this, the phase modulation is differentiated.

$$f(t) = \beta \bullet \omega n \bullet \cos(\omega_n \bullet t) = \Delta F \bullet \cos(\omega_n \bullet t) \qquad (10.7)$$

Since $\beta \bullet sin(\omega_n \bullet t)$, represents the phase deviation of the signal, this expression can be differentiated to determine the frequency deviation, ΔF, and the following identity easily follows from (10.7) (Tranter 1985):

$$\beta = \frac{\Delta F}{\omega_n} \qquad (10.8)$$

By writing down the Fourier Series for $e^{j \bullet \beta \bullet sin(\omega_n \bullet t)}$, the following identity can be derived (Tranter 1985).

$$e^{j \bullet \beta \bullet sin(\omega_n \bullet t)} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n(\beta) \bullet e^{j \bullet n \bullet \omega_m \bullet t} \qquad (10.9)$$

In the above expression, $J_n(\beta)$ is the Bessel function of the first kind of order n.

Applying the identity allows the power spectral density to be simplified as follows (Tranter 1985):

$$Vout(t) = A \bullet cos[\omega_0 \bullet t + \beta \bullet sin(\omega_m \bullet t)] \qquad (10.10)$$

$$= A \bullet Real\left\{e^{j\bullet\omega_0\bullet t} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n(\beta) \bullet e^{j\bullet n\bullet\omega_m\bullet t}\right\}$$

$$= A \bullet \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n(\beta) \bullet cos(\omega_0 \bullet t + n \bullet \omega_m \bullet t)$$

From this expression, the sideband levels can be found by visual inspection.

$$Carrier: \quad J_0(\beta) \approx 1 \qquad (10.11)$$

$$First \quad : \quad J_1(\beta) \approx \frac{\beta}{2}$$

$$Second: \quad J_2(\beta) \approx \frac{\beta^2}{8}$$

$$n^{th} \quad : \quad J_n(\beta)$$

The modulation index, β, is of particular interest in FM modulation, since it determines the sideband levels. The modulation index will be discussed in a later chapter in this book and will shown to be applicable to calculating reference spur levels for the PLL. The following figures below show a sinusoidually modulated FM signal in the time and frequency domains.
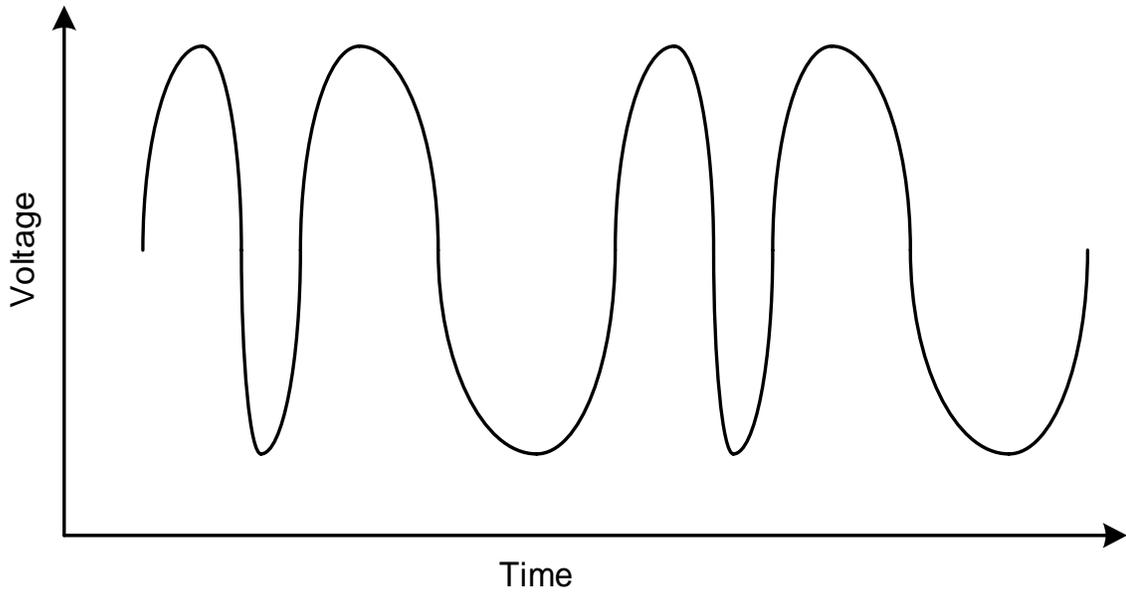
Figure 10.1 *FM Modulation in the Time Domain*
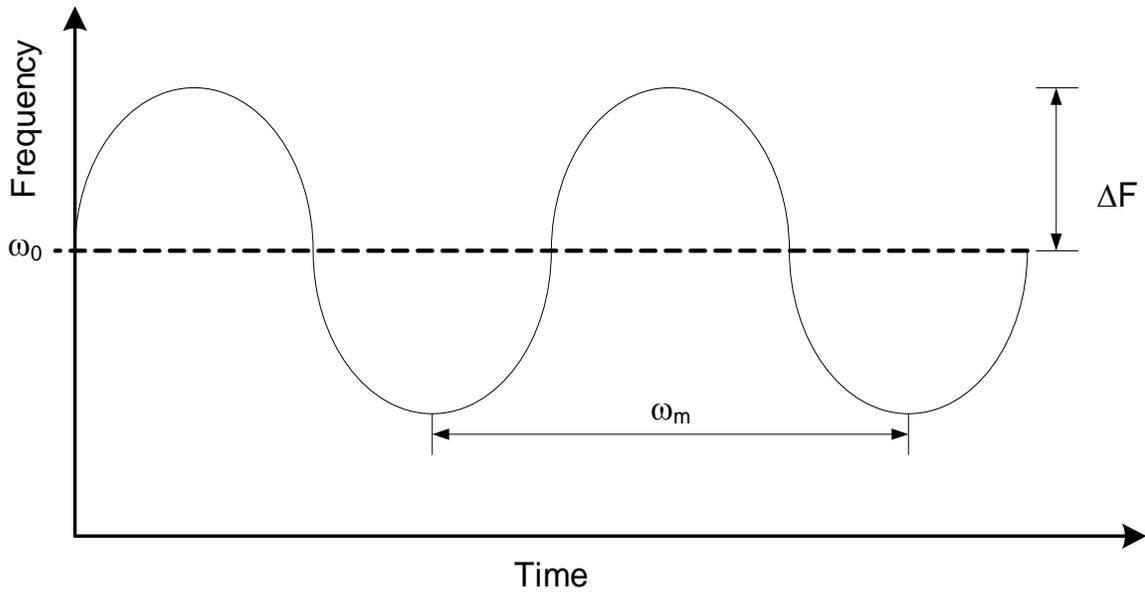
Figure 10.2 *FM Modulation as Viewed as Frequency vs. Time*

Modulation Techniques

Modulation of the Reference Oscillator

In this technique, the reference oscillator is modulated. Crystal references can be modulated by adding a variable capacitance to the load capacitors. This is known as pulling the crystal. All modulation within the loop bandwidth is passed, and the general rule of thumb is that the loop bandwidth should be twice of the information bandwidth of the modulating signal.

Note the frequency deviation of the modulation is not changed at the output of the VCO. This is for the same reason why the spurs of a signal after a divider have the same offset. The modulation can be either phase or frequency, and the output modulation is of the same type. This type of modulation is typically easy to implement. The transfer function for phase or frequency modulation is as follows:

$$T(s) = \frac{1}{R} \bullet \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)/N} \qquad (10.12)$$

Provided that the modulation frequency is less than about two times loop bandwidth, this can be approximated by:

$$T(s) \approx \frac{N}{R} \qquad (10.13)$$

For example, if the modulating signal was a sinusoidal tone, then the output at the VCO would be a similar sinusoidal tone with the same modulation frequency, ω_m, and with the frequency deviation, ΔF, multiplied by N/R.

Modulation of the Tuning Voltage or VCO

The VCO can be thought of as a voltage to frequency converter. So FM modulation can be achieved by modulating this tuning voltage. This can be done by adding a summing op-amp before the VCO. There are also many VCOs that have a modulation pin, which basically serves the same purpose. In this type of modulation, modulation below the loop bandwidth frequency is attenuated, so a narrow loop bandwidth is required. Using this method, the transfer function for voltage to frequency is as follows:

$$T(s) = \frac{k}{1 + G(s)/N} \qquad (10.14)$$

k is a constant in MHz/V that represents the frequency change for 1 volt applied to the modulation pin, or the input of the summing op-amp.

For this type of modulation, the loop bandwidth of the PLL is typically chosen narrow relative to the modulation frequency. In this case, the transfer function can be approximated as follows:

$$T(s) \approx k \qquad (10.15)$$

Modulation of the N Counter

For this modulation technique, the N counter value is modulated with information in order to produce a form of frequency shift keying. The most basic way to use this would be to have 2 frequencies, f1 and f2. Depending on the output frequency, the message could be determined as 0 or 1. The distance between these two frequencies determines the bandwidth. This method could also use many frequencies as well in order to reduce the required bandwidth.

This method can be further expanded if a fractional PLL is used. When data is modulated, it is often shaped as a Gaussian form to reduce intersymbol interference and reduce the bandwidth of the signal. If there is sufficient resolution, this waveform can be digitally programmed in the PLL. One issue with this technique is that it is limited by the write speed to the PLL and is therefore best for lower data rate applications.

For this application, data inside the loop bandwidth of the system is passed, and that outside of the loop bandwidth is attenuated. As a rule of thumb, the loop bandwidth should be about twice of the bandwidth of the modulated signal to avoid distorting the signal. The transfer function is shown below:

$$T(s) = \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)/N} \qquad\qquad (10.16)$$

Provided that the loop bandwidth is wide relative to the modulation frequency, the transfer function can be approximated as follows:

$$T(s) \approx N \qquad\qquad (10.17)$$

VCO Open Loop Modulation

This is a special type of VCO modulation where the charge pump is disabled during the time of modulation. The reason for doing this is to prevent the PLL from fighting the modulation. A drawback of this method is that the loop filter voltage will drift when the charge pump is off, so the time that the VCO can be modulated is limited by how fast the VCO drifts off frequency. The charge pump leakage of the PLL is typically the dominant source of leakage, and the sum of the capacitors in the loop filter is a rough approximation for the effective capacitance that this leakage acts on for purposes of frequency drift calculations. Because of this fact, designs with narrower loop bandwidth, higher change pump currents, or higher comparison frequencies (as in Fractional N PLLs) tend to be more resistant to leakage due to the larger capacitor sizes. There is typically a phase disturbance when the charge pump is engaged or disengaged, which needs to be taken into consideration. The transfer function for open loop modulation is shown below:

$$T(s) = Kvco \qquad\qquad (10.18)$$

Dual Port Modulation

In all the modulation techniques discussed so far, except for open loop modulation, the PLL fights the modulation inside or outside the loop bandwidth. In dual port modulation, both the reference and the VCO are modulated at the same time. In this way, the modulations added together give the desired modulation without any distortion from the PLL. This makes it such that the PLL does not interfere with the modulation but is more complex. If *m(s)* represents the desired modulation, then this modulation needs to be pre-distorted. The modulation frequency (or phase) applied to the crystal reference needs to be multiplied by a factor of *R/N* and the modulation presented to the VCO needs to be divided by a factor of *Kvco*.

$$m(s) \bullet T(s) = \left(\frac{R}{N} \bullet m(s) \right) \bullet \frac{1}{R} \bullet \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)/N} + \left(\frac{m(s)}{Kvco} \right) \bullet \frac{Kvco}{1 + G(s)/N} \; = \; m(s) \qquad (10.19)$$

Note that there is theoretically no distortion, however, due to delays in the phase detector, there may be some. If a voltage phase detector is being used, instead of a charge pump, the modulation can be injected after this charge pump before and after the loop filter.

Pre-Emphasis/Pre-Distortion

In many types of PLL modulation, the PLL fights the modulation and the loop filter dynamics. The first way to compensate for this is to simply make the loop bandwith sufficiently wide such that this is not an issue. However, the loop bandwidth may be limited by spur requirements, phase noise requirements, or the comparison frequency. Aside from dual-port modulation, another technique that can be used to overcome this is pre-emphasis, also called pre-distortion. In this technique, the signal is intentionally distorted before it is sent to the PLL in such a way that the distortion due to the loop bandwidth off the PLL cancels out this distortion, and the recovered signal is the intended one with no distortion. For example, if the crystal reference is modulated, the Laplace transform of the pre-distortion function would be:

$$P(s) = R \bullet \frac{1 + G(s)/N}{G(s)} \qquad (10.20)$$

Another trivial type of pre-emphasis was already described in dual-port modulation, where the frequency deviation, *ΔF*, presented to the R counter was multiplied by a factor of *R*.

Demodulation Techniques

All the demodulation techniques discussed in this chapter involve using the carrier with modulation as a reference input to the PLL. Whether phase demodulation or frequency demodulation is desired determines where the demodulated signal is monitored.

Demodulation at the Tuning Voltage of the VCO
If the modulation to be recovered is frequency modulation, then the voltage presented to the VCO has the following transfer function.

$$T(s) = \frac{1}{R} \bullet \frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)/N} \bullet \frac{s}{Kvco} \qquad (10.21)$$

If the loop bandwidth is made wide, then this can be approximated as:

$$T(s) \approx \frac{N}{R} \bullet \frac{s}{Kvco} \qquad (10.22)$$

Note that all of the factors are constant, except for the factor of *s*, which indicates differentiation. So whatever modulation is input into the reference input, the tuning voltage will have the derivative of the input signal. For this reason, the modulation signal at the input is first integrated (and possibly multiplied by a scaling factor), so that when it is differentiated, the intended signal is obtained. Since frequency is the derivative of phase, this is why this modulation is regarded as frequency modulation.

Demodulation at the Output of the Phase Detector
Although the tuning voltage is easily accessible, it requires the extra step of the modulating signal be first integrated before it is sent. However, if the modulation is retrieved at the output of the phase detector, then this modulation is not necessary. If the phase detector is a voltage phase detector, then this signal is easy to retrieve. However, charge pump PLLs have mostly replaced voltage phase detectors, which complicates things, since this current output needs to be converted to a voltage. One method is to put a small series sense resistor that develops a voltage that is proportional to the charge pump current. Another method is to use the an analog lock detect mode, which puts out negative pulses width whenever the charge pump turns on and proportional to the phase error. However, the information of the polarity is lost. For this method of demodulation, the transfer function is as follows:

$$T(s) = \frac{1}{R} \bullet \frac{Kd}{1 + G(s)/N} \qquad (10.23)$$

For this type of modulation, the loop bandwidth is typically made narrow, and the transfer function can be approximated as:

$$T(s) \approx \frac{Kd}{R} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(10.24)}}$$

Kd is the voltage gain of the phase detector, neglecting the impact of the charge pump. In the case that a charge pump PLL is being used and this is being extracted from the lock detect output or from a sense resistor, this would be the voltage produced divided by 2π.

AM Demodulation
Note that AM modulation is not possible with a PLL alone. However, there is an architecture, called a Costas Loop, which can demodulate an AM signal. In general, AM can be demodulated in other ways, but the Costas Loop is good when the carrier itself is weak. This involves squaring the signal and using some dividers and is beyond the scope of this book.

Clocking Applications
Clock Recovery Applications

This is in some ways similar to demodulating a signal with a PLL; the signal is used as a reference oscillator for the PLL. In wired communications, a clock is typically used to send data. However, it is undesirable to use an extra wire to just send the clock. In this sort of application, the clock is recovered from the data. The basic idea is that the data should have a sufficient number of transitions in order to get the PLL to lock to the clock frequency. There are encoding methods that can be used with the data that ensure that there are a sufficient number of transitions and that the clock is recoverable. Another possible technique would be to send a preamble before the message to synchronize the clock.

Dithered Clock Applications
For some applications with a clock, low EMI (Electromagnetic Emissions) are desired. Some specifications require that the power at any particular frequency can not exceed a certain amount. In this type of application, the clock is dithered so that its noise power is spread out in order to meet these specifications.

Jitter Cleaner Applications

In this type of applications, the clock is noisy. This clock may be noisy for intentional reasons or for non-intentional reasons. For instance, sometimes the clock is intentionally made noisy in order to reduce the its radiated energy for EMI requirements.

For whatever reason that the clock is dirty, the idea is to use this as the reference oscillator for a system with a very narrow loop bandwidth. The noise of the clock outside of the loop bandwidth of the system is attenuated. 10 Hz might be a typical loop bandwidth. If the loop bandwidth is made too narrow, it might turn out that the capacitors in the loop filter become unrealistically large, or that the close-in phase noise of the system is degraded due to the VCO noise.

Conclusion

Aside from providing a stable signal source, the PLL can also be used to modulate or demodulate data. As discussed above, there are many approaches to this, each with their advantages and disadvantages. Just because the PLL can be modulated with information does not mean that this is the only way to modulate or demodulate data. It is very common in modern digital communications to not modulate the PLL and simply use it as a signal source.

References

Tranter, W.H. and R.E. Ziemer *Principles of Communications   Systems, Modulation, and Noise*, 2nd ed, Houghton Mifflin Company, 1985

Chapter 11

Reference Spurs and their Causes

Introduction

In PLL frequency synthesis, reference sidebands and spurious outputs are an issue in design. There are several types of these spurious outputs with many different causes. However, by far, the most common type of spur is the reference spur. These spurs appear at multiples of the comparison frequency.

This chapter investigates the causes and behaviors of these reference spurs. In general, spurs are caused by either leakage or mismatch of the charge pump. Depending on the cause of the reference spurs, the spurs may behave differently when the comparison frequency or loop filter is changed. This chapter will discuss how to determine which is the dominant cause for a given application. In order to discuss spur levels, the fundamental concept of spur gain will be introduced. A clear understanding of spur gain is the starting point to understanding how reference spurs will vary from one filter to another. After this concept is developed, leakage and mismatch dominated spurs will be discussed, and then these results will be combined.
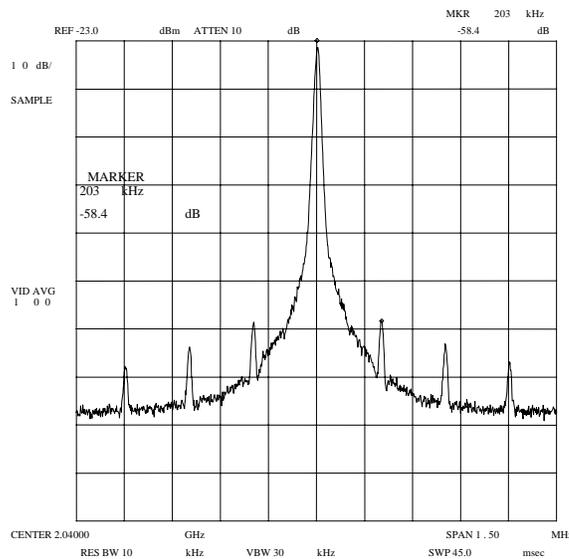
Figure 11.1 *Typical Reference Spur Plot*

The Definition of Spur Gain

Conceptually, if a given current noise of a fixed frequency is injected into the loop filter from the charge pump, then the power of the frequency noise that this induces at the VCO would be a start to defining the spur gain. An additional factor of *1/s* is included in the transfer function to simplify the arithmetic later. Note that since this is a frequency change, it is necessary to multiply the transfer function by a factor of *s* to convert from phase to frequency. This factor of *1/s* is left in, because it turns out that it is reintroduced because of other factors. Furthermore it makes the concept of spur gain a dimensionless quantity. Now since the power of the reference spur is sought, it is necessary to square this gain, and it is finally expressed in decibels for convenience.

$$Spur\,Gain\,(\,Fspur\,) = 20 \bullet log\left|CL(\,s\,)\right|_{s\,=\,j\bullet Fspur\bullet2\bullet\pi} \qquad\qquad (11.1)$$

So spur gain is the closed loop transfer function evaluated at the spur offset frequency of interest, **Fspur**. In most cases, **Fspur** will be assumed to be the comparison frequency, **Fcomp**, but it could also be other frequencies, such as multiples of the comparison frequency, or fractions of the comparison frequency (in the case of a fractional N PLL). In cases where the spur frequency of interest is far outside the loop bandwidth, the spur gain can be approximated using the open loop transfer function instead of the closed loop transfer function. This greatly simplifies some of the mathematical analysis done later on.

The levels of reference spurs are directly related to the spur gain. In other words, if the spur gain decreases 1 dB, one would expect the spur at that frequency as well to decrease by 1 dB. The derivation of this is given in the Appendix and the approximations used hold very well provided that the spur level that is predicted is –10 dBc or lower. Aside from spur gain, there are other factors that contribute to spur levels, depending on whether the spurs are leakage dominated or mismatch dominated.

Leakage Dominated Spurs

At lower comparison frequencies, leakage effects are the dominant cause of reference spurs. When the PLL is in the locked condition, the charge pump will generate short alternating pulses of current with long periods in between in which the charge pump is tri-stated.
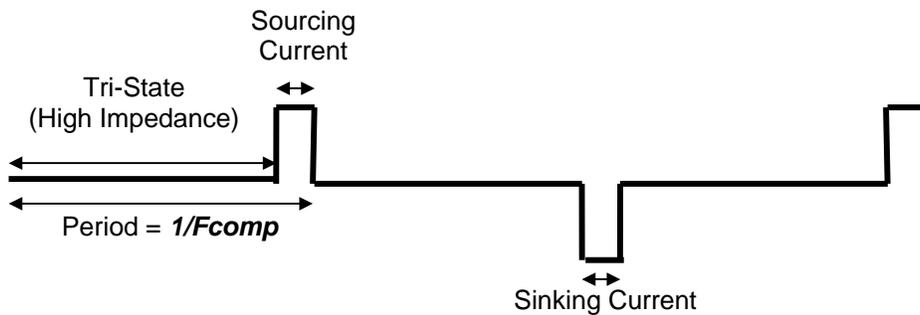
Figure 11.2 *Output of the Charge Pump When the PLL is in the Locked Condition*

When the charge pump is in the tri-state state, it is ideally high impedance. There will be some parasitic leakage through the charge pump, VCO, and loop filter capacitors. Of these leakage sources, the charge pump tends to be the dominant one. This causes FM modulation on the VCO tuning line, which in turn results in spurs. This is described in greater detail in the appendix. To predict the reference spur levels based on leakage, use the following general rule:

$$Leakage\,Spur = Base\,Leakage\,Spur + 20 \bullet log\left(\frac{Leakage}{K\phi}\right) + Spur\,Gain \qquad (11.2)$$

The leakage due to the PLL charge pump is temperature dependent and is often given guaranteed ratings as well as typical ratings and graphs in performance. The leakage of the charge pump increases with temperature, so spurs caused by leakage of the charge pump tend to increase when the PLL is heated. Various leakage currents were induced at various comparison frequencies, and the results were measured on the bench. The loop filter was not changed during any of these measurements. These results imply the fundamental constant for leakage-dominated spurs:

$$BaseLeakageSpur \quad = \quad 16.0 \; dBc \qquad\qquad (11.3)$$

Note that this constant is universal and not part specific and should apply to any integer PLL. It can also not be stressed enough that it is impossible to directly measure the *BaseLeakageSpur* – this number is extrapolated from other numbers.

I_{leak} (nA)	$20 \bullet$ Log $(I_{leak}/K\phi)$ (dB)	*Fcomp* (kHz)	Filter	Spur Levels (dBc)			Spur Gain (dB)			Implied BaseLeakage Spur (dBc)		
				1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd
200	-86.0	50	A	-28.3	-40.5	-47.3	41.7	29.7	22.7	16.0	15.8	16.0
100	-92.0	50	A	-33.8	-45.7	-52.7	41.7	29.7	22.7	16.5	16.6	16.6
100	-80.0	100	B	-24.3	-40.5	-51.5	38.8	21.9	11.6	16.9	17.6	16.9
100	-80.0	200	B	-43.5	-61.5	-72.0	21.9	4.2	-6.3	14.6	14.3	14.3
500	-46.0	400	C	-32.7	X	X	-2.4	X	X	15.7	X	X
200	-54.0	400	C	-40.5	X	X	-2.4	X	X	15.9	X	X
Average Base Leakage spur										15.9	16.1	16.0

Filter	$K\phi$ (mA)	*Kvco* (MHz/V)	C1 (nF)	C2 (nF)	C3 (pF)	R2 (KΩ)	R3 (KΩ)	Output Frequency (MHz)
A	4.0	17	5.6	33	0	4.7	0	900
B	1.0	43	0.47	3.3	90	12	39	1960
C	0.1	48	1	4.7	0	18	0	870

Figure 11.3 Spur Level vs. Leakage Currents and Comparison Frequency

Note that the *BaseLeakageSpur* index applies to the primary reference spurs as well as higher harmonics of this spur. Appendix B shows a theoretical calculation that derives this same result to textbook accuracy.

Pulse Related Spurs

In classical PLL literature, it is customary to model the reference spurs based entirely on leakage currents. For older PLLs, where the leakage currents were in the μA range, this made reasonable estimates for reference spurs and their behavior. However, modern PLLs typically have leakage currents of 1 nA or less, and therefore other factors tend to dominate the spurs, except at low comparison frequencies.

Recall that the charge pump comes on for very short periods of time and then is off during most of the time. It is the length of time that these short charge pump corrections are made that determines the pulse related spur. In other words, if leakage is not the dominant factor, then it is this time that the charge pump is on that determines the spur levels. There are several factors that influence this correction pulse width which include dead-zone elimination circuitry, charge pump mismatches, and unequal transistor turn on times.

The dead zone elimination circuitry forces the charge pump to turn on in order to keep the phase detector out of the dead zone. It is this period that the charge pump is on that is the root cause of reference spurs when charge pump leakage is not a factor. Note that even though leakage is not the cause of pulse related spurs, it can have a small influence on this pulse width.

Mismatch and unequal turn on times of the charge pump transistors also have a large impact on this minimum turn on time for the charge pump. When the charge pump source and sink currents are not equal, they are said to have mismatch. For instance, if the source current were 10% higher than the sink current, then a rough rule of thumb would be that the charge pump would have to come on 10% longer than its minimum on time when sinking current, producing an overall increase in spur levels. The unequal turn on times of the sink and source transistors also can increase this charge pump on time. In general, the source transistor is a PMOS device, which has twice the turn on time as the sink transistor, which is an NMOS device. The net effect of this is that the effective source current is reduced, and this has a similar effect as having negative mismatch. To illustrate this issue, consider the National Semiconductor LMX2315 PLL for which the optimal spur levels occur around +4% mismatch instead of 0% mismatch due to these unequal transistor turn on times.

For pulse related spur issues, it is important to be aware of the mismatch properties and to base the design around several different parts to get an idea of the full variations. Mismatch properties of parts can vary from date code to date code, so it is important to consider that in the design process. Also, in designs where an op-amp is used in the loop filter, it is best to center the op-amp around half of the charge pump supply voltage or slightly higher. Due to this variation of spur level over tuning voltage to the VCO, the way that spurs are characterized in this chapter are by the worst-case spur when the VCO tuning voltage is varied from 0.5 volts to 0.5 volts below the charge pump supply. The variation can also be mentioned, since this shows how much the spur varies, but ultimately, the worst-case spur should be the figure of merit. To predict reference spurs caused by the pulsing action of the charge pump, the following rule applies.

$$\textbf{\textit{Pulse Spur} = \textit{BasePulseSpur} + \textit{SpurGain} + 40} \bullet log\left(\frac{\textbf{\textit{Fspur}}}{\textbf{\textit{1 Hz}}}\right)$$

(11.4)

The reader may be surprised to see that the above formula has the additional *Fspur* term added. This was first discovered by making observations with a modulation domain analyzer, which displays frequency versus time. In the case of the leakage-dominated spur, the VCO frequency was assumed to be modulated in a sinusoidal manner, which was confirmed with observations on the bench. However, this was not the case for the pulse-dominated spur. For these, frequency spikes occur at regular intervals of time corresponding to when the charge pump turns on. The pulse-dominated spurs were measured and their magnitude could be directly correlated to the magnitude of these frequency spikes. This correlation was independent of the comparison frequency. Therefore, using the modulation index concept does not work for pulse dominated spurs and introduces an error equal to *20•log(Fspur)*. The pulse spur differs from the leakage spur not by this factor but by *40•log(Fspur)*. The additional factor of *20•log(Fspur)* comes because it is more proper to model the charge pump noise as a train of pulse functions, not a sinusoidal function. Recall to recover the time domain response of a pulse function applied to a system, this is simply the inverse Laplace transform. In a similar way that the inverse Laplace transform of *1/s* is just *1*, and not involving any factors of *1/ω*, likewise in this situation, a factor of *1/ω* is lost for this reason, thus accounting for the additional factor of *40•log(Fspur)*.

Fout MHz	*N*	*Fspur* kHz	*Kφ* mA	*Kvco* MHz/V	*C1* nF	*C2* nF	*C3* pF	*R2* KΩ	*R3* KΩ	*Spur* dBc	*Spur Gain* dB	*BasePulse Spur* dBc
This data was all taken from an LMX2330 PLL. The VCO was near the high end of the rail.												
1895	18950	100	4	43.2	2.2	10	0	6.8	0	-51.7	46	-297.7
1895	18950	100	4	43.2	13.9	66	0	2.7	0	-69.7	30	-299.7
1895	18950	100	4	43.2	0.56	2.7	0	15	0	-41.0	58	-299.0
1895	18950	100	4	43.2	1.5	6.8	0	5.6	0	-50.0	49.2	-299.2
1895	18950	100	4	43.2	1.5	6.8	100	5.6	39	-59.8	40.5	-300.3
1895	6064	312.5	4	43.2	4.7	20	0	1.8	0	-60.2	19.6	-299.6
1895	6064	3125.	4	43.2	1.8	5.6	0	1.5	0	-51.1	27.7	-298.6
This data was taken from an LMX2326 PLL with Vtune = 0.29 V and Vcc = 3 V												
231	1155	200	1	12	0.47	3.3	0	12	0	-74.1	23.0	-309.1
881.6	4408	200	1	18	0.47	3.3	0	12	0	-70.1	27.6	-309.7
881.6	1146	770	1	18	0.47	3.3	0	12	0	-70.1	4.9	-308.8
1885	9425	200	1	50	0.47	3.3	0	12	0	-59.7	35.6	-308.6
1885	4343	434	1	12	0.47	3.3	0	12	0	-58.7	22.2	-307.7

Table 11.1 Demonstration of the Consistency of the BasePulseSpur

The first several rows in Table 11.1 demonstrate many different filters at the same output frequency. The last several rows use the same filter, but emphasize the difference in changing the *N* value and comparison frequency. For the last several rows, the charge pump voltage was kept at 0.29 volts to maintain consistent mismatch properties of the charge pump and to also make spurs that were easy to measure. For this reason, this table is a valuable tool to show how spur levels vary. However, it is not a good source of information for worst-case *BasePulseSpur*, since the tuning voltage was within 0.5 V of the supply rail and therefore out of specification.

PLL	Variation (dBc)	BasePulseSpur (dBc)
LMX2301/05, LMX2315/20/25	11	-299
LMX2330/31/32/35/36/37	23	-311
LMX2306/16/26	7	-309
LMX1600/01/02	5	-292
LMX2470/71, LMX2430/33/34, LMX2485/86		-331

Table 11.2 *BasePulseSpur for Various National Semiconductor PLLs*

Despite the tables and measurements given above, the avid reader is sure to try to relate the pulse related spur to the mismatch of the charge pump. To do this, the LMX2315 PLL was used, and the spur level was measured along with the charge pump mismatch. The spur gain of this system was 19.6 dB, and in this system the comparison frequency was 200 kHz, so the spurs are clearly pulse-dominated. Note that the turn-on time of the charge pump transistors also comes into play, so this result is specific to the LMX2315 family of PLLs.

Vtune (Volts)	1	1.5	2.2	3	4	4.5
Source (mA)	5.099	5.169	5.241	5.308	5.397	5.455
Sink (mA)	5.308	5.253	5.166	5.047	4.828	4.517
mismatch (%)	- 4.0	- 1.6	1.4	5.0	11.1	18.8
200 kHz Spur (dBc)	- 73.1	- 76.6	- 83.3	- 83.2	- 72.8	- 65.7

Table 11.3 *Sample Variation of Spur Levels and Mismatch with Do voltage*

Using statistical models, this suggests that the best spur performance is actually when the charge pump is 3.2 % mismatched and also gives the relationship:

$$BasePulseSpur = -315.6 + 1.28 \bullet | \%mismatch - 3.2\% | \qquad\qquad (11.5)$$

Combining the Concepts of Leakage Related Spurs and Pulse Related Spurs

Critical Values for Comparison Frequency

In most cases, it makes sense to model the spurs as pulse related spurs, but this may not work for low comparison frequencies. One way to determine if a spur is leakage or pulse related is to calculate spurs based on both methods, and use whichever method yields the largest spur levels. In most cases, the pulse related spur will dominate. If the leakage is known, and the **BasePulseSpur** is known, it is possible to predict the comparison frequency for which the spur is equally pulse and leakage dominated. If the comparison frequency is higher than this, then the spur becomes more pulse dominated. Note that this calculation is independent of the spur gain and is found by setting the leakage spur equal to the pulse spur and solving for the comparison frequency. Equation (11.6) and Table 11.4 show how to calculate the critical frequencies and give some values for reference.

$$40 \bullet log\left(\frac{Fcomp}{1\,Hz}\right) = (BaseLeakageSpur - BasePulseSpur) + 20 \bullet log\left(\frac{leakage}{K\phi}\right) \qquad (11.6)$$

Comparison frequencies that satisfy this equation will be called critical frequencies. At the critical frequency, the reference spur is equally dominated by leakage and pulse effects. Above the critical frequency, the spur becomes more pulse dominated, below the critical frequency, the spur becomes more leakage dominated. This table was generated assuming the a charge pump gain of 1 mA and a **BaseLeakageSpur** of 16.0 dBc. Note that the critical frequency is proportional to the square root of the leakage current, and inversely proportional to the square root of the charge pump gain.

		BasePulseSpur (dBc)						
		-290	**-300**	**-310**	**-320**	**-330**	**-340**	**-350**
Leakage (nA)	**0.1**	14.1	25.1	44.7	79.4	141.3	251.2	446.7
	1.0	44.7	79.4	141.3	251.2	446.7	794.3	1412.5
	10.0	141.3	251.2	446.7	794.3	1412.5	2511.9	4466.8
	100.0	446.7	794.3	1412.5	2511.9	4466.8	7943.3	14125.4
	1000.0	1412.5	2511.9	4466.8	7943.3	14125.4	25118.9	44668.4

Table 11.4 *Critical Values for Comparison Frequency in Kilohertz*

Composite Spur Calculation

This chapter has independently derived the spur levels based on leakage and pulse effects. Regardless of the dominant cause, the spur level is given by:

$$Spur = 10 \bullet log\left(10^{Leakage\,Spur/10} + 10^{Pulse\,Spur/10}\right) \qquad (11.7)$$

Spur Levels vs. Unoptimized Loop Filter Parameters

Using the expression for spur gain, the way that spur levels vary vs. various parameters can easily be calculated and is shown below:

Parameter	Description	Leakage Dominated Spurs	Pulse Dominated Spurs
i_{leak}	Charge Pump Leakage,	$20 \bullet log(i_{leak})$	N/A
M	Charge Pump Mismatch	N/A	Correlated to | **M** - Constant |
N	N Counter Value	independent	independent
Kvco	VCO Gain	$20 \bullet log(Kvco)$	$20 \bullet log(Kvco)$
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	$-40 \bullet log(Fcomp)$	$-20 \bullet log(Fcomp)$
r	= **Fcomp/Fc**	$-40 \bullet log(r)$	$-40 \bullet log(r) +$ $20 \bullet log(Fcomp)$
$K\phi$	Charge Pump Gain,	independent	$20 \bullet log(K\phi)$
SG	Spur Gain	**SG**	**SG**

Table 11.5 *Spur Levels vs. Parameters if Loop Filter is NOT Redesigned*

Harmonics of Pulse Dominated Reference Spurs

In the case of a leakage-dominated spur, **BaseLeakageSpur** also applies to the spur harmonics, so this topic has already been covered. The case of pulse dominated spurs still needs to be discussed. In order to address this issue, a LMX2326 PLL was tuned in 1 MHz increments from 1900 MHz to 1994 MHz using an automated test program. For these tests, $K\phi$ = 1 mA, **Fcomp** = 200 kHz, and **Kvco** = 45 MHz/V. Filter A had components of **C1** = 145 pF, **C2** = 680 pF, **R2** = 33 KΩ, while Filter B had components of **C1** = 315 pF, **C2** = 1.8 nF, and **R2** = 18 KΩ.

	Fundamental (200 kHz)	2nd Harmonic (400 kHz)	3rd Harmonic (600 kHz)
Minimum (dBc)	-56.2	-65.1	-64.5
Average (dBc)	-52.8	-58.5	-61.9
Maximum (dBc)	-49.3	-54.4	-59.0
Spur Gain for Spur (dB)	45.7	33.8	26.8
BasePulseSpur (dBc)	-307.0	-312.4	-316.9

Table 11.6 Reference Spurs and their Harmonics for Filter A

	Fundamental (200 kHz)	2nd Harmonic (400 kHz)	3rd Harmonic (600 kHz)
Minimum (dBc)	-64.8	-70.4	-69.1
Average (dBc)	-60.8	-65.1	-66.8
Maximum (dBc)	-56.2	-61.1	-64.7
Spur Gain for Spur (dB)	39.0	27.1	20.0
BasePulseSpur (dBc)	-307.2	-312.2	-315.8

Table 11.7 Reference Spurs and their Harmonics for Filter B

Table 11.6 and Table 11.7 show that the pulse spur is relatively consistent for different filters, however the second harmonic has a different BasePulseSpur than the first. These empirical measurements would suggest to expect that the BasePulseSpur for the second harmonic to be about 5 dB better than the BasePulseSpur for the first harmonic, and for the BasePulseSpur of the third harmonic to be about 4 dB better than the BasePulseSpur for the second harmonic.

Table 11.6 and Table 11.7 show harmonics of pulse dominated reference spurs. Similar measurements can also be made for harmonics of leakage-dominated spurs. Theoretically, one would expect that the higher harmonics to behave differently than the fundamental leakage dominated spur, since they are based on the higher powers of the modulation index (See Appendix A), however measured results show that they can be treated just as the fundamental leakage spur, except for the value of **BaseLeakageSpur** for them is a little different.

	Fundamental (200 kHz)	2nd Harmonic (400 kHz)	3rd Harmonic (600 kHz)
Minimum (dBc)	-56.2	-65.1	-64.5
Average (dBc)	-52.8	-58.5	-61.9
Maximum (dBc)	-49.3	-54.4	-59.0
Spur Gain for Spur (dB)	45.7	33.8	26.8
BasePulseSpur (dBc)	-307.0	-312.4	-316.9

Table 11.8 *Reference Spurs and their Harmonics for Filter A*

Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the causes of reference spurs and given some techniques to simulate their general behavior. The concept of spur gain applies to reference spurs and gives a relative indication of how they vary from one loop filter to another when the other parameters, such as comparison frequency are held constant. Reference spurs can be caused by leakage or pulse effects. Pulse effects is a generic term to refer to inconsistencies in the pulse width of the charge pump caused by mismatch, or unequal transistor turn on times. Although reference spurs are intended to refer to spurs that appear at a spacing equal to the comparison frequency from the carrier, the models in this chapter are also useful in predicting harmonics of reference spurs and fractional spurs. One caution dealing with fractional spurs is they may be sensitive to voltage and prescaler. They also often have a dependence on the output frequency as well. In general, the spur that is closest to the carrier is the most troublesome, since it is most difficult to filter.

As for the accuracy of the formulas presented in this chapter, there will always be some variation between the actual measured result and the theoretical results. Relative comparisons using spur gain tend to be the most accurate. It is recommended to use the empirical value, but to accept that there could be several dB variation between the predicted and measured results. In the case of pulse-dominated spurs, the value for **BasePulseSpur** is purely empirical and is based solely on measured data. These spurs can also change a good 15 dB as the VCO is tuned across its tuning range. It is the worst-case spur is the one that is being modeled.

Appendix A: Spectra of Spurious Signals

The modulation index and has already been discussed. The spur levels relate the modulation index by:

$$Spur\ Level \quad = \quad 20 \bullet log(\beta/2) \tag{11.8}$$

Below is a table of first sideband level versus frequency deviation from zero for various comparison frequencies:

Spur Level (dBm)	Modulation Index (β)	Frequency Deviation for Various Comparison Frequencies (Hz)					
		Fcomp 10 kHz	*Fcomp 30 kHz*	*Fcomp 50 kHz*	*Fcomp 100 kHz*	*Fcomp 200 kHz*	*Fcomp 1000 kHz*
-30	*6.32e-2*	632	1900	3160	6320	12600	63200
-40	*2.00e-2*	200	600	1000	2000	4000	20000
-50	*6.32e-3*	63	190	316	632	1260	6320
-55	*3.56e-3*	36	107	178	356	712	3560
-60	*2.00e-3*	20	60	100	200	400	2000
-65	*1.12e-3*	11	34	56	112	224	1120
-70	*6.32e-4*	6	19	32	63	126	632
-75	*3.56e-4*	4	11	18	36	71	356
-80	*2.00e-4*	2	6	10	20	40	200
-85	*1.12e-4*	1	3	6	11	22	112
-90	*6.32e-5*	0.6	2	3	6	13	63

Table 11.9 *Spur Level, Modulation Index, and Frequency Variation*

Bessel Correction for Spur Gain

By using the approximation to the first order Bessel Function shown in equation (10.11), one can derive equation (11.8), which implies that if the spur gain changes by 1 dB, then so do the spurs. In actuality, this disregards the higher order terms in the Taylor Series for the Bessel function, which can be relevant in some cases. The error in this assumption will be called the Bessel Correction and is shown in Figure 11.4 . For almost all situations, the Bessel Correction is far less than any measurement error, and can be neglected. If the spur level is –10 dBc or lower, the error is about –0.15 db, and the magnitude of this error gets much smaller at a rate of 10 dB/decade as the spur level gets lower. So provided that the spur level that is theoretically calculated is less than –10 dBc, there is no reason to worry

about this correction. In the case of fractional PLLs, this factor is disregarded, but there may be some obscure cases where it may become relevant. In order to simplify calculations, this correction factor will be assumed to be negligible and will be disregarded in calculations for the rest of this book. Figure 11.4 shows the impact of accounting for the Bessel Correction.
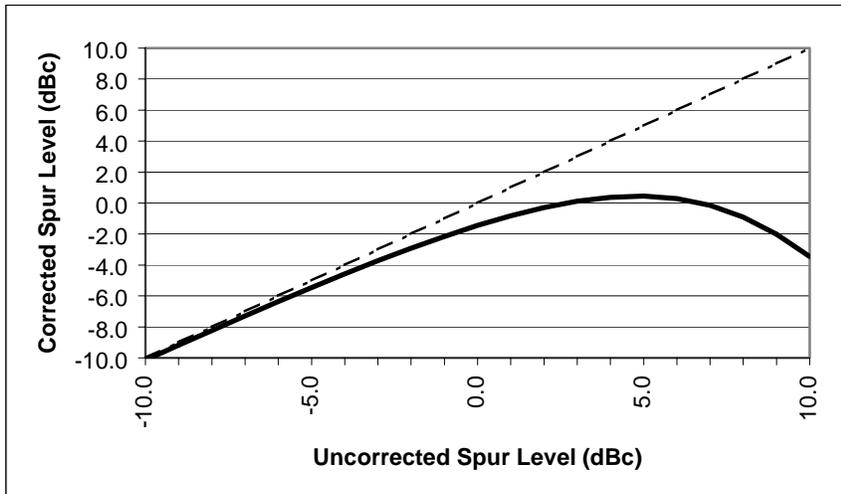
Figure 11.4 *Calculated Spur Levels Using the Bessel Correction*

Appendix B: Theoretical Calculation of Leakage Based Spurs

Since the **BaseLeakageSpur** is theoretically independent of PLL and loop filter, it makes sense to choose the loop filter that is the most basic. A simple capacitor is the most basic loop filter. Although this filter topology is not a stable one, it us sufficient for the purposes of calculations. Using this simplified loop filter, the voltage deviation to the VCO can easily be calculated.

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{leakage}{C1} \tag{11.9}$$

Substituting in known values gives the voltage deviation over one reference cycle:.

$$\Delta V = \int_{0}^{1/Fcomp} \frac{leakage}{C1} \bullet dt \;=\; \frac{leakage}{C1 \bullet Fcomp} \tag{11.10}$$

Now recall that when the PLL is in a locked condition, the corrections from the PFD alternate in polarity. This means that then change in voltage that was calculated represents a peak to peak voltage. In order to get the modulation index, it is necessary to divide this by a factor of two to convert it into an amplitude. The modulation index is therefore:

$$\beta = \frac{Kvco \bullet \Delta V}{2 \bullet Fcomp} = \frac{Kvco \bullet leakage}{2 \bullet C1 \bullet Fcomp^{2}} \tag{11.11}$$

The leakage spur can be calculated from the modulation index as follows:

$$\tag{11.12}$$

$$\textbf{Leakage Spur} \;=\; 20 \bullet \log\!\left(\beta\!\big/\!2\right)$$

$$=\; 20 \bullet \log\!\left(\frac{Kvco \bullet leakage}{4 \bullet C1 \bullet Fcomp^{2}}\right)$$

Now that the leakage spur is known for this specific case, we next need to calculate the spur gain. For this, we assume the spur is far outside the loop bandwidth. This implies that the spur gain can be approximated with the open loop gain.

$$\textbf{Spur Gain} \;=\; 20 \bullet \log\big|CL(s)\big|_{s=j \bullet Fcomp \bullet 2\pi} \;\approx\; 20 \bullet \log\big|OL(s)\big|_{s=j \bullet Fcomp \bullet 2\pi} \tag{11.13}$$

$$=\; 20 \bullet \log\left|\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{4\pi^{2} \bullet Fcomp^{2} \bullet C1}\right|$$

Then BaseLeakageSpur can be calculated as follows:

$$BaseLeakageSpur = LeakageSpur - SpurGain - 20 \bullet \log\left|\frac{leakage}{K\phi}\right| \qquad (11.14)$$

$$= 20 \bullet \log\left(\frac{Kvco \bullet leakage}{4 \bullet C1 \bullet Fcomp^2} \bullet \frac{4\pi^2 \bullet Fcomp^2 \bullet C1}{K\phi \bullet Kvco} \bullet \frac{K\phi}{\bullet leakage}\right)$$

$$= 20 \bullet \log(\pi^2) \approx 19.886 \; dBc$$

Correction for Base Leakage Spur

Now the above calculations derive a number for **BaseLeakageSpur** of 19.9 dBc. However, it is more accurate to model the modulation waveform as a triangle wave instead of a sine wave. Doing this gives a result that agrees very closely with the measured results.
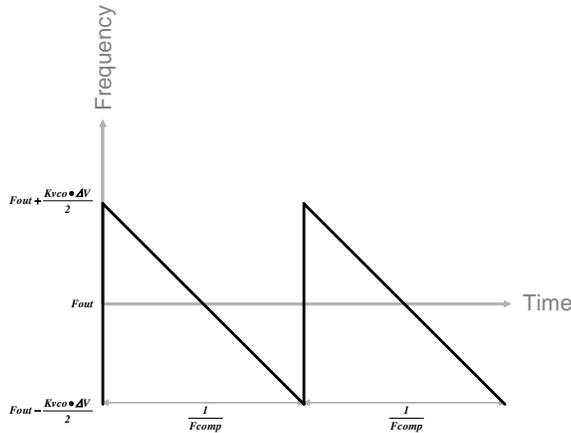
Figure 11.5 *VCO Frequency Output*

If one compares the first Fourier coefficient of the right triangle wave to that of a sine wave of the same amplitude, it is found that the magnitude of the right triangle is slightly less. The sine wave coefficient has a magnitude of $2/\pi$, while the sine wave has a coefficient of 1. The correction factor is therefore:

$$20 \bullet log\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right) = -3.9223 \qquad (11.15)$$

Adding in this factor gives the fundamental result that:

$$BaseLeakageSpur = 20 \bullet \log\left(\pi^2 \bullet \frac{2}{\pi}\right) = 20 \bullet \log(2\pi) \approx 16.0 dBc \qquad (11.16)$$

Chapter 12   Fractional Spurs and their Causes

Introduction

In fractional PLLs, spurs appear at a spacing equal to the channel spacing, even though the comparison frequency is much higher. These spurs that appear at the channel spacing in fractional PLLs are traditional fractional spurs. There are different ways of compensating for these spurs, each way having its own rules and exceptions. The easiest spur to understand and predict is the uncompensated fractional spur. After this, the impact of compensation can be discussed with better understanding.   Note that although higher order delta sigma PLLs do not have analog compensation, delta sigma modulation will be treated as a form of compensation, because it introduces many of the exceptions and special rules that analog compensation does. There are the concepts of in-band spurs and rolloff that are useful tools in understanding fractional spurs.

In-Band Spurs

One unique property of fractional PLLs over integer PLLs is that it is possible to have spurs within the loop bandwidth of the PLL and still have a stable system. Even though it is not feasible in many applications to have this, it still provides a useful understanding of fractional spurs and an understanding of what the fractional spurs will look like outside the loop bandwidth. On some PLLs, it is possible to disable the fractional compensation. The effects of these uncompensated spurs were studied at different VCO frequencies, comparison frequencies, charge pump gains, and VCO gains. It was found that the in-band spurs that were calculated were independent of all these factors. For uncompensated fractional spurs, the spurs may become higher than the carrier when brought inside the loop bandwidth. For this reason, these in-band uncompensated fractional spurs were not measured directly, but rather calculated by measuring fractional spurs outside the loop bandwidth and then accounting for how much the loop filter rolled off the spurs.

Rolloff

The amount of fractional spur supression that a loop filter gives is defined as rolloff and is calculated as shown below:

$$rolloff = Spur\ Gain\ - 20 \bullet log(N) \qquad\qquad (12.1)$$

In addition to being easy to calculate directly, rolloff can be approximated using a spectrum analyzer, provided that the VCO noise does not impact the measurement.   In order to measure it, one measures the phase noise at the frequency of interest and then subtracts away the in-band phase noise.   Although it can be approximated with a measurement, it is always more accurate to explicitly calculate it.

Mathematical Calculation of Uncompensated Fractional Spurs

Underlying Theory

The concept of modeling fractional spurs is to assume that the loop bandwidth is infinite and consider the resulting spectrum at the VCO output. Now the VCO output will be toggling between two frequency values. The output of the VCO can be expressed as follows:

$$f(t) = m(t) \bullet cos(2\pi \bullet f1 \bullet t) + (1 - m(t)) \bullet cos(2\pi \bullet f2 \bullet t) \qquad (12.2)$$

In this case, *m(t)* is the modulating signal. This has a value of either zero or one and corresponds is the overflow output of the fractional accumulator. In order to find the spectrum, we take the Fourier transform of the above expression. Recall that the Fourier transform a sum is the sum of the Fourier transforms and that the Fourier transform of a product is the convolution of the Fourier transforms. Applying these identities yields the following relationship.

$$\Im\{f(t)\} = M(s) \otimes \left(\frac{\delta(s - 2\pi \bullet f1) + \delta(s + 2\pi \bullet f1)}{2} \right) \qquad (12.3)$$

$$+ (\delta(s) - M(s)) \otimes \left(\frac{\delta(s - 2\pi \bullet f2) + \delta(s + 2\pi \bullet f2)}{2} \right)$$

$$= \frac{M(s - 2\pi \bullet f1) + M(s + 2\pi \bullet f1)}{2} - \frac{M(s - 2\pi \bullet f2) + M(s + 2\pi \bullet f2)}{2}$$

What the above equation demonstrates is that the spectrum of PLL output will be the spectrum of the modulating signal shifted in frequency. Therefore, in order to predict the fractional spurs, all that is necessary is to expand the modulating signal, *m(t)*, in a Fourier series. Note that in general, the modulating signal is neither even nor odd, so both the cosine and sine terms are necessary. By taking 20•Log of the magnitude of these, the spur levels can be calculated.

Fractional Spur Symmetry

After deriving the above equations, one will quickly realize the symmetry property of fractional spurs. This means that if one chooses a fractional numerator of one or one less than the fractional denominator (**FDEN**), the spurs are the same. This basically has the impact of switching f1 and f2. So in general, the spur for a fractional numerator of **FNUM** and **FDEN** minus **FNUM** will be the same. For instance, a fraction of 1/16 and 15/16 theoretically yield the same fractional spur spectrum.

Fractional Spur Chart

Spur Order	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Spur Power	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	-14.0	-15.6	-16.9	-18.1	-19.1	-20.0	-20.8	-21.6	-22.3	-22.9	-23.5	-24.1	-24.6	-25.1	-25.6	-26.0

Table 12.1 *Fractional Spur Chart*

The result of performing the fractional spur simulations is the above chart. The top row of the chart is the spur order. By this, it is meant that 1 is the worst-case spur, 2 is the second worse case spur, and so on. In this case, it is understood that fractional spurs come in pairs at *FNUM* and *FDEN-FNUM*, and it is these pairs that are being counted in this table. On the bottom row is the spur level in dBc. So the worst-case in-band spur is always 0 dBc. Note that this applies to any fractional spur be it the first, second, or whatever. The next question becomes how one determines what fractional numerator produces the worst-case spur. This is a function of the spur order. These concepts will be illustrated in the following examples.

First Fractional Spur

The first thing that needs to be done is that the following sequence needs to be generated:

1, floor(FDEN/2), floor(FDEN/3), floor(FDEN/4), floor(FDEN/5)

Consider the case that FDEN = 100. In this case, this turns out to be 1, 50, 33, 25, 20. Now the first element and its complement are the worst-case numerators. So 1 and 99 are the worst-case numerators. Then on the spur chart, we see the worst-case in-band spur is 0 dBc.

Now proceed to the next numerator. In this case, the number is 50. Now because this has a factor in common with the fractional denominator, there is no first fractional spur here and this one will be skipped. Had the fractional denominator been 101, then there would be a spur for this numerator of level –6 dBc. Even though there was no spur present for this numerator, it is still counted, and we progress down the chart for the next spur. The next number in the sequence is 33. This and the complementary frequency of 67 produce an in-band spur of –9.5 dBc. The next number is 25. Because this has a factor in common with 100, there is no spur here. The next number is 20, which also has a factor in common with 100, so there is no spur here either. Now the exception comes when the same number is repeated in the sequence. In this case, the spur power is correct, but the numerator is slightly shifted. Describing the generation of this sequence is tedious, but it is recommended for the reader to use the table for the first fractional spur as both a reference and for better understanding of how to generate the numbers for the in-band spur.

Second and Higher Order Fractional Spurs

For the second fractional spur, the most important thing to remember that the worst-case spur occurs for a fractional numerator of *2* and *FDEN – 2*. In most cases, the second worst-case spur is at numerator of *1* and *FDEN-1*, but there are exceptions. In this case, it is probably best to use the table. For the kth fractional spur, the worst-case spurs occur when the fractional numerator is *k* or *FDEN-k*.

In-Band Fractional Spur Tables

The next several pages show simulations for fractional spur levels and numerators. There are definite patterns in the numbers. The power levels from the spur chart keep on appearing and the fractional numerators appear in accordance to the rules discussed so far. Note for very small denominator values, the power levels get distorted a little bit. Even up to a fractional denominator of about 30, these power levels are slightly different from the power level chart.

Here is an example of how to use this table. Consider a comparison frequency of 13 MHz and a fractional denominator of 65. The first fractional spur will be at 200 kHz offset from the carrier and the worst-case will occur at numerators 1 and 64 with a level of 0 dBc. The second worst-case will be for numerators 32 and 33, the level will be –6.0 dBc. The third worst-case will be at levels –9.5 dBc for fractional numerators of 22 and 43.

If one was interested in the second fractional spur at 400 kHz offset, the worst-case would be 0 dBc for fractional numerators of 2 and 61. The second fractional spur will be at 400 kHz offset and will occur at numerators 2 and 63. The second worst-case would be for numerators of 1 and 64 with a level of –6.0 dBc. The third worst-case would be for numerators of 31 and 34 with levels of –9.5 dBc.

Fractional Denominator	In-Band Fractional Spur				Fractional Numerator			
	Worst-case	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst	Worst	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst
2	-3.9	x	x	x	1	x	x	x
3	-1.6	x	x	x	1	x	x	x
4	-0.9	x	x	x	1	x	x	2
5	-0.6	-4.8	x	x	1	2	x	x
6	-0.4	x	x	x	1	x	x	3
7	-0.3	-5.4	-7.3	x	1	3	2	x
8	-0.2	-7.9	x	x	1	3	x	x
9	-0.2	-5.7	-9.4	x	1	4	2	x
10	-0.1	-8.5	x	x	1	3	x	x
11	-0.1	-5.8	-8.7	-10.3	1	5	4	3
12	-0.1	-11.5	x	x	1	5	x	x
13	-0.1	-5.8	-8.9	-10.8	1	6	4	3
14	-0.1	-9.0	-12.2	x	1	5	3	x
15	-0.1	-5.9	-11.1	-13.7	1	7	4	2
16	-0.1	-9.1	-12.6	-14.1	1	5	3	7
17	0.0	-5.9	-9.2	-11.3	1	8	6	4
18	0.0	-12.9	-14.7	x	1	7	5	x
19	0.0	-5.9	-9.3	-11.5	1	9	6	5
20	0.0	-9.3	-15.1	-16.0	1	7	3	9
21	0.0	-6.0	-11.6	-13.2	1	10	5	4
22	0.0	-9.3	-13.3	-15.5	1	7	9	3
23	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-11.7	1	11	8	6
24	0.0	-13.4	-15.7	-17.6	1	5	7	11
25	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-11.7	1	12	8	6
26	0.0	-9.4	-13.5	-15.9	1	9	5	11
27	0.0	-6.0	-11.8	-13.5	1	13	7	11
28	0.0	-9.4	-13.6	-17.6	1	9	11	3
29	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-11.8	1	14	10	7
30	0.0	-16.1	-18.8	-19.4	1	13	11	7
31	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-11.8	1	15	10	8
32	0.0	-9.4	-13.7	-16.2	1	11	13	9
33	0.0	-6.0	-11.9	-13.7	1	16	8	13
34	0.0	-9.5	-13.7	-16.3	1	11	7	5
35	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-11.9	1	17	12	9
36	0.0	-13.7	-16.4	-19.5	1	7	5	13
37	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-11.9	1	18	12	9
38	0.0	-9.5	-13.8	-16.4	1	13	15	11
39	0.0	-6.0	-11.9	-13.8	1	19	10	8
40	0.0	-9.5	-16.5	-18.4	1	13	17	9
41	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-11.9	1	20	14	10
42	0.0	-13.8	-19.8	-20.9	1	17	19	13
43	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-11.9	1	21	14	11
44	0.0	-9.5	-13.8	-16.6	1	15	9	19
45	0.0	-6.0	-11.9	-16.6	1	22	11	13
46	0.0	-9.5	-13.8	-16.6	1	15	9	13
47	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	23	16	12
48	0.0	-13.8	-16.6	-20.1	1	19	7	13
49	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	24	16	12
50	0.0	-9.5	-16.6	-18.6	1	17	7	11
51	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	25	13	10
52	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.7	1	17	21	15
53	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	26	18	13
54	0.0	-13.9	-16.7	-20.2	1	11	23	5
55	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	27	18	14
56	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-18.7	1	19	11	25
57	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	28	14	23
58	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.7	1	19	23	25
59	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	29	20	15
60	0.0	-16.7	-20.4	-21.6	1	17	11	23
61	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	30	20	15
62	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.7	1	21	25	9
63	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	31	16	25
64	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.7	1	21	13	9
65	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	32	22	16
66	0.0	-13.9	-16.7	-21.7	1	13	19	5
67	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	33	22	17
68	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	23	27	29
69	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	34	17	14
70	0.0	-9.5	-18.9	-20.5	1	23	31	19
71	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	35	24	18
72	0.0	-13.9	-16.8	-20.5	1	29	31	13
73	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	36	24	18
74	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	25	15	21
75	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-16.8	1	37	19	32
76	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	25	15	11
77	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	38	26	19
78	0.0	-13.9	-16.8	-20.5	1	31	11	7
79	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	39	26	20
80	0.0	-9.5	-16.8	-18.9	1	27	23	9
81	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	40	20	16
82	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	27	33	35
83	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	41	28	21
84	0.0	-13.9	-20.6	-21.9	1	17	23	13
85	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	42	28	21
86	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	29	17	37
87	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	43	22	35
88	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	29	35	25
89	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	44	30	22
90	0.0	-16.8	-20.6	-22.0	1	13	41	7
91	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	45	30	23
92	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	31	37	13
93	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	46	23	37
94	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-16.8	1	31	19	27
95	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	47	32	24
96	0.0	-13.9	-16.8	-20.6	1	19	41	35
97	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	1	48	32	24
98	0.0	-9.5	-13.9	-19.0	1	33	39	11
99	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	1	49	25	20
100	0.0	-9.5	-16.8	-19.0	1	33	43	11
128	0.0	-9.5	-14.0	-16.9	1	43	51	55
1920	0.0	-16.9	-20.8	-22.3	1	823	349	443
1968	0.0	-14.0	-16.9	-20.8	1	787	281	179

Table 12.2 *Calculated First Fractional Spur*

Fractional Denominator	In-Band Fractional Spur				Fractional Numerator			
	Worst-case	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst	Worst	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst
2	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	x
3	-13.7	x	x	x	1	x	x	x
4	-3.9	-9.9	x	x	2	1	x	x
5	-4.3	-8.4	x	x	2	1	x	x
6	-1.6	-7.7	x	x	2	1	x	x
7	-2.1	-7.2	-9.1	x	2	1	3	x
8	-0.9	-6.9	-6.9	x	2	1	3	x
9	-1.3	-6.7	-10.4	x	2	1	4	x
10	-0.6	-4.8	-6.6	-10.8	2	4	1	3
11	-0.8	-6.5	-9.4	-11.0	2	1	3	5
12	-0.4	-6.4	-6.4	x	2	1	5	x
13	-0.6	-6.4	-9.4	-11.3	2	1	5	6
14	-0.3	-5.4	-6.3	-7.3	2	6	1	4
15	-0.4	-6.3	-11.5	-14.0	2	1	7	4
16	-0.2	-6.2	-6.2	-7.9	2	1	7	6
17	-0.3	-6.2	-9.5	-11.6	2	1	5	8
18	-0.2	-5.7	-6.2	-9.4	2	8	1	4
19	-0.3	-6.2	-9.5	-11.7	2	1	7	9
20	-0.1	-6.2	-6.2	-8.5	2	1	9	6
21	-0.2	-6.2	-11.8	-13.4	2	1	10	8
22	-0.1	-5.8	-6.1	-8.7	2	10	1	8
23	-0.2	-6.1	-9.5	-11.8	2	1	7	11
24	-0.1	-6.1	-6.1	-11.5	2	1	11	10
25	-0.2	-6.1	-9.5	-11.9	2	1	9	12
26	-0.1	-5.8	-6.1	-8.9	2	12	1	8
27	-0.1	-6.1	-11.9	-13.6	2	1	13	5
28	-0.1	-6.1	-6.1	-9.0	2	1	13	10
29	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-11.9	2	1	9	14
30	-0.1	-5.9	-6.1	-11.1	2	14	1	8
31	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-11.9	2	1	11	15
32	-0.1	-6.1	-6.1	-9.1	2	1	15	10
33	-0.1	-6.1	-11.9	-13.8	2	1	16	7
34	0.0	-5.9	-6.1	-9.2	2	16	1	12
35	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-11.9	2	1	11	17
36	0.0	-6.1	-6.1	-12.9	2	1	17	14
37	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	13	18
38	0.0	-5.9	-6.1	-9.3	2	18	1	12
39	-0.1	-6.1	-12.0	-13.8	2	1	19	16
40	0.0	-6.1	-6.1	-9.3	2	1	19	14
41	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	13	20
42	0.0	-6.0	-6.1	-11.6	2	20	1	10
43	-0.1	-6.1	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	15	21
44	0.0	-6.1	-6.1	-9.3	2	1	21	14
45	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-16.6	2	1	22	19
46	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	22	1	16
47	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	15	23
48	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-13.4	2	1	23	10
49	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	17	24
50	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	24	1	16
51	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	25	20
52	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	1	25	18
53	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	17	26
54	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-11.8	2	26	1	14
55	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	19	27
56	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	1	27	18
57	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	28	11
58	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	28	1	20
59	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	19	29
60	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-16.1	2	1	29	26
61	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	21	30
62	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	30	1	20
63	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	31	13
64	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.4	2	1	31	22
65	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	21	32
66	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-11.9	2	32	1	16
67	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	23	33
68	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	33	22
69	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	34	28
70	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	34	1	24
71	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	23	35
72	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-13.7	2	1	35	14
73	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	25	36
74	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	36	1	24
75	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-16.8	2	1	37	11
76	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	37	26
77	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	25	38
78	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-11.9	2	38	1	20
79	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	27	39
80	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	39	26
81	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	40	32
82	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	40	1	28
83	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	27	41
84	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-13.8	2	1	41	34
85	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	29	42
86	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	42	1	28
87	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-13.9	2	1	43	17
88	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	43	30
89	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	29	44
90	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-11.9	2	44	1	22
91	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	31	45
92	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	45	30
93	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-14.0	2	1	46	19
94	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	46	1	32
95	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	31	47
96	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-13.8	2	1	47	38
97	0.0	-6.0	-9.5	-12.0	2	1	33	48
98	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	48	1	32
99	0.0	-6.0	-12.0	-14.0	2	1	49	40
100	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	49	34
128	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-9.5	2	1	63	42
1920	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-16.9	2	1	959	274
1968	0.0	-6.0	-6.0	-14.0	2	1	983	394

Table 12.3 *Calculated Second Fractional Spur*

Fractional Denominator	In-Band Fractional Spur				Fractional Numerator			
	Worst-case	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst	Worst	2nd Worst	3rd Worst	4th Worst
2	-23.0	x	x	x	1	x	x	x
3	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	x
4	-20.0	x	x	x	1	x	x	2
5	-11.3	-15.5	x	x	2	1	x	x
6	-3.9	-13.5	x	x	3	1	x	x
7	-5.3	-10.4	-12.3	x	3	2	1	x
8	-4.0	-11.7	x	x	3	1	x	x
9	-1.6	-11.2	-11.2	-11.2	3	1	4	2
10	-2.5	-10.9	x	x	3	1	x	x
11	-2.1	-7.7	-10.6	-12.2	3	4	1	2
12	-0.9	-10.5	-10.5	x	3	1	5	x
13	-1.5	-7.2	-10.3	-12.2	3	5	1	4
14	-1.3	-10.2	-13.4	x	3	1	5	x
15	-0.6	-4.8	-10.1	-10.1	3	6	1	4
16	-1.0	-10.1	-13.6	-15.0	3	1	7	5
17	-0.8	-6.7	-10.0	-12.1	3	7	1	5
18	-0.4	-9.9	-9.9	-9.9	3	7	1	5
19	-0.7	-6.6	-9.9	-12.1	3	8	1	4
20	-0.6	-9.9	-15.7	-16.6	3	1	9	7
21	-0.3	-5.4	-7.3	-9.8	3	9	6	8
22	-0.5	-9.8	-13.8	-15.9	3	1	5	9
23	-0.5	-6.4	-9.8	-12.1	3	10	1	5
24	-0.2	-7.9	-9.8	-9.8	3	9	1	7
25	-0.4	-6.3	-9.7	-12.1	3	11	1	7
26	-0.4	-9.7	-13.8	-16.2	3	1	11	7
27	-0.2	-5.7	-9.4	-9.7	3	12	6	10
28	-0.3	-9.7	-13.8	-17.9	3	1	5	9
29	-0.3	-6.3	-9.7	-12.1	3	13	1	8
30	-0.1	-8.5	-9.7	-9.7	3	9	11	1
31	-0.3	-6.2	-9.7	-12.1	3	14	1	7
32	-0.2	-9.7	-13.9	-16.5	3	1	7	5
33	-0.1	-5.8	-8.7	-9.7	3	15	12	1
34	-0.2	-9.7	-13.9	-16.5	3	1	13	15
35	-0.2	-6.2	-9.6	-12.1	3	16	1	8
36	-0.1	-9.6	-9.6	-9.6	3	13	1	11
37	-0.2	-6.2	-9.6	-12.1	3	17	1	10
38	-0.2	-9.6	-13.9	-16.6	3	1	7	5
39	-0.1	-5.8	-8.9	-9.6	3	18	12	14
40	-0.2	-9.6	-16.6	-18.5	3	1	11	13
41	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	19	1	11
42	-0.1	-9.0	-9.6	-9.6	3	15	1	13
43	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	20	1	10
44	-0.1	-9.6	-13.9	-16.7	3	1	17	13
45	-0.1	-5.9	-9.6	-9.6	3	21	16	1
46	-0.1	-9.6	-13.9	-16.7	3	1	19	7
47	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	22	1	11
48	-0.1	-9.1	-9.6	-9.6	3	15	17	1
49	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	23	1	13
50	-0.1	-9.6	-16.7	-18.7	3	1	21	17
51	0.0	-5.9	-9.2	-9.6	3	24	18	1
52	-0.1	-9.6	-13.9	-16.7	3	1	11	7
53	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	25	1	14
54	0.0	-9.6	-9.6	-9.6	3	19	1	17
55	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.1	3	26	1	13
56	-0.1	-9.6	-13.9	-18.8	3	1	23	19
57	0.0	-5.9	-9.3	-9.6	3	27	18	20
58	-0.1	-9.6	-13.9	-16.8	3	1	11	17
59	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	28	1	14
60	0.0	-9.3	-9.6	-9.6	3	21	1	19
61	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	29	1	16
62	-0.1	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	13	27
63	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-9.6	3	30	22	1
64	-0.1	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	25	27
65	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	31	1	17
66	0.0	-9.3	-9.6	-9.6	3	21	23	1
67	-0.1	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	32	1	16
68	-0.1	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	13	19
69	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-9.6	3	33	24	1
70	0.0	-9.6	-18.9	-20.5	3	1	23	13
71	0.0	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	34	1	17
72	0.0	-9.6	-9.6	-9.6	3	25	1	23
73	0.0	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	35	1	19
74	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	29	11
75	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-9.6	3	36	24	26
76	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	31	33
77	0.0	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	37	1	20
78	0.0	-9.4	-9.6	-9.6	3	27	1	25
79	0.0	-6.1	-9.6	-12.0	3	38	1	19
80	0.0	-9.6	-16.8	-18.9	3	1	11	27
81	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-9.6	3	39	28	1
82	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	17	23
83	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	40	1	20
84	0.0	-9.4	-9.6	-9.6	3	27	29	1
85	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	41	1	22
86	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	35	25
87	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-9.6	3	42	30	1
88	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	17	13
89	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	43	1	23
90	0.0	-9.6	-9.6	-9.6	3	31	1	29
91	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	44	1	22
92	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.8	3	1	19	39
93	0.0	-6.0	-9.4	-9.6	3	45	30	32
94	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.9	3	1	37	13
95	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	46	1	23
96	0.0	-9.4	-9.6	-9.6	3	33	1	31
97	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-12.0	3	47	1	25
98	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-19.0	3	1	19	33
99	0.0	-6.0	-9.6	-9.6	3	48	34	1
100	0.0	-9.6	-16.9	-19.0	3	1	29	33
128	0.0	-9.6	-14.0	-16.9	3	1	25	37
1920	0.0	-9.5	-9.5	-9.5	3	639	641	1
1968	0.0	-9.5	-9.5	-9.5	3	657	1	655

Table 12.4 *Calculated Third Fractional Spur*

Measurement of Fractional Spurs Explanation

The spur table on the next page shows the values for **InBandSpur** calculated by subtracting the rolloff from the measured uncompensated fractional spurs. Note that experiments were done on other PLLs to verify that these trends concerning uncompensated fractional spurs roughly apply to compensated fractional spurs. The table illustrates the following properties concerning fractional spurs.

The darker shaded boxes indicate that no fractional spur is present. This rule can be generalized by stating that a fractional spur is present whenever the greatest common divisor of the fractional numerator and fractional denominator divide evenly into the spur order. For instance, for a fraction of 3/15, the greatest common divisor is 3. Because 3 does not divide evenly into 1 or 2, the first and second fractional spurs will not be present. However, the third fractional spur will be present.

Without loss of generality, the fraction can be reduced to lowest terms. For instance, the first fractional spur when the fraction is 2/5 is roughly the same as the second fractional spur when the fraction is 4/10 and these spurs would occur at the same offset frequency from the carrier.

The worst-case for the first fractional spur is when the fractional numerator is one or one less than the fractional denominator. For the second fractional spur, it is two or two less than the fractional spur. For the third fractional spur, it is three or three less than the fractional denominator. These worst-case spurs are shown in bold text with heavier outlines for the boxes.

$$Spur_{Fractional\ Uncompensated} = InBandSpur_{Uncompensated} + 1.6\ dB + rolloff \qquad (12.4)$$

The exception, which is unlikely to occur in a practical situation, is when the fraction is ½ or can be reduced to ½. In this case, the number is closer to 4.

If the fractional denominator is prime and one can avoid the worst-case spur, then the next worse case spur is about 6 dB better. There are applications, such as CDMA, where the frequency planning makes this possible. If the denominator is not prime, then even more improvement is possible. These next worse case spurs are in the unshaded boxes. The lightly shaded boxes indicate that a fractional spur is present, but it is neither worst-case nor next to worse case. Note that it becomes more difficult to determine which spurs are next to worse case for higher order spurs. The next worse case fractional spur tends to be about 6 dB lower than the main fractional spur and occurs when the fractional numerator is about ½ of the fractional denominator. However, as the fractional denominator increases, this seems to be closer to 1/3rd of the fractional denominator.

Fractional Denominator

First Fractional Spur — Fractional Numerator

Num	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
1	**3.1**	**2.4**	**2.0**	**1.4**	**1.3**	**1.4**	**1.6**	**1.6**	**1.5**	**1.7**	**1.6**	**2.0**	**1.8**	**1.7**	**1.8**
2		**2.0**		-2.7		-5.6		-7.4		-9.3		-10.7		-12.4	
3			**2.0**	-2.6		-3.8	-6.1		-7.0	-8.6		-8.8	-10.4		-11.1
4				**1.4**		-3.8		-4.0		-6.9		-7.0		-9.1	
5					**1.6**	-5.8	-6.2	-4.0		-4.1	-10.1	-10.2	-7.3		-7.3
6						**1.5**				-3.9		-4.2			
7							**1.4**	-7.5	-6.8	-6.9	-9.9	-3.8		-4.6	-12.7
8								**1.5**		-8.6		-10.2		-4.7	
9									**1.5**	-9.3		-7.2	-7.5		-12.2
10										**1.6**		-9.0			
11											**1.8**	-10.7	-11.2	-10.1	-7.8
12												**1.7**			
13													**1.0**	-11.9	-10.7
14														**1.3**	
15															**1.3**

Second Fractional Spur — Fractional Numerator

Num	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
1		**1.4**	-1.1	-2.7	-3.8	-4.2	-4.7	-4.9	-5.2	-5.1	-5.4	-5.3	-5.7	-5.4	-5.4
2		**1.1**	**4.8**	**1.5**	**2.7**	**1.4**	**1.8**	**1.2**	**1.6**	**1.4**	**1.4**	**1.4**	**1.3**	**1.1**	**1.6**
3			-1.1	**1.4**		-5.9	-4.5		-8.4	-7.7		-10.4	-10.2		-12.1
4				-2.5	**2.5**	-6.1		-7.6	-2.6	-9.7		-10.9	-5.6	-12.3	
5					-3.2	**1.1**	-4.0	-8.3		-8.6	-4.7	-7.4	-11.8		-11.9
6						-3.2	**1.8**		-2.6	-9.4		-8.9	-3.6		-6.1
7							-3.7	**1.2**	-8.7	-9.4	-4.4	-9.6	-52.2	-9.1	-4.6
8								-3.6	**1.4**	-7.2		-7.9	-3.5	-10.1	
9									-3.6	**1.1**		-11.4	-11.5		-4.4
10										-3.6	**1.4**	-10.4	-5.5		-6.3
11											-3.6	**1.2**	-9.5	-12.4	-12.4
12												-3.4	**1.4**		
13													-3.5	**1.4**	-12.1
14														-3.2	**1.6**
15															-3.4

Third Fractional Spur — Fractional Numerator

Num	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
1			**1.9**	-2.7	-5.6	-6.3	-7.1	-7.8	-7.8	-8.2	-8.9	-9.2	-9.1	-9.6	-9.3
2				**1.1**		-4.7		-7.3		-9.9		-11.8		-13.7	
3			**1.4**	**1.6**	**4.6**	**1.5**	**1.2**	**2.5**	**1.2**	**1.1**	**1.8**	**1.3**	**1.1**	**1.6**	**0.4**
4				-2.7		**1.0**		-6.8		-5.0		-9.5		-8.8	
5					-4.4	-3.5	**1.0**	-6.6		-9.7	-7.5	-5.0	-11.9		-12.8
6						-5.7		**2.5**		-10.0		-10.5		-2.8	
7							-6.1	-6.3	**1.1**	-4.2	-8.2	-11.5		-12.1	-11.8
8								-6.5		**0.8**		-4.5		-13.1	
9									-6.6	-8.7	**1.6**	-9.3	-11.6	-2.6	-12.1
10										-6.9		**1.2**			
11											-6.9	-10.0	**0.0**	-8.1	-13.6
12												-6.7		**1.6**	
13													-7.7	-11.4	**0.9**
14														-7.4	
15															-7.4

Table 12.5 *Measured In-Band Fractional Spurs*

The Fractional Modulus Game

One may first think that the worst-case fractional spur is the one that should be considered. In general, this is usually true. However, there are cases where it is possible to avoid using a fractional modulus of one due to good frequency planning. For PLLs used in the CDMA standard, this is often the case. The fractional modulus game becomes possible when the fractional denominator used exceeds the number of channels the PLL synthesizer has to tune to. In CDMA, a fractional denominator of 1968 is often used, even there are only 23 channels. From the table, avoiding a fractional numerator of one or one less than the fractional denominator yields about a 6 dB improvement in fractional spurs. Note that the next worse case usually occurs when the fractional numerator is one-half or one-third of the fractional denominator. Figure 12.1 shows fractional spurs measured with the LMX2364 fractional N PLL with the compensation turned off and with a fractional denominator of 100. Note that 1 and 99 are the worst case for this first fractional spur, and if these two numerators can be avoided, then approximately a 10 dB benefit can be realized. Using the fractional spur tables or the fractional spur chart predict that this would yield a benefit of 9.5 dB. The next worst case are 33 and 67, as predicted by simulations.
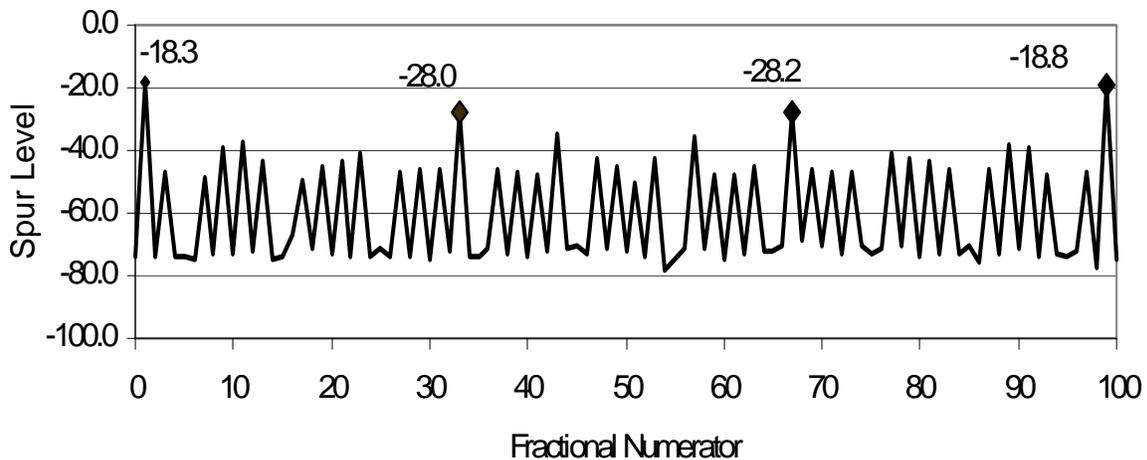
Figure 12.1 Uncompensated Fractional Spurs as a Function of the Fractional Numerator

Uncompensated Fractional Spur Model

Comparing the mathematical model with the measured results for fractional spurs, there is fairly good agreement, especially with the relative levels of the spurs. However, they do differ from by a mysterious factor of 1.6 dB. Therefore, the fractional spur model will be based around the mathematical model with an added factor of 1.6 dB. Uncompensated fractional spurs can be predicted as follows:

$$Spur_{Fractional\ Uncompensated} = InBandSpur_{Uncompensated} + 1.6\ dB + \ rolloff \qquad (12.5)$$

Note that the number used for the ***InBandSpur*** in this model is the theoretical number. The mysterious factor of 1.6 dB is to account for the difference between the theoretical model and actual measured data.

Impact of Fractional Compensation on Fractional Spurs

Fractional compensation can be very complicated with many exceptions. It can be impacted by the PLL voltage or by which prescaler is used. There may be different modes and settings to further complicate the matter. Higher order delta sigma modulation can be viewed as a digital means to fractional compensation as well. On some PLLs, it is possible to disable the fractional compensation so that its impact can be clarified. On other PLLs, it cannot be disabled. Uncompensated fractional spurs tend to be more predictable and relatively constant over the VCO tuning voltage.

Compensated Fractional Spurs

Until now, the discussion has been focused on uncompensated fractional spurs because the impact of fractional compensation can vary based on the type of fractional compensation. One complexity that compensation tends to add is that it makes spurs vary as a function of tuning voltage and output frequency. For some parts, expressing the fraction different ways, such as 4/64 as opposed to 1/16 can make a difference in fractional spur levels. After dealing with compensated fractional spurs, one will probably come to the realization that predicting fractional spurs to the last dB without actually testing the circuit is folly. In general, models concerning fractional spurs can be within a few dB on a good day, but there are certainly exceptions where the models can be far more off than that. Some of the relative relationships regarding fractional spurs tend to hold better. Despite all of these limitations, prediction of fractional spurs is still worthwhile, but should always be tested against measured data. Although this sort of simplifies the model, compensation usually reduces uncompensated spur level by some fixed amount. It therefore makes sense to quantify compensated fractional spurs by their in-band spur performance. Also, it is usually practical to measure this quantity directly.


$$\textit{Fractional Spur} = \textit{InBandSpur} + \textit{rolloff} \qquad\qquad (12.6)$$

PLL	*InBandSpur*	Comments
Uncompensated Fractional PLL	+1.6	Based on measurements from the LMX2364 with compensation disabled. This does not apply to fractional spur levels worse than about –12 dBc.
LMX2350/52/53/54	- 15	InBandSpur for second fractional spur is closer to –12 dBc
LMX2364	-18	InBandSpur for the second fractional spur is closer to –13 dBc. Spur level is sensitive to fractional denominator.
LMX2470/71	-20 to –50 -35 typical	The fractional spurs on this part are better when the comparison frequency is around 20 MHz and a fractional denominator greater than 100. There is benefit expressing fractions with higher fractional denominators, even if the mathematical values are equivalent.
LMX2485/86/87	-55 to -65 Typical	This is for a fourth order modulator inside the loop bandwidth with a 20 MHz comparison frequency.

Figure 12.2 In-Band Compensated Fractional Spurs for Various PLLs

Delta Sigma Fractional Spurs

The fractional spur model derived so far works quite good for traditional fractional parts. For non-delta sigma PLLs, subtracting a fixed value for compensation seems to work quite well. However, for delta sigma fractional PLLs, there are many exceptions. For one thing, the value for the in-band spur can vary a little with the loop bandwidth, even though the spur of interest is well within the loop bandwidth in all cases. Another factor is that the spurs do not always roll off at as fast at a rate as the closed loop response predicts. For instance, the LMX2470 delta sigma PLL fractional spurs follow the closed loop transfer function very closely, but after about twice the loop bandwidth, they roll off at a rate of 20 dB/decade, as opposed to the 40 dB/decade that the closed loop transfer function predicts. Other delta sigma parts also exhibit this same characteristic, although the offset frequency for which the spurs track the closed loop bandwidth is different. Within the loop bandwidth or close to the loop bandwidth the models work better, but outside the loop bandwidth they tend to be optimistic because spurs for delta sigma parts often, but not always roll off at a rate that is less than what the loop filter would roll off the spurs. To further complicate the situation, the rate at which fractional spurs roll-off may also be related to the order of the delta sigma modulator. In general, higher order modulators do well for fractional spurs that are lower offset frequencies relative to the loop bandwidth, while at higher offsets, the modulator order tends to make less difference. Figure 12.3 shows the primary fractional spur for a LMX2485 PLL with a fractional numerator of one, but variable denominator. This allows the offset to change without changing the loop dynamics while simultaneously keeping the spur being measured the primary fractional spur. Yet another exception that can occur with delta fractional spurs is there dependence on the fraction. Even though fractions like 5/100 and 1/20 are equivalent, they can have different spur spectrums. Sometimes, the larger fractional denominator improves performance, but in other applications, it can degrade performance.
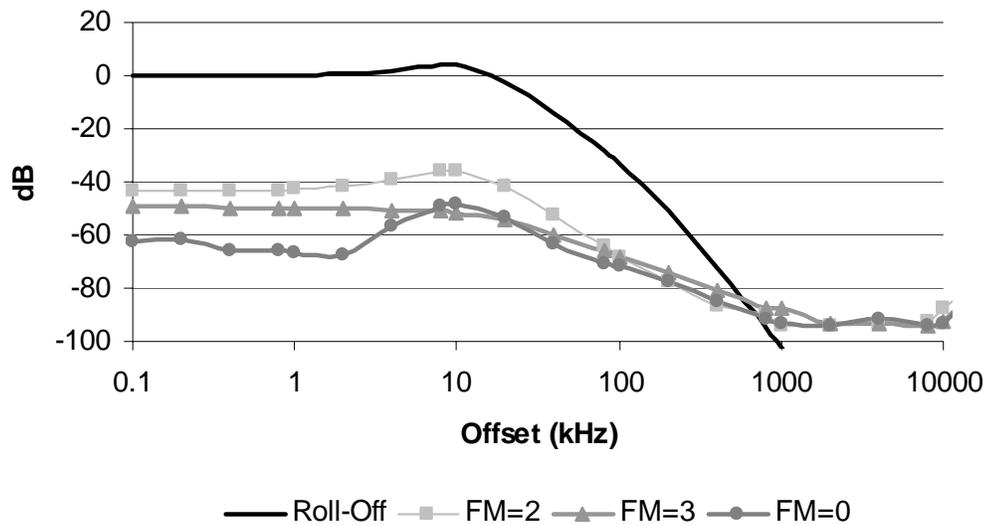
Figure 12.3 *In-Band Compensated Fractional Spurs*

Delta Sigma Sub-Fractional Spurs

For delta sigma PLLs, it is possible to get spurs at offsets less than the channel spacing. In general, the higher order the fractional modulator is, the worse these spurs will be. They often occur at one-half and/or one-fourth of where a traditional fractional spur would be. Although these spurs may look unattractive on a spectrum analyzer, they may not be as damaging to performance as traditional fractional spurs because they do not occur at an offset equal to the channel spacing; this is application specific. The bigger concern with these sub-fractional spurs may often times be their impact on RMS phase error. Depending on the standard and the level of these spurs, they can have a more dominant impact on RMS phase error than phase noise in many cases. The levels of sub-fractional spurs are difficult to predict and have many application-specific dependencies. Among the factors that may influence these spurs are TCXO power level, output frequency, tuning voltage, delta sigma modulator order, various selectable bits for the PLL, and the loop filter.

Filtering and the order of the delta sigma modulator are two factors that usually have a large impact on these spurs. Because the delta sigma modulator pushes lower frequency spur energy out to higher frequencies, it is important to have filtering at these higher frequencies in order to prevent these higher frequency products from being translated back down to lower frequencies. In general, the order of the PLL loop filter should be one greater than the order of the delta sigma modulator. However, this is just a rule of thumb. If the loop bandwidth is too wide, then higher order filters may not be able to eliminate these spurs. Also, if the loop bandwidth is sufficiently narrow, then a loop filter of lower order may be sufficient. In addition to filtering and modulator order, dithering and the way that the fraction is expressed (i.e. 1/20 vs. 5/100) can also have an impact on these spurs.

Comparing Integer Spurs to Fraction Spurs

Integer spurs depend on the spur gain, comparison frequency, leakage current, and **BasePulseSpur**. Fractional spurs depend on the **InBandSpur** and the roll-off. Delta-sigma fractional spurs can also roll off at a rate slower than the loop filter can roll them off. In general, the best way to compare is to simulate or measure them and compare. However, many will strive to understand this in simple terms. In order to do this, some assumptions need to be made about the PLL being compared output frequency and leakage current. Although it physically makes no sense, it is possible to translate the integer spurs and try to relate them to an **InBandSpur**. In order to generate some sort of comparison, specific parameters must be assumed.

Part	Fout GHz	Kϕ mA	Leakage nA	BasePulseSpur dBc	InBandSpur dBc	Loop Bandwidth kHz
LMX2330	1 or 2	4	2.5	-311		
LMX2430	1 or 2	4	2.5	-331		
LMX2364					-18	
LMX2485					-63	10

Table 12.6 Assumptions for Creating Spur Comparison
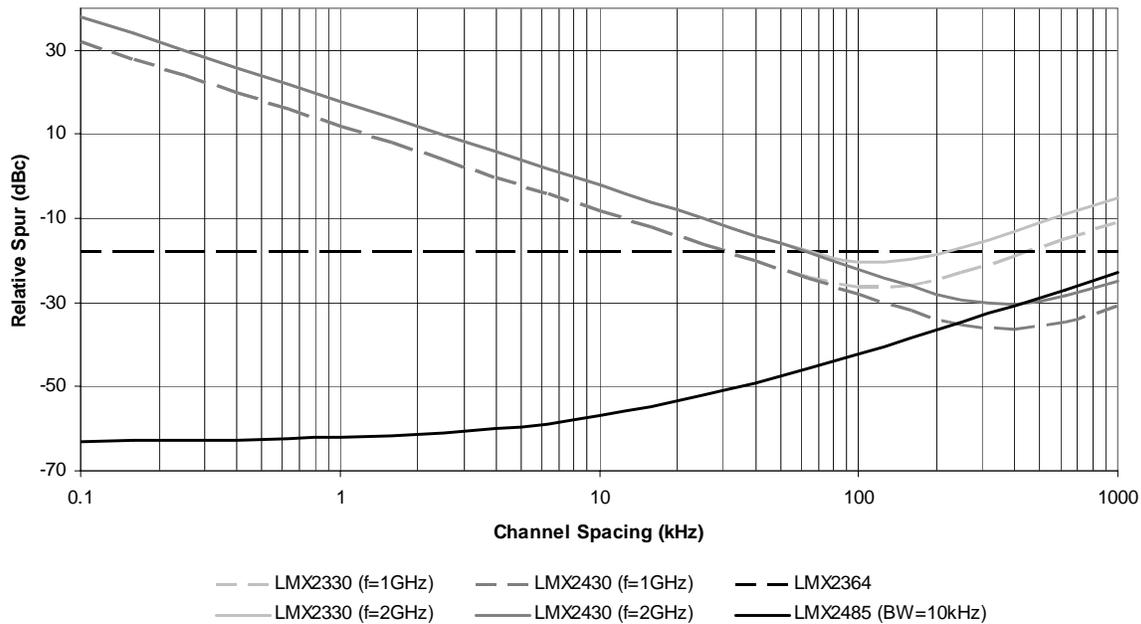
Figure 12.4 Fractional vs. Integer Spurs

Figure 12.4 compares fractional spurs to integer spurs. For low channel spacings, the fractional parts are much more worthwhile because the leakage currents cause the integer PLL spurs to be much higher. For this, maximum limits were assumed for leakage currents. After about 200 kHz, pulse effects tend to dominate integer spurs. Fractional spurs tend to be more constant, but for the LMX2485 PLL their advantage becomes less after the loop

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

bandwidth. This is the way that many delta sigma PLLs behave. So if a general rule of thumb is required, then under about 200 kHz, fractional spurs are superior, but this is definitely a PLL specific question.

Conclusion

The art of predicting fractional spurs is not an exact science. They tend to be more exceptions and variations than with integer spurs. One property of fractional spurs that tends to hold up is that they are virtually immune to leakage currents. Delta sigma PLLs can add more layers of complexity by introducing spurs at sub-multiples of where traditional fractional spurs would be.

Because it is difficult dealing with fractional spurs, the concepts were first developed by exploring uncompensated fractional spurs. Unlike their compensated counterparts, uncompensated spurs are very regular and easy to predict. Once these models are understood, compensation is simply treated as reducing the uncompensated spur by some fixed amount.

Some may wonder why it is worth any effort trying to predict fractional spurs at all. There is definitely value in this effort, but there is also no substitute for bench measurements. The models presented here are intended as tools.

Chapter 13   Other Types of Spurs and their Causes

Introduction

Much has been said about reference spurs and fractional spurs. This chapter investigates other types of spurs and their causes. The value of doing this is so that when a spur is seen, its causes and fixes can be investigated. Although many types of spurs are listed, most of these spurs are not usually present. Since a lot of these spurs occur in dual PLLs, the main PLL will always refer to the side of a dual PLL on which the spur is being observed, and the auxiliary PLL will refer to the side of a dual PLL that is not being observed. This chapter discusses general good tips for dealing with spurs, and then goes into categorizing the most common types, their causes, and their cures.

Tips for Good Decoupling and Good Layout

To deal with board-related cross talk, there are several steps that can be taken. Be sure to visit wireless.national.com and download the evaluation board instructions to see typical board layouts. In addition to this, there are the following additional suggestions:

Good Decoupling Practices

By this it is meant to have several capacitors on both the ***Vcc*** and charge pump supply lines. The charge pump supply lines are the most vulnerable to noisy signals. Place a 100 pF, 0.01 µF, and a 0.1 µF capacitor on each of these lines to deal with noise at a wide range of frequencies. It may seem that these capacitances simply add in parallel to form a 0.111 µF capacitor, but in fact, they are all necessary since the larger capacitors have more problems responding to high frequency signals and may have a higher ESR. In general, it is important to have the smaller capacitors closest to the PLL chip to deal with high frequency noise, but it is fine and often more convenient to place the larger capacitors farther away. The trace between the smaller capacitor and the larger capacitor adds inductance, which is good. It is also a good idea to put a series resistor to help deal with low frequency noise. This resistor should be chosen so that the voltage drop across it is around 0.1 V. 18 Ω is a typical value, but this should be dependent on the current that flows through this resistor.

Good Layout Practices

Be sure to keep the charge pump supply lines and the VCO tuning voltage lines away from noisy signals. Try to make ground vias close to the part and try to minimize the sharing of ground vias. Placing a ground plane in the board to separate the top and bottom layer also can help reduce cross talk effects.

Good Loop Filter Design

Higher order loop filters and filters with narrower loop bandwidth are more effective in reducing spurs of all sorts – not just reference spurs. However, if the spur is generated from the VCO, or the power supply line provided to the VCO, then wider loop bandwidths typically improve the spur.

Cross Talk vs. Non-Cross Talk Related Spurs

For the purposes of this discussion, the spurs will be divided into two categories. Cross talk related spurs refer to any spur that is caused by some source other than the PLL that finds its way to VCO output. Non-cross talk related spurs refer to spurs that are caused by some inherent behavior in the PLL. The first step in diagnosing a spur is to determine whether or not it is a cross talk related spur. The way that this is done is by eliminating all potential causes of the cross talk spur and checking if the spur goes away.

Cross Talk Related Spurs

In general, signals that are either low frequency, or close to the PLL output frequency are the most likely to cause this type of spurs. Whenever two sinusoidal signals enter a non-linear device an output signal at the sum and the difference of these frequencies will be produced. This result can be derived by writing the first three general terms for the Taylor series and observing that the square term gives rise to these sum and difference frequencies. It therefore follows that frequencies that are low in frequency, or frequencies that are close to the PLL output frequency are the ones that cause the most problems with cross talk related spurs. Several different types of the cross talk related spur will now be discussed

External Cross Talk Spur

Description
This spur appears and is unrelated to the auxiliary PLL output. Often times, when the main PLL is tuned to different frequencies, this spur moves around.

Cause
This type of spur is caused by some frequency source external to the PLL. Common external sources that can cause these spurs are: computer monitors (commonly causes spurs at the screen refresh rate of 30 – 50 kHz), phones of all sorts, other components on the board, florescent lights, power supply (commonly causes spurs in multiples of 60 Hz), and computers. Long signal traces can act as an antenna and agitate this type of spur.

Diagnosis
 To diagnose this spur, start isolating the PLL from all potential external noise sources. Switch power supplies. Turn off computer monitors. Go to a screen room. Disconnect the auxiliary VCO and power down the auxiliary PLL. Try a different crystal reference. By trial and error, external noise sources can be ruled out, one by one.

Cure
To eliminate this spur, remove or isolate the PLL from the noise source. As usual, these spurs are layout dependent, so be sure to read the section on good layout. Also consider using RF fences to isolate the PLL from potential noise sources.

Auxiliary PLL Cross Talk Spur

Description
This spur only occurs in dual PLLs and is seen at a frequency spacing from the carrier equal to the difference of the frequencies of the main and auxiliary PLL (or sometimes a higher harmonic of the auxiliary PLL). This spur is most likely to occur if the main and auxiliary sides of a dual PLL are close in frequency.   If the auxiliary PLL is powered down, but the auxiliary VCO is running, then this spur can dance around the spectrum as the auxiliary frequency VCO drifts around.

Cause
Parasitic capacitances on the board can allow high frequency signals to travel from one trace on the board to another. This happens most for higher frequencies and longer traces. There could also be cross talk within the chip. The charge pump supply pins are vulnerable to high frequency noise.

Diagnosis
One of the best ways to diagnose this spur is to tune the auxiliary side of the PLL while observing the main side. If the spur moves around, that is a good indication that the spur being observed is of this type. Once this type of spur is diagnosed, then it needs to be determined if the spur is related to cross talk on the board, or cross talk in the PLL. Most PLLs have a power down function that allow one to power down the auxiliary side of a PLL, while keeping the main side running. If the auxiliary side of the PLL is powered down, and the spur reduces in size substantially, this indicates cross talk in the PLL chip. If the spur stays about the same magnitude, then this indicates that there is cross talk in the board.

Cure
Read the section on how to deal with board related cross talk.

Crystal Reference Cross Talk Spur
Description
This spur is visible at an offset from the carrier equal to some multiple of the crystal reference frequency. Often times, there is a whole family of spurs that often occur at harmonics of the crystal reference frequency. In this case, the odd harmonics are usually stronger than the even harmonics.

Cause
This spur can be caused by excessive gain of the inverter in the crystal oscillator. Sometimes, this inverter is integrated unto the PLL chip. When any oscillator has excessive gain, it can give rise to harmonics. The reason that the odd harmonics are often stronger is that the oscillator often produces a square wave or a clipped sine wave, which has stronger odd harmonics. Figure 13.1 shows the structure of a typical crystal oscillator. *Lm* (motional inductance), *Cm* (motional capacitance), and *Cp* (parallel capacitance) represent the circuit equivalent of a quartz crystal.
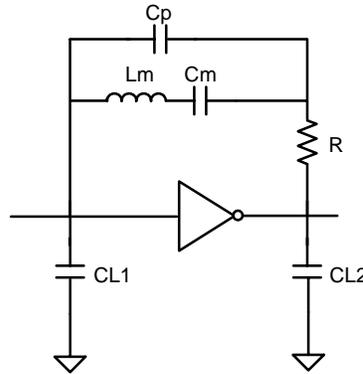
Figure 13.1 A Typical Crystal Oscillator Circuit

Diagnosis
The best way to diagnose this spur is to use a signal generator in place of the crystal. If spur level is impacted, then this is an indication that the oscillator inverter has excessive gain. Note that on some of National Semiconductor's PLLs, the inverting buffer is included on the PLL chip, while on others, it is not. If the power level to the chip is reduced, then this decreases the gain of the buffer, which theoretically should decrease the level of this type of spur.

Cure
In addition to the suggestions about good decoupling and layout, there are several things that may reduce these spur levels

Reduce the Power Supply Voltage
If the power supply voltage is reduced, then the gain of the inverting buffer tends to be reduced as well. As a result, this can make the spur lower.

Supply an external inverter
Using a separate inverter for the crystal, or using the inverter from some other component, such as the microprocessor can also reduce this spur.

Increase the value of the Resistor, R
In Figure 13.1 , increasing the value of **R** can account a little bit for the excessive inverter gain. If **R** is increased too much, the circuit simply will not oscillate. Note that in many inverter circuits **R** = 0 Ω.

Try unequal load capacitors
Usually, the load capacitors, CL1, and CL2 are chosen to be equal, but in this case it might improve the spur level to make CL2 > CL1. This is because the output of the inverter is a square wave, so anything to round out the edges can help.

Layout and filtering
Be sure to read the layout tips and also consider filtering the noisy signal on the board.

Non-Cross talk Related Spurs

These spurs are caused by something other than cross talk on the board. Some common examples are discussed below:

Greatest Common Multiple Spur

Description

This spur occurs in a dual PLL at the greatest common multiple of the two comparison frequencies. For example, if one side was running with a 25 kHz comparison frequency, and the other side was running with a 30 kHz comparison frequency, then this spur would appear at 5 kHz. In some cases, this spur can be larger on certain output frequencies.

Cause

The reason that this spur occurs is that the greatest common multiple of the two comparison frequencies corresponds to the event that both charge pumps come on at the same time. This result can be derived by considering the periods of the two comparison frequencies. When both charge pumps come on at the same time, they produce noise at the charge pump supply pins, which gives birth to this spur.

Diagnosis

A couple telltale signs of this type of spur is it is always spaced the same distance from the carrier, regardless of output frequency. However, keeping the output frequency the same, but changing the comparison frequency causes this spur to move around. Just be sure that when changing the comparison frequencies for diagnostic purposes, you are also changing the greatest common multiple of the two comparison frequencies.

Cure

This spur can be treated effectively by putting more capacitors on the Vcc and charge pump supply lines. Be sure that there is good layout and decoupling around these pins. Also consider changing the comparison frequency of the auxiliary PLL.

Phantom Reference Spur

Description

The phantom reference spur is characterized by a ghastly increase in the reference spurs right after switching frequencies. After the frequency is changed, it takes an excessively long time for the reference spurs to settle down. This spur is more common at lower comparison frequencies.

Cause

Some of this can be possibly explained by deceptive measurements from the equipment, such as using the video averaging function on a spectrum analyzer. It can also be caused by leaky capacitors in the loop filter. Other theories suggest that it is related to undesired effects from the loop filter capacitors, such as dielectric absorption.

Diagnosis

This can be observed on a spectrum analyzer. Just be very careful that it is not some sort of averaging effect of the spectrum analyzer. The output of the spectrum analyzer is power vs. frequency, which is really intended to be a still time sort of measurement. It may be helpful to test the equipment measuring some other spur to make sure that this is really the PLL and not the equipment.

Cure

Designing with higher quality capacitors helps a lot. In particular, the capacitor *C2* tends to be the culprit for causing this spur. Common capacitor types listed in order of improving dielectric properties are: tantalum, X7R, NP0, and polypropeline. Also, using a fractional N PLL can possibly help, since the fractional spurs tend to be less susceptible to the effects of charge pump leakage and non-ideal capacitor dielectrics.

Prescaler Miscounting Spur

Description

This spur typically occurs at half the comparison frequency.   It can also occur at one-third, two-thirds, or some fractional multiple of the comparison frequency.   It can have mysterious attributes, such only occurring on odd channels.

Cause

This spur is caused by the prescaler miscounting. Things that cause the prescaler to miscount include poor matching to the high frequency input pin, violation of sensitivity specifications for the PLL, and VCO harmonics. Be very aware that although it may seem that the sensitivity requirement for the PLL is being met, poor matching can still agitate sensitivity problems and VCO harmonic problems.   Note also that there is an upper sensitivity limitation on the part.

To understand why the prescaler miscounting causes spurs, consider fractional N averaging. Since the prescaler is skipping counts on some occasions and not skipping counts on another, it produces spurs similar to fractional spurs.

Diagnosis

Since miscounting ties in one way or another to sensitivity, try varying the voltage and/or temperature conditions for the PLL. Since sensitivity is dependent on these parameters, any dependency to supply voltage or temperature point to prescaler miscounting as the cause of the spur. Changing the *N* counter between even and odd values can also sometimes have an impact on this type of spur caused by the *N* counter miscounting, and can be used as a diagnostic tool.

Also be aware that *R* counter sensitivity problems can cause this spur as well. One way to diagnose *R* counter miscounting is to change the *R* counter value just slightly. If the spur seems sensitive to this, then this may be the cause. If a signal generator is connected to the reference input, and the spur mysteriously disappears, then this suggests that the *R* counter miscounting is the cause of the spur.

Cure
To cure this problem, it is necessary to fix whatever problem is causing the prescaler to miscount. The first thing to check is that the power level is within the specifications of the part. After that, consider the input impedance of the PLL. For many PLLs, this tends to be capacitive. Putting an inductor to match the imaginary part of the PLL input impedance at the operating frequency can usually fix impedance matching issues. Be also aware of the sensitivity and matching to the VCO harmonics, since they can also cause a miscount. Try to keep the VCO harmonics –20 dBm or lower in order to reduce the chance of the PLL miscounting the VCO harmonic.

VCO Harmonic Spurs

Description
This spur occurs at multiples of the output frequency. All VCOs put out harmonics of some kind. This spur can cause problems if there is very poor matching to the high frequency input of the PLL. Note also in some cases, the higher harmonic can have better matching and sensitivity performance than the fundamental.   This can cause mysterious noisy behaviors. In general, it is good to have the second harmonic 20 dB down if possible, but that is very dependent on the matching and the sensitivity of the PLL.

Cause
VCOs are part specific in what level of harmonics they produce, but they all produce undesired harmonics of the fundamental frequency.

Diagnosis
These spurs appear at the VCO frequency and multiples thereof.   Change the VCO frequency, and see if the spurs still appear at multiples of the VCO output.

Cure
If the VCO harmonics cause a problem there are several things that can be done to reduce their impact. They can be low pass filtered with LC or RC filters. A resistor or inductor can be placed in series at the fin pin to prevent them from causing the prescaler to miscount. Just make sure that there is good matching and that the spur level at the fin pin is as low as possible. Note also that the many PLLs do not have a 50 Ω input impedance. Treating it as such often creates big problems with the VCO harmonics.

Prescaler Oscillation Spur

Description
This spur typically occurs far away from the carrier at an offset frequency of approximately the output frequency divided by the prescaler value. In most applications, it is not a concern because it is out of band.

Cause
This spur is caused internally by the output frequency being divided by the prescaler. It comes out through the high frequency input pin.

Diagnosis
This spur is sensitive to isolation between the VCO and the PLL. The frequency offset is a good indicator of this spur. Be sure to power down the PLL and make sure the spur goes away to verify it is not a cross talk issue.

Cure
If this spur is a problem, the solution is in providing greater isolation for the high frequency input pin of the PLL. The most basic way is to put a pad with sufficient attenuation. The issue with this is that the attenuation of the pad may be limited by the sensitivity limits of the PLL. Another approach is to put an amplifier, which increases isolation. Yet a third approach is to use a directional coupler, but this is frequency specific and costs layout area.

Conclusion

In this chapter some, but not all causes of spurs have been investigated. Although it is difficult to predict the levels of non-reference spurs, their diagnosis and treatment is what is really matters.   Non-reference spurs tend to be a thing that requires a lot of hands on type of diagnostics, and process of elimination is sometimes the only way to figure out what is the real cause.

Chapter 14   PLL Phase Noise Modeling and Behavior

Introduction
This chapter investigates the causes and behaviors of phase noise and presents mathematical models in order to understand it. These models were developed by taking factors that influence phase noise one factor at a time. The factors considered, in the order they are presented are: *N* divider, comparison frequency, PLL 1/f noise, charge pump gain, VCO noise, resistor noise, and other noise sources. The more of these factors that are accounted for, the more accurate the model, but also the more work to calculate the phase noise. The first step is to study the PLL noise before it is shaped by the loop filter.

Accounting for the N Divider and Closed Loop Transfer Function – Phase Noise Floor
The most basic model for phase noise assumes that it is some constant that is multiplied by the closed loop transfer function. In order to make things even simpler, the closed loop transfer function can be approximated by the *N* divider value, provided that the offset frequency is within the loop bandwidth. Since phase noise is caused by a noise voltage, the noise power would be proportional to N^2, hence this implies that phase noise varies as *20•log(N)*. If the phase noise is not within the loop bandwidth, then the closed loop transfer function cannot be approximated in this way. There is nothing wrong with this theory, however, it disregards the effects of the phase detector. Phase noise floor is this constant value and is calculated below.

$$PLLnoise_{flat}(offset) = \begin{cases} \approx PhaseNoiseFloor + 20 \bullet \log|N| & \textit{in}-\textit{band} \quad (14.1) \\ PhaseNoiseFloor + 20 \bullet \log|CL(offset)| & \textit{everywhere} \end{cases}$$

This phase noise model works for older phase detectors, such as the mixer phase detector, but for the modern charge pump PLL, it does not account for the variation in the comparison frequency, which is too relevant of a factor to ignore.

PLL Flat Noise Calculation -- 1 Hz Normalized Phase Noise Floor (PN1Hz)
Unlike the phase noise floor model, the model taking into account the comparison frequency is accurate enough be practical in many situations. Assuming a digital 3-state phase-frequency detector, this will put out more noise at higher comparison frequencies. The phase-frequency noise also tends to be the dominant noise source, which is proportional to the comparison frequency. However, the comparison frequency is inversely proportional to *N*. So therefore the noise due to the phase detector degrades in accordance with *10•log(Fcomp)*. Therefore, phase noise can be predicted using the 1 Hz Normalized Phase Noise (*PN1Hz*), which is part-specific and assumes the highest charge pump current.

$$PLLnoise_{flat} = \begin{cases} \approx PN1Hz + 10 \bullet \log|Fcomp| + 20 \bullet \log|N| & in-band \\ PN1Hz + 10 \bullet \log|Fcomp| + 20 \bullet \log|CL(offset)| & everywhere \end{cases} \quad (14.2)$$

Application of PLL Flat Noise Model for a Fixed Output Frequency and Variable N Value

One application of formula (14.2) is the prediction of in-band phase noise in the case that the VCO frequency is fixed, but the comparison frequency is varied. In this case, the comparison frequency must change as well. This could be the case when one is using a fractional PLL and wanting to know the impact of changing the *N* counter, which corresponds to raising **Fcomp**. The phase noise in this case varies as **10•log(N)**. For instance, if the comparison frequency is doubled, which corresponds to making the *N* counter half, and the output frequency is held constant, then the phase noise would improve by 3 dB, not 6 dB.

## Accounting for the 1/f Noise in the PLL Noise Estimate

So far, it has been assumed that the phase noise is perfectly flat within the loop bandwidth, even to offsets as low as 1 Hz. This assumption simplifies the modeling of PLL noise and also makes it possible to quantify the PLL noise with a single number, the 1 Hz normalized phase noise, **PN1Hz**. In the cases where offset frequency of the PLL noise is large relative to the comparison frequency, this model is sufficient. This is typically the case for integer N PLLs. However, as the comparison frequency becomes larger, which is often the case in fractional N PLLs, then it becomes more important to account for the 1/f noise. The reason for this is that when the comparison frequency is large, the 1/f noise does not improve, but the PLL flat noise does. As a consequence of this, the 1/f noise becomes more exposed at lower offset frequencies

In actuality, it is more correct to say that the phase noise is flat past a certain offset, but for frequencies less than some offset, the 1/f noise needs to be taken into consideration. In general, this noise decreases by 10 dB/decade and a simple way to characterize this is to normalize it to 10 kHz offset frequency and a 1 GHz PLL output frequency, **PN10kHz**. An important thing to remember when accounting for 1/f noise is that it is not impacted by the **N** counter value. Instead of being multiplied by the closed loop gain, it is multiplied by the roll-off. The 1/f noise and the flat noise can be added together after the appropriate transfer function (or roll-off) is applied in order to determine the PLL noise contribution.

$$PLLnoise_{1/f}(Fout, offset) = PN10kHz + 20 \bullet \log\left|\frac{Fout}{1GHz}\right| - 10 \bullet \log\left|\frac{offset}{10kHz}\right| \quad (14.3)$$

Doubling the comparison frequency will only yield the theoretical 3 dB benefit to the point where the 1/f noise gets exposed. Beyond this, there are diminishing returns, unless one is looking far out past the 1/f noise. In these cases where the 1/f noise is an issue, one should be sure that the measurement is not limited by the measurement equipment, and ensure that this noise is not due to the crystal reference. Signal generators, even expensive ones, are typically very noisy in this region. If a signal generator is being used, one simple test is to double its frequency and the R counter value and see if the noise improves. If it does, this

indicates that the 1/f noise is really due to the signal generator noise and not the PLL.
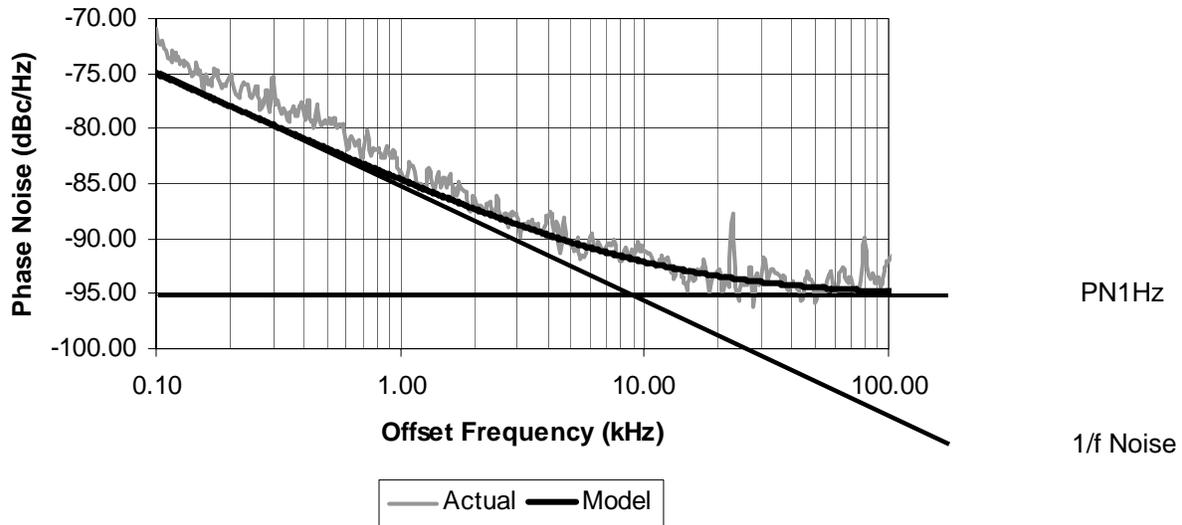
Figure 14.1 *Unshaped Phase Noise Example with the LMX2470*

Figure 14.1 shows the phase noise of the National Semiconductor LMX2470 delta sigma PLL measured at 2.44 GHz output frequency and a 5 MHz comparison frequency. The loop bandwidth for this measurement was around 500 kHz, so this phase noise is all in-band.

More Corrections for 1/f noise -- Noise Plateau

If the modeling of the 1/f noise was not already complicated enough, now it is time to start making exceptions to this noise. For many parts, the 1/f noise model is adequate down to offset frequencies of 100 Hz, but for others, it gives a false impression for lower offset frequencies. In general, for frequency offsets of less than 1 kHz, the behavior is part-specific. For instance, for the LMX2330 family of PLLs, the 1/f noise stops at about 1 kHz offset and then no longer degrades for offset frequencies down to 10 Hz. The phase noise is flat from offset frequencies on the order of 1 kHz to 10 Hz from the carrier. One way to model this is with a noise plateau. What this means is that for phase noise offsets less than the noise plateau frequency, the noise is flat.

PLL Noise Crossover Frequency
One useful piece of information would be to know where the PLL 1/f noise and PLL flat noise have the same noise contribution, assuming the loop bandwidth was infinite. At this offset, the PLL flat noise will be degraded by 3 dB. At twice this offset, the PLL flat noise will be degraded by 1.8 dB. At four times this offset, the PLL flat noise will be degraded by about 1 dB. This crossover frequency can be calculated by equating the PLL flat noise to the PLL 1/f noise and solving for the offset. Although theoretically, the 1/f noise plateau could interfere with this calculation, it is unlikely, since this frequency is typically much larger than the noise plateau.

$$PLL\ Noise\ Crossover\ Frequency\ =\ Fcomp\bullet 10^{-14}\bullet 10^{\frac{PN10kHz-PN1Hz}{10}}$$ *(14.4)*

*Another Interpretation of 1/f Noise -- **FcompKnee***

If one considers a fixed offset frequency and PLL output frequency, but varies the comparison frequency, the phase noise seems to improve with the comparison to a point, and then reach some sort of saturation. Using the 10 kHz Normalized phase noise model for 1/f noise would predict this. So one way that this could happen is that it is simply another way to interpret the PN10kHz Number. For this case, the **FcompKnee** frequency can be calculated from the PN10kHz number from the following relationship.

$$PN10kHz+10\bullet\log\left|\frac{10kHz}{Offset}\right|=PN1Hz+10\bullet\log\left|FcompKnee\right|+20\bullet\log\left|\frac{1GHz}{FcompKnee}\right|$$ *(14.5)*

In this case, the 1/f noise model may not be the best choice and the **FcompKnee** model may be a better fit. The **FcompKnee** is the comparison frequency for which the 1 Hz normalized phase noise is degraded by 3 dB. Furthermore, increasing the comparison frequency from this point to infinity only results in a 3 dB improvement in the overall phase noise. The thing to remember when using **FcompKnee** is that it only applies at a single offset frequency. For this reason, it is preferable to use the 1/f model instead. At this offset frequency:

$$PN1Hz(\ Fcomp\ )=PN1Hz+10\bullet\log\left|1+\frac{Fcomp}{FcompKnee}\right|$$ *(14.6)*

Modeling PN1Hz for Variable Charge Pump Gains – KϕKnee

In the closed loop transfer function for the charge pump noise, there is a factor of **1/Kϕ**. The implication of this factor is that the phase noise is better for higher charge pump gains. In general, this is true, however, because the charge pump noise also increases with the gain, the true relationship is not as the closed loop transfer function predicts. In general, the easiest way to model this is to try the different charge pump gains. For the best phase noise, one should use the highest charge pump gain unless there is a compelling reason not to. Some of the reasons not to use the highest charge pump gain could be that the loop filter capacitors get too large to be practical, or the highest charge pump gain needs to be reserved for Fastlock. Experiments show that increasing the charge pump gain helps to a point, but then there are diminishing returns. If the gain is too low, then doubling the charge pump gain gives a 3 dB improvement, but if the gain is high enough, then there is not much more benefit to raising the comparison frequency. **KϕKnee** is a term that describes the knee of this charge pump current vs. phase noise trade-off. For instance, if one is operating with a charge pump current equal to **KϕKnee**, then the theoretical phase noise benefit of increasing

the charge pump current from this level to infinite is 3 dB. In summary, the 1 Hz Normalized phase noise is not constant over charge pump current and can be modeled what it theoretically would be for an infinite charge pump gain with a correction term for the charge pump gain.

$$PN1Hz(K\phi) = PN1Hz(\infty) + 10 \bullet \log\left|1 + \frac{K\phi Knee}{K\phi}\right| \qquad (14.7)$$

Since infinite charge pump gain is unrealizable, this number should never be used to compare PLLs directly for phase noise performance. Instead, the PN1Hz calculated at the highest charge pump current is a better metric. In addition to this, the 1/f noise model can adapted to account for the charge pump gain as well.

$$PN10kHz(K\phi) = PN10kHz(\infty) + 10 \bullet \log\left|1 + \frac{K\phi Knee}{K\phi}\right| \qquad (14.8)$$

Phase Noise Constants for Various National PLLs

The phase noise performance is part specific. Table 14.1 contains typical phase noise data for various National Semiconductor PLLs. It is true that the dividers, Crystal Reference, and VCO contribute to the in-band phase noise, but these are typically dominated by the noise of the phase detector. For these measurements, the reference was demonstrated to be clean and not contributing to the 1/f noise in the measurements.

Note for the fractional N PLLs (LMX2350/2352/2354/2364/LMX2470/2485), the phase noise floor can be deceptive. Since the fractional N capability allows one to use a higher reference frequency, the actual phase noise tends to be better, despite the fact that the phase noise floor is degraded. This is because the value of N will be smaller. So one should be cautious about comparing phase noise of fractional parts without also considering the benefit of the fractional modulus.

Since the phase detector noise is dependent on the comparison frequency, this table is normalized for what the phase detector noise would theoretically be for a 1 Hz comparison frequency (**PN1Hz**). This table is based on sample data taken from evaluation boards using an automated test program that varies the comparison frequency and charge pump currents.

The 10 kHz normalized VCO noise was also calculated, or for some of the older PLLs, it was estimated from older data that was based on the model using **FcompKnee**, which is an inferior phase noise model.

The crossover frequency for where the 1/f noise and the flat phase noise cross is also provided for a 1 MHz comparison frequency. Recall that this is proportional to the comparison frequency. So if one wanted to know what these numbers would be for a 10 MHz comparison frequency, multiply them by 10.

For this table, another term, **PNindex** is also introduced. This number is the expected phase noise for at 1 kHz offset frequency for a 1 GHz output and a 1 MHz comparison frequency. It disregards any frequency limitations of the PLL. This is a theoretical number used for a fast comparison along with the PN1Hz number.

PLL	Side	PN1Hz		PN10kHz		KφMax	KφKnee	Plateau	PNIndex	Crossover Fcomp = 1 MHz
		Kφ = Infinite	Kφ = KφMax	Kφ = Infinite	Kφ = KφMax	uA	uA	kHz	dBc/Hz	kHz
LMX1501/11 LMX2301/05 LMX2315/20/25	RF	-208.0	-208.0	-86.1	-86.1	4000	0	1	-73.9	15.5
LMX1600/01/02	RF	-208.7	-208.4	-86.0	-85.7	1600	130	1	-73.8	18.6
LMX2306/16/26	RF	-214.0	-211.0	-107.8	-104.8	1000	1000	1	-80.8	0.4
LMX2310U/11U /12U/13U	RF	-213.0	-211.7	-99.4	-98.1	4000	1400	1	-80.8	2.3
LMX2323/24	RF	-215.0	-215.0	-99.6	-99.6	4000	0	1	-83.7	3.5
LMX2330/31/32 LMX2335/36/37 (A and L)	RF/IF	-214.0	-213.0	-100.8	-99.8	4000	1000	1	-82.2	2.1
LMX2330/31/32 LMX2335/36/37 (U Series)	RF	-214.8	-213.8	-101.6	-100.6	4000	1000	1	-83.0	2.1
LMX2346/47	RF	-219.0	-219.0	-110.0	-110.0	4000	0	1	-88.7	0.8
LMX2354	RF	-207.0	-206.9	-103.2	-103.1	1600	50	0	-76.8	0.2
LMX2350/52/54	IF	-210.0	-208.6	-103.6	-102.3	800	300	0	-78.4	0.4
LMX2350/52/53	RF	-203.5	-203.3	-103.1	-102.9	1600	70	0	-73.3	0.1
LMX2364	RF	-208.8	-208.0	-103.6	-102.8	4000	800	0	-77.9	0.3
LMX2364	IF	-214.0	-213.9	-93.0	-92.9	16000	500	1	-80.3	12.6
LMX2370	RF/IF	-214.0	-213.0	-100.8	-99.8	4000	1000	1	-82.2	2.1
LMX2377U	RF/IF	-214.8	-213.8	-101.6	-100.6	4000	1000	1	-83.0	2.1
LMX2430	RF/IF	-217.8	-217.8	-99.6	-99.6	4000	0	0	-85.6	6.6
LMX2470	RF	-215.0	-211.5	-107.5	-104.0	1600	2000	0	-81.2	0.6
LMX2470	IF	-220.0	-220.0	-104.0	-104.0	4000	0	0	-88.5	4.0
LMX2485	RF	-215.8	-214.7	-104.6	-103.5	1520	427.5	0	-84.2	1.3
LMX2485	IF	-210.0	-210.0	-107.5	-107.5	3500	0	0	-79.9	0.2
LMX2531	RF	-215.0	-211.4	-107.5	-103.9	1520	2000	0	-81.1	0.6

Table 14.1 *1 Hz Normalized Phase Noise Floor for Various National Semiconductor PLLs*

Accounting for the VCO Noise and TCXO Noise

VCOs and TCXOs are both types of oscillators. The chapter on oscillators covers their phase noise profile in much greater depth. In general, an oscillator phase noise slope increases as one gets closer to the carrier. Typically, the slope is 30 db/decade close to the carrier, then 20 dB/decade a little farther out, and then flat beyond that point. There can be other slopes, such as a 40 dB/decade slope as well. A reasonable approximation that works pretty well is to assume the slope is 20 db/decade everywhere. In this chapter the VCO noise will be treated as The most The VCO noise has a slope that increases as the offset to the carrier is decreased. However, at these close offsets, the PLL noise is usually dominant. It therefore makes matters much easier to deal with if the VCO noise is modeled as a fixed value at 10 kHz, called VCO10kHz and with a 20db/decade slope. Recall that the VCO has a high pass transfer function. The more detailed VCO phase noise model will be discussed later.

The phase noise model of a TCXO is similar to a VCO, although typically it has much better phase noise, because the frequency is fixed. In many test conditions, it is common to use a signal generator in place of a TCXO. One practical issue that one should be aware of is that many signal generators tend to be noisy. In order to overcome this, one trick is to increase the frequency of the signal generator and also increase the R counter by the same ratio. This keeps the same comparison frequency, but the signal noise is divided down more, and is typically much better.


Resistor Noise

Resistors create thermal noise that can add to the phase noise of the PLL system Typically, if this is an issue, it tends to be so near the loop bandwidth, where it peaks. Larger resistors create more thermal noise, but also can provide more filtering. If the charge pump current is increased while keeping the other PLL design parameters the same, the impact of the resistor thermal noise will be reduced, since the loop filter resistor values will be less. However, just because a loop filter has large resistors does not always mean that the resistors are creating excessive thermal noise in the final design. In the case that R3 or R4 is large, these indeed do generate more thermal noise, but then they also filter out their own noise, so the real impact of these large resistors requires more in-depth analysis. This noise source is covered in depth in the appendix.

Accounting for Noise from Op-Amps and Active Devices

Some loop filters use op-amps (or transistors) to increase the tuning voltage. The choice of the op-amp is critical optimizing the noise performance. This is discussed in more depth in the appendix.

Sample Calculations

The first example shows the phase noise of the LMX2346 PLL using a VARIL1960U VCO. This measurement was done with a National Semiconductor LMX2346 evaluation board with the following parameters: Kphi = 4 mA, Kvco = 45 MHz/V, Fout = 1960 MHz, VCO input capacitance = 22 pF, Fcomp = 200 kHz, C1 = 470 pF, C2 = 8.2 nF, C3 = 330 pF, R2 = 4.7 kΩ, and R3 = 5.6 kΩ.
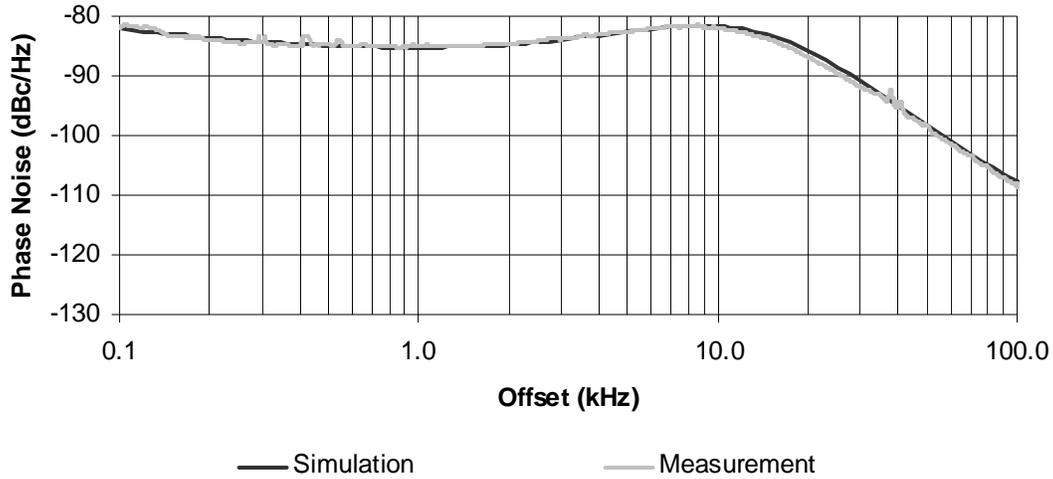
Figure 14.2 *Simulation vs. Actual Measurement Comparison*
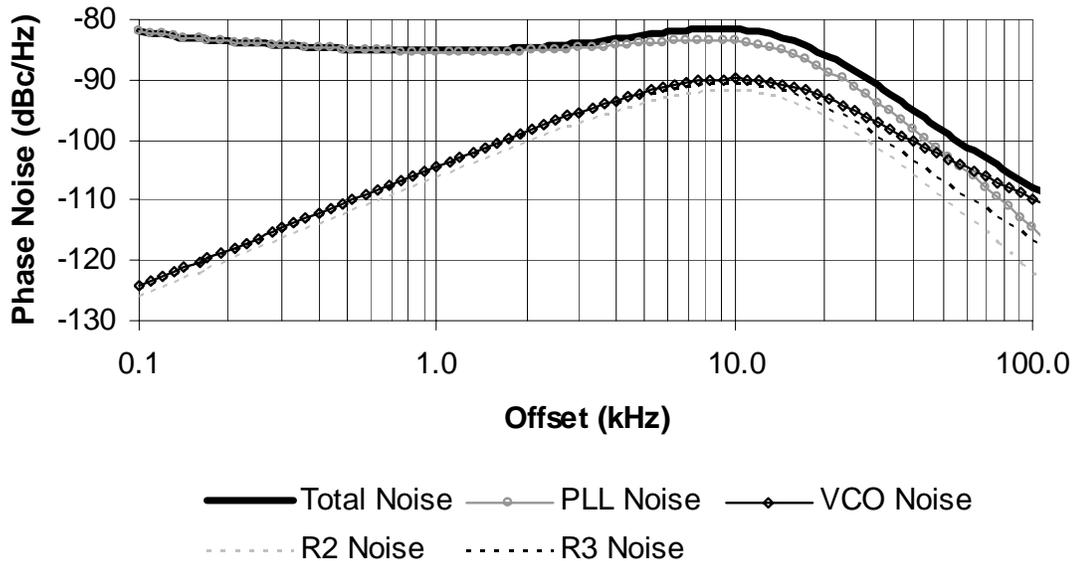
Figure 14.3 *Farther Out Phase Noise Example*

More Issues with Phase Noise Modeling and Measurement

Crosstalk in Dual PLLs

In the dual PLL, it has been found that the optimal phase noise performance is when the other side of the PLL is unused, powered down, and with no VCO connected. The table assumes that the other PLL is powered down with its corresponding VCO running. IF the actual case is that the other PLL is powered down with no VCO running, this typically results in about a 2 dB improvement in phase noise. If the other PLL is powered up with the VCO running, this typically resunts in a dB or two degradation from what the table predicts.

Issues with Input Sensitivity

There are many ways to cause the phase noise to be worse than predicted. One possible cause of this is when either the VCO or crystal power levels are insufficient to drive the counters. For the high frequency VCO, matching problems can also cause an input sensitivity problem. These phase noise numbers assume that the VCO and crystal power levels are sufficient to drive the counters, and that there are no problems matching the VCO to the prescaler input pin. Although rare, there are also PLLs for which the input buffer contributes phase noise and for these PLLs, a higher crystal oscillator drive level is required for optimal performance.

Spectrum Analyzer Correction Factors

A common way of measuring phase noise using a spectrum analyzer is as follows:

$$\textbf{\textit{Phase Noise = Carrier Power \ - \ Noise Power \ - \ 10•Log(Resolution Bandwidth)}} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(14.9)}}$$

However, this method is not entirely correct. Spectrum analyzers have a correction factor that is added to the phase noise to account for the log amplifier in the device and minor errors caused due to the difference between the noise bandwidth and 3 dB bandwidth. This correction factor is in the order of about 2.5 dB. Many spectrum analyzers have a function called "Mark Noise", which does account for the spectrum analyzer correction factors. The part-specific numbers for phase noise derived in this chapter do not account for the correction factor of the spectrum analyzer, and are therefore optimistic by about 2 dB. Numbers reported in this chapter account for spectrum analyzer correction factors.

Conclusion

This chapter has investigated the causes of phase noise and has provided a somewhat accurate model of how to predict it. Within the loop bandwidth, the PLL phase detector is typically the dominant noise source, and outside the loop bandwidth, the VCO noise is often the dominant noise source. It is reasonable to expect a +- 0.5 dB measurement error when measuring phase noise. Phase noise can vary from board to board and part to part, but typically this variation is in the order of a few dB.

References

Lascari, Lance   *Accurate Phase Noise Prediction in PLL Frequency Synthesizers*
Applied Microwave & Wireless Vol.12 No. 5. May 2000

Lascari, Lance   *Mathcad PLL Phase Noise Simulation Tool,*
http://www.rfdude.com

Phase noise Measurement of PLL Frequency Synthesizers National Semiconductor
Application Note 1052

Appendix A: Phase Noise for Resistors and Active Devices

Noise Voltages

Resistors and active devices such as op-amps generate noise voltages. In the case of an op-amp, the noise voltage should be specified. In the case of a resistor, this noise voltage is the thermal noise generated by the resistor. Recall that the thermal noise generated by a resistor is:

$$R\_Noise = \sqrt{4 \bullet T_0 \bullet K \bullet R} \qquad\qquad (14.10)$$

T_0 = *Ambient Temperature in Kelvin = 300 Kelvin (typically)*

K = *Boltzman's Constant =1.380658* $\times 10^{-23}$ *(Joule/Kelvin)*

R = *Resistor Value in Ohms*

Note that in both the case of the resistor and op-amp, the units are $\frac{V}{\sqrt{Hz}}$. Since phase noise is normalized to a 1 Hz bandwidth, one can disregard the denominator and consider the units to be in Volts.

Transfer Function for the Noise Voltage

Once the noise voltage is known, an open-loop transfer function, T(s), can be written which relates this noise voltage to the voltage it would generate for an open loop system at the VCO tuning line. To account for the closed loop system, one can simply divide this by the open loop transfer function of the VCO (Lascari 2000). In deriving the transfer function, T(s), drawing shorts between all grounds simplify the calculations. In the case of a resistor noise transfer function, the resistor noise can be considered to be acting on either side of the resistor. The actual transfer functions will not be derived here, since the formulas are shown in the design example at the end of this chapter.

Translating the Noise Voltage to a dBc/Hz number for Phase Noise

This explanation is found in reference listed by Lance Lascari. In a similar way that leakage-based reference spur was shown to relate to the modulation index of the signal, the modulation index is applied here to derive the phase noise. **Vnoise** represents the noise voltage that would be generated at the VCO input for an open loop system, f is the frequency, and G is the open loop transfer function. Note that it is necessary to multiply the noise voltage by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$, since these are expressed as RMS, and not Peak to Peak.

$$Phase\ Noise \approx 20 \bullet log\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \qquad\qquad For\ \beta \ll 1 \qquad (14.11)$$

$$\beta = \frac{\sqrt{2} \bullet Vnoise \bullet Kvco}{f} \bullet \frac{|T(2 \bullet \pi \bullet i \bullet f)|}{\left|1 + \dfrac{G(2 \bullet \pi \bullet i \bullet f)}{N}\right|}$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Resistor noise becomes a problem when the resistors in the loop filter get too large. This is because the thermal noise becomes more. However, this is oversimplifying the relationship because the resistance of the resistor itself also filters its own noise at higher frequencies. In general, the resistor noise tends to have the greatest contribution at offset frequencies close to the loop bandwidth. It can also have some contribution outside the loop bandwidth. The In order to minimize resistor noise, both using a higher current gain or Fractional *N* PLL can help because they decrease the sizes of the resistors and increase the sizes of the capacitors, assuming that the loop bandwidth is held constant.

Op-amp noise can also add considerable phase noise, especially if the op-amp is not very low noise. In general, the use of active devices in the loop filter should be avoided, unless it is necessary to get a higher tuning voltage for the VCO.

Chapter 15   Integrated Phase Noise Quantities

## Introduction

Phase noise at a particular offset is very important for performance. In addition to this, there are many quantities that are derived integrating the phase noise over a certain bandwidth. From this integrated phase noise, Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR) can be easily derived. The next step is the understanding of how to related this integrated phase noise to RMS phase error. From RMS phase error, there are two other interpretations of this called jitter and EVM (Error Vector Magnitude). Lastly, RMS frequency error can be calculated as well using a modification to integrating the phase noise.

Calculating the Integrated Phase Noise

Formula for Calculation of Integrated Phase Noise

For all of these noise quantities, the first step is to calculate the area under the phase noise profile. For this, there are two limits. **a** is the lower limit and **b** is the upper limit. The determination of the lower limit, **a**, is application specific, for some applications, like GSM, it is chosen to be the frame rate, which would be 1.733 kHz.   The upper limit is sometimes chosen to be the bit rate or the channel spacing. Because phase noise rolls off, it is the lower limit that is typically more important, and in many cases, making **b** infinite only slightly increases this area. The area needs to be multiplied by two in order to get the phase noise on the left and right sides of the carrier. This formula assumes that the phase noise, **L(f)**, is in scalar units, not logarithmic units.   The integrated phase noise, **A**, is computed by integrating the phase noise over a specified bandwidth and multiplying by two.
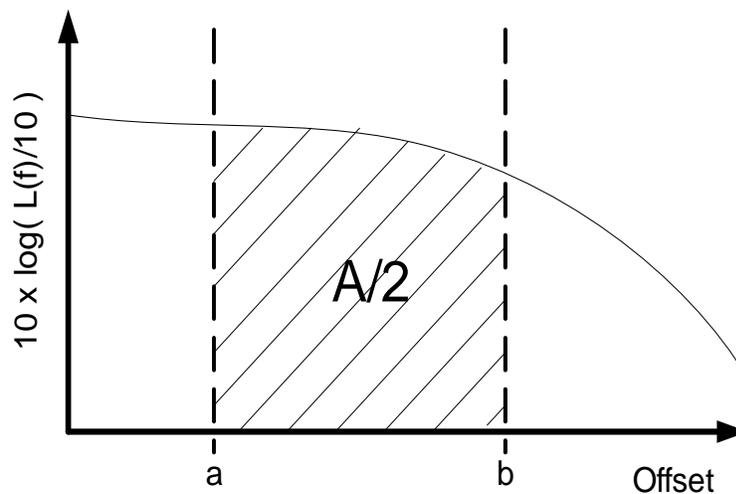
Figure 15.1 *Integrated Phase Noise*

$$A = 2 \bullet \int_{a}^{b} L(f) \bullet df$$

(15.1)

L(f) expressed in logarithmic units is in dBc/Hz. After converted to scalar units, it has units of 1/Hz. When this is integrated over frequency, this unit cancels and leaves this as a dimensionless quantity. A few rules of thumb regarding phase noise area can now be seen. If phase noise is increased by 6 dB at all offsets, the phase noise area is quadrupled. Decreasing the lower limit will always increase this area.

Impact of Spurs on the Integrated Phase Noise
In most cases, spurs are outside the loop bandwidth and have only a very small impact on the integrated phase noise.. However, many fractional PLLs and especially delta sigma PLLs have spurs that can occur inside the loop bandwidth. The way to treat a spur is to assume that all the energy is inside a 1 Hz bandwidth. The impact of a spur depends on the bandwidth. If one considers the phase noise to be flat within the integration bandwidth, then the spur relates to the phase noise in a *10●log(Bandwidth)* sense. For instance, a spur that is 40 dB above the noise floor has the same noise energy as the phase noise itself if the phase noise is flat and the integration bandwidth is 10 kHz. Two spurs that are 37 dB above this noise floor would also have equivalent noise energy as the phase noise itself.

Choice of Loop Bandwidth and Phase Margin for Minimum Integrated Phase Noise

Inside the loop bandwidth, the phase noise tends be dominated by the PLL. Outside the loop bandwidth, it tends to be dominated by the VCO. The phase noise tends to be flat, and the VCO tends to roll off. This implies that there is an offset frequency for which they are equal. If one chooses the loop bandwidth this special offset frequency, then this would be a first approximation for the loop bandwidth that would minimize the integrated phase noise. In actuality, this is an oversimplification. The VCO noise can crop inside the loop bandwidth for narrower loop bandwidths. The PLL noise is not perfectly flat. Peaking can also distorte this result. Nevertheless, choosing the loop bandwidth to be the offset frequency where the free running VCO noise is equal to the PLL noise is a good starting point for the optimal loop bandwidth. If the PLL noise improves with VCO noise constant, then this optimal loop bandwidth increases. If the VCO noise improves with the PLL noise constant, then this optimal loop bandwidth decreases.

The phase margin also has an impact on the integrated phase noise. If the phase margin is too low there will be peaking in the phase noise response near the loop bandwidth. This peaking can contribute significantly to the integrated phase noise. In general, designing for the highest phase margin possible yields the lowest integrated phase noise because it causes a much flatter response. There are design trade-offs with the phase margin and lock time as well, and this is discussed in more detail later in this book.

Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR)
The integrated phase noise, *A*, can be thought of the noise power relative to the carrier, provided that the lower limit, *a*, is greater than zero so that the carrier signal is not included. In order to find the signal to noise ratio, al that is necessary is to find the reciprocal of the integrated phase noise.

$$SNR = \frac{1}{A} \qquad \text{(15.2)}$$

It is common practice to express the SNR in dB as well as scalar units.

$$SNR_{dB} = 10 \bullet log\left(\frac{1}{A}\right) \qquad \text{(15.3)}$$

Rule of Thumb for Finding the Signal to Noise Ratio of Two Mixed Signals

If two signals are presented to the input of an ideal mixer, then the actual calculation of SNR would involve knowing the spectrum of the two signals. However, some coarse rules of thumb can be developed that require much less work This is helpful in understanding how a PLL used to generate a local oscillator can impact system performance.
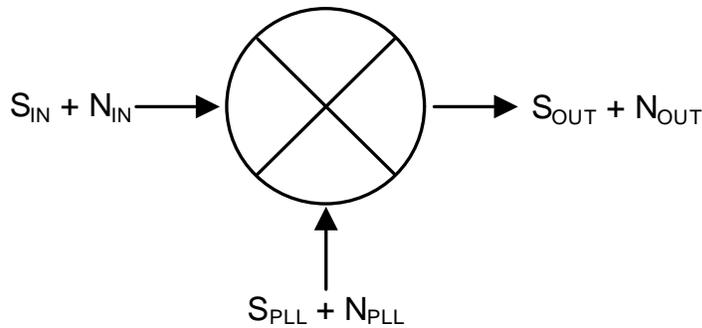
Figure 15.2 *PLL Noise Impact on SNR*

Consider an input signal to a mixer:

$$S_1 \quad = \quad S_{IN} + N_{IN} \qquad \text{(15.4)}$$

Where S1 is the total input signal, Si is the desired input signal, and Ni is the undesired input noise. Now assume that the PLL signal is:

$$S_2 \quad = \quad S_{PLL} + N_{PLL} \qquad \text{(15.5)}$$

The output signal is therefore the product of the two signals S1 and S2

$$S_{OUT} + N_{OUT} = S_{PLL} \bullet S_{IN} + S_{PLL} \bullet N_{IN} + S_{IN} \bullet N_{PLL} + N_{PLL} \bullet N_{IN} \qquad \text{(15.6)}$$

Now the first term is the desired signal power and the last term is negligible. The output signal to noise ratio can therefore be approximated as:

$$SNR = \frac{S_{PLL} \bullet S_{IN}}{S_{PLL} \bullet N_{IN} + S_{IN} \bullet N_{PLL}} = \frac{\left(S_{PLL}\middle/N_{PLL}\right) \bullet \left(S_{IN}\middle/N_{IN}\right)}{\left(S_{PLL}\middle/N_{PLL}\right) + \left(S_{IN}\middle/N_{IN}\right)} = \frac{SNR_1 \bullet SNR_2}{SNR_1 + SNR_2} \qquad (15.7)$$

In the above equation, SNR_1 and SNR_2 represent the signal to noise ratios of S_1 and S_2, respectively. In an analogous way that two resistances combine in parallel, the lower signal to noise ratio dominates. The above calculations contain some very gross approximations, but they do show how the signal to noise ratio of the PLL can degrade the signal to noise ratio of the whole system.

Understanding Standard Deviation

Introducing the Concept of Standard Deviation
In order to understand integrated noise concepts like RMS phase error, EVM, and jitter, it is necessary to understand the concept of standard deviation. The standard deviation is a measure of central tendency. It can be shown that all distributions, except for the most pathological exceptions that only a mathematician could dream of, that the average of samples approaches a Gaussian distribution as the sample size approaches infinity. For a Gaussian distribution, it can be shown that if something is sampled, then 68% of the time, the sample will be within one standard deviation of the mean value, 95% of the time, the sample will be within two standard deviations, and 99% of the time will be within three standard deviations.

Estimating Standard Deviation from Minimum, Maximum, and Sample Size
In theory, if one took enough samples, then they would be arbitrary big and arbitrarily small if they came from a Gaussian distribution. Although shunned by theoreticians, an rough guess at the standard deviation can be made from the minimum, maximum, and sample size. One approach is to assume that the minimum and maximum are below and above the average by some number of standard deviations, *n*. For instance, for a sample size of 40, one would expect roughly 95%, or 38 of these samples to be within two standard deviations. That implies that two are outside of two standard deviations. If one assumes that the minimum is below by two standard deviations, and the maximum is above by two standard deviations, then one could divide the difference between maximum and minimum by 4 and estimate the standard deviation. In this case, *n=2*. This number, *n*, is determined by the sample size in accordance with Table 15.1 and the standard deviation can be approximated as follows:

$$\sigma = \frac{Maximum - Minimum}{\kappa} \qquad (15.8)$$

N	Minimum	Maximum	κ (Monte Carlo Method)	κ (Disribution Curve Method)
2	-0.57	0.56	1.35	1.35
3	-0.85	0.85	1.93	1.93
4	-1.04	1.02	2.30	2.30
5	-1.16	1.16	2.56	2.56
6	-1.27	1.27	2.77	2.77
7	-1.36	1.35	2.93	2.93
8	-1.42	1.43	3.07	3.07
9	-1.49	1.48	3.19	3.19
10	-1.54	1.54	3.29	3.29
11	-1.58	1.59	3.38	3.38
12	-1.63	1.63	3.46	3.46
13	-1.67	1.67	3.54	3.54
14	-1.70	1.70	3.61	3.61
15	-1.73	1.74	3.67	3.67
16	-1.76	1.77	3.73	3.73
17	-1.79	1.80	3.78	3.78
18	-1.82	1.82	3.83	3.83
19	-1.84	1.84	3.88	3.88
20	-1.87	1.87	3.92	3.92
40	-2.17	2.15	4.48	4.48
50	-2.25	2.27	4.65	4.65
100	-2.51	2.51	5.15	5.15
200	-2.74	2.75	5.61	5.61
500	-3.04	3.06	6.18	6.18
1000	-3.21	3.24	6.58	6.58
2000	-3.46	3.44	6.96	6.96
5000	-3.69	3.77	7.44	7.44
10000	-3.75	3.79	7.78	7.78
20000	-4.06	4.00	8.11	8.11
50000	-4.23	4.23	8.53	8.53
100000	-4.42	4.42		8.83
200000	-4.56	4.56		9.13
500000	-4.75	4.75		9.51
1000000	-4.89	4.89		9.78
10000000	-5.33	5.33		10.65
100000000	-5.73	5.73		11.46
1000000000	-6.11	6.11		12.22

Table 15.1 Calculation of the parameter κ

Table 15.1 shows that t o estimate the standard deviation from a sample size of 40, take the difference between the maximum and the minimum and divide by 4.48. This was generated using two different methods. The Monte Carlo Method involved generating the random numbers and taking the average of many trials. The distribution curve model looked at the area under the normal distribution curve.

Relating the Integrated Phase Noise to a Standard Deviation

Relating the Integrated Phase Noise to the σ_v^2

The key link between integrated phase and RMS phase error (and jitter) is understanding how integrated phase noise relates to a standard deviation. It is well established that the standard deviation for a continuous random variable, $u(x)$, with zero mean can be calculated as follows:

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u^2(x) \bullet dx}$$

(15.9)

In many cases, the distribution may be zero over below or beyond certain limits. If so, then the limits can be used in the integral sign. Now power is related to the square of the voltage. In the case of phase noise, the noise power is relative to the carrier power, and therefore the voltage noise is related to the carrier voltage. To convert power to voltage, the resistance needs be known, but in this case, this is relative to the carrier, and the resistance term cancels out. Now the integrated phase noise can be related to the standard deviation.

$$A = 2 \bullet \int_a^b L(f) \bullet df = 2 \bullet \int_a^b v^2(f) \bullet df = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} v^2(f) \bullet df = \sigma_v^2$$

(15.10)

In this case, v, is the voltage noise relative to the carrier and has an average value of zero. σ_v^2 is the square of the standard deviation of the noise voltage. It easily follows that:

$$\sigma_v = \sqrt{2 \bullet \int_a^b L(f) \bullet df}$$

(15.11)

σ_v is a relative voltage. If it has a value of one, this means that the noise power is equal to the carrier power. In general, it is fair to assume that this has a value of much less than one.

Relating Voltage Noise to A Phase Error
Now that it is understood how to calculate the standard deviation of the relative noise voltage, σ_v, it now need to be related the standard deviation of the phase error, σ_ϕ. σ_ϕ has units of radians and will be considered to be small.
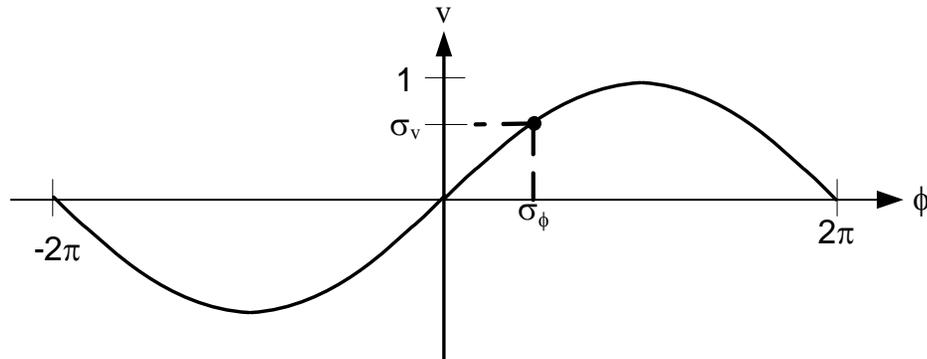
Figure 15.3 *Relating Voltage to Phase*

In the time domain, the carrier can be thought of as a sine wave. v is the relative noise voltage in relation to the amplitude of this carrier and ϕ is the phase of the carrier. For small arguments, $sin(\phi)$ can be approximated as ϕ since ϕ is assumed to be small. It therefore follows that the standard deviation of the relative voltage noise can be equated to the standard deviation of the phase error.

$$\sigma_\phi \approx \sigma_v \qquad (15.12)$$

Although it may seem that this is lot of work for nothing, now the relationship between phase noise, RMS phase error, and jitter can be understood.

RMS Phase Error Calculation

Equation (15.12) is the final link between integrated phase noise and phase error. The RMS Phase Error expressed in radians can now be calculated.

$$\sigma_{\phi(rad)} = \sigma_v = \sqrt{2\int_a^b L(f) \bullet df} \qquad (15.13)$$

Usually, the RMS phase error is expressed in degrees. The conversion is very straightforward.

$$\boldsymbol{RMS\ Phase\ Error(\ degrees\ )} = \sigma_{\phi(deg)} = \frac{180}{\pi}\sigma_{\phi(rad)} = \frac{180}{\pi}\sqrt{2\int_a^b L(f) \bullet df} \qquad (15.14)$$

RMS Phase Error Interpretation in the Time Domain and Jitter

RMS Phase Error Interpretation in the Time Domain
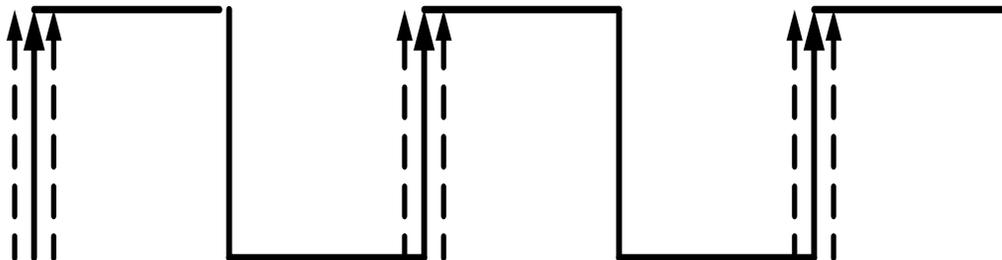
Figure 15.4 Illustration of RMS Phase Error of a Signal in the Time Domain

The result of running a square wave with a nonzero RMS phase error through a comparator or any digital gate that squares up the wave will result in a square wave as shown in Figure 15.4 . The rising edges of the square wave do not always occur at exactly the time they should, but have a random phase error that can be either positive or negative. The average value of this phase error is zero, but the standard deviation is nonzero and is the RMS phase error. Figure 15.3 is helpful in understanding this concept.

Understanding Jitter and the Relationship it has to RMS Phase Error

Relationship Between RMS Phase Error and Jitter

Notice how the rising edges of the signal in Figure 15.4 do not always start at the time they should, but jitters around the desired value.   This is where the concept of jitter comes from. Jitter is really just another way of interpreting RMS phase error and tends to be used a lot when referring to this concept in the time domain. In order to calculate from RMS phase error to RMS jitter (σ_t) it is necessary to convert this phase difference to cycles, and multiply by the reciprocal of the frequency (*f*).

$$\sigma_t = \frac{1}{f} \frac{\sigma_{\phi(rad)}}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{f} \frac{\sigma_{\phi(deg)}}{360} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(15.15)}}$$

For an example, consider a 10 MHz signal with 5 degrees RMS phase error. Since the period of this signal is 0.1 μs, a 5 degree RMS phase error is 5/360 = 1/72 cycles. 0.1μs/72 = 1.339 ns.

Cycle to Cycle Jitter

For cycle to cycle jitter, each rising edge of the signal is compared relative to the previous cycle. This is different than RMS jitter, where it is compared to an ideal signal. Consider a signal for which at some time, all rising edges get shifted by a large phase error. The RMS jitter would be large because all the rising edges are off from what they would be for an ideal signal. However, the cycle to cycle jitter would be much less degraded by this large phase shift, since it only would be important for one cycle.

Peak to Peak Jitter and Jitter Measurement in the Time Domain

RMS jitter is the standard deviation of the time error of the rising edges. Peak to peak jitter is the maximum over all cycles. In theory, if one waits for a longer time, then the peak to peak jitter would be greater. Unlike RMS jitter and cycle to cycle jitter, Peak to peak jitter can be measured on an oscilloscope. The general method is to set the oscilloscope on infinite persistence, and see the time difference between the minimum and the maximum edges of the signal.

Crude Method of Relating Peak to Peak Jitter to RMS Jitter

The most accurate way to calculate RMS jitter is to use the method of integrating the phase noise. However, a spectrum analyzer is not always available, and many people work with jitter tend to have a more digital focus and familiarity of oscilloscopes. Peak to peak jitter can be measured on an oscilloscope by setting the display to infinite persistence and observing the signal in the time domain. This measurement does not account for the lower and upper integration limits as shown in Figure 15.1 . Nevertheless, this method appeals to many because it requires only an oscilloscope and it is more intuitive than measuring jitter in the frequency domain. If one accepts this as the peak to peak jitter, it can be related to RMS jitter by equation (15.8) and Table 15.1 , once the sample size is known. The sample size

can be found by taking the sampling time divided by the number of samples taken per second. An even more crude method is to sample for "a long time" and divide this value by three, although this method may not be that accurate.

EVM and RMS Phase Error Interpretation in the Constellation Diagram

RMS Phase Error Interpretation in the Constellation Diagram
If one visualizes the RMS error in the time domain, then it can be seen why this may be relevant in clock recovery applications, or any application where the rising (or falling) edges of the signal need to occur in a predictable fashion. The impact of RMS phase error is more obvious when considering a constellation diagram.

The constellation diagram shows the relative phases of the I (in phase) and Q (in quadrature – 90 degrees phase shift) signals. The I and Q axes are considered to be orthogonal, since their inner product is zero. In other words, for any signal received, the I and Q component can be recovered. Each point on the constellation diagram corresponds to a different symbol, which could represent multiple bits. As the number of symbols is increased, the bandwidth efficiency theoretically increases, but the system also becomes more susceptible to noise. Quadrature Phase Shift Keying (QPSK) is a modulation scheme sometimes used in cellular phones. Figure 15.5 shows the constellation diagram for QPSK.
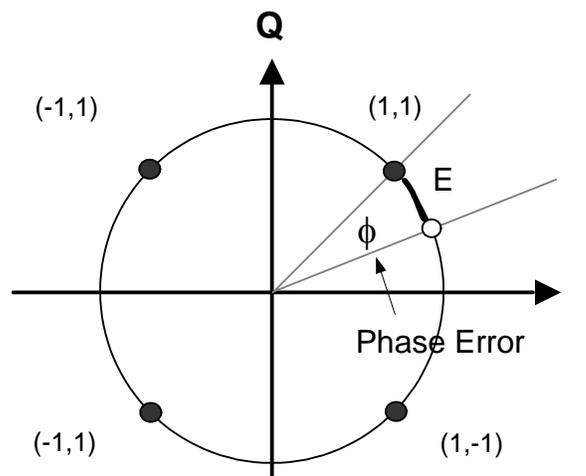
Figure 15.5 *Impact of RMS phase Error Seen on a Constellation Diagram*

Consider an ideal system in which the only noise-producing component is the PLL in the receiver. In this example, the symbol corresponding to the bits (1,1) is the intended message indicated by the darkened circle. However, because the PLL has a non-zero RMS phase error contribution, the received signal is actually the non-filled circle. If this experiment was repeated, then it the result would be that the phase error between the received and intended signal was normally distributed with a standard deviation equal to the RMS phase error. If the RMS phase error of the system becomes too large, it could actually cause a the message to be misinterpreted as (-1, 1) or (1,-1). This constellation diagram interpretation of RMS phase error shows why higher order modulation schemes are more subject to the

RMS phase error of the PLL.   A real communications system will have a noisy channel and other noisy components, which reduce the amount of RMS phase error of the PLL that can be tolerated.

Error Vector Magnitude (EVM)

Error Vector Magnitude is the magnitude of the vector formed from the intended message and the actual message received (refer to Figure 15.5). This is commonly expressed as a percentage of the error vector relative to the vector formed between the origin and intended message. Referring to Figure 15.5 , assuming the circle has radius R, and applying the law of cosines yields the magnitude of the error vector , *E*, to be:

$$E = 2 \bullet R^2 - 2 \bullet R^2 \bullet cos(\phi) \qquad\qquad (15.16)$$

Assuming that ϕ is small, and using the Taylor series expansion $cos(\phi) = 1 - \phi^2/2$, yields the following relationship between RMS phase error and EVM:

$$EVM \approx 100\% \bullet \left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right) \bullet \sigma_{\phi(deg)} \qquad\qquad (15.17)$$

Parting Thoughts on RMS Phase Error

Eye Diagram

The eye diagram gives an indication between the different symbols. If the eye diagram is open, then the bit error rate will be small. If it is more closed, the bit error rate will be increased. Although there is not really a good term to relate RMS phase error to the eye diagram, the impact of the RMS phase error on the eye diagram is that it causes it to close up. This means that the decision region is smaller and it is more likely to make an error in which bits were sent.

Completeness of the Phase Noise Profile

If the phase noise profile is known, then all the integrated phase noise quantities can be calculated. So the phase noise profile has all the information. However, if one knows the jitter, then it is impossible to recover the phase noise profile from this. The area under this profile can be found, but there are infinitely many ways that area can be achieved. It can be very flat, or most of the energy can be concentrated in one spur. For this reason, the phase noise profile is always good to also have. Nevertheless, the ease of using a single number to quantify phase noise performance is appealing from a practical standpoint of view.

Unifying Theory for Integrated Phase Noise Quantities

Most the noise quantities presented so far are related to the integrated phase noise, A. Many people are familiar with interpreting this integrated phase noise in one way or another. The following table gives a way to relate all these noise quantities to each other.

$\rightarrow$ *Converting To* $\downarrow$ *Converting From*	**Integrated Phase Noise** (A)	**Signal to Noise Ratio** (SNR)	**RMS Phase Error** $(\sigma_{\phi(deg)})$	**RMS Jitter** (σ_t)
A		$1/A$	$\dfrac{180}{\pi}\sqrt{A}$	$\dfrac{1}{2\pi f}\sqrt{A}$
SNR	$1/SNR$		$\dfrac{180}{\pi\sqrt{SNR}}$	$\dfrac{1}{2\pi f\sqrt{SNR}}$
$\sigma_{\phi(deg)}$	$\left(\dfrac{\pi \bullet \sigma_{(deg)}}{180}\right)^2$	$\left(\dfrac{180}{\pi \bullet \sigma_{(deg)}}\right)^2$		$\dfrac{1}{f}\dfrac{\sigma_{\phi(deg)}}{360}$
σ_t	$\left(2\pi f \bullet \sigma_t\right)^2$	$\left(\dfrac{1}{2\pi f \bullet \sigma_t}\right)^2$	$360 \bullet f \bullet \sigma_t$	

Table 15.2 *Unifying Formulas for Integrated Phase Noise Quantities*

RMS Frequency Error (Residual FM)

RMS frequency error is the standard deviation of the frequency error. Following from the definition of the standard deviation, the method is to integrate the phase noise times the square of the offset frequency. By definition, this yields the standard deviation of the frequency error, or more commonly called the RMS frequency error. This is of particular interest in applications involving frequency modulation. More weight is placed at farther offset for this integral. Because it has the factor of f^2 under the integral sign, it does not easily relate to other

$$\sigma_f = \sqrt{2 \bullet \int_a^b L(f) \bullet f^2 df} \qquad (15.18)$$

Conclusion

This chapter has covered various parameters that are derived from the phase noise of the PLL, including RMS phase error. Unlike the phase noise discussed in the previous chapter, the RMS phase error is very dependent on the loop bandwidth of the PLL. RMS phase error is often a parameter of concern in digital communication systems, especially those using phase modulation.

Appendix   Example Calculations with Integrated Phase Error

For this example, a plot was downloaded from the Agilent E4445A spectrum analyzer compared to what the equipment produced. The area was calculated numerically.
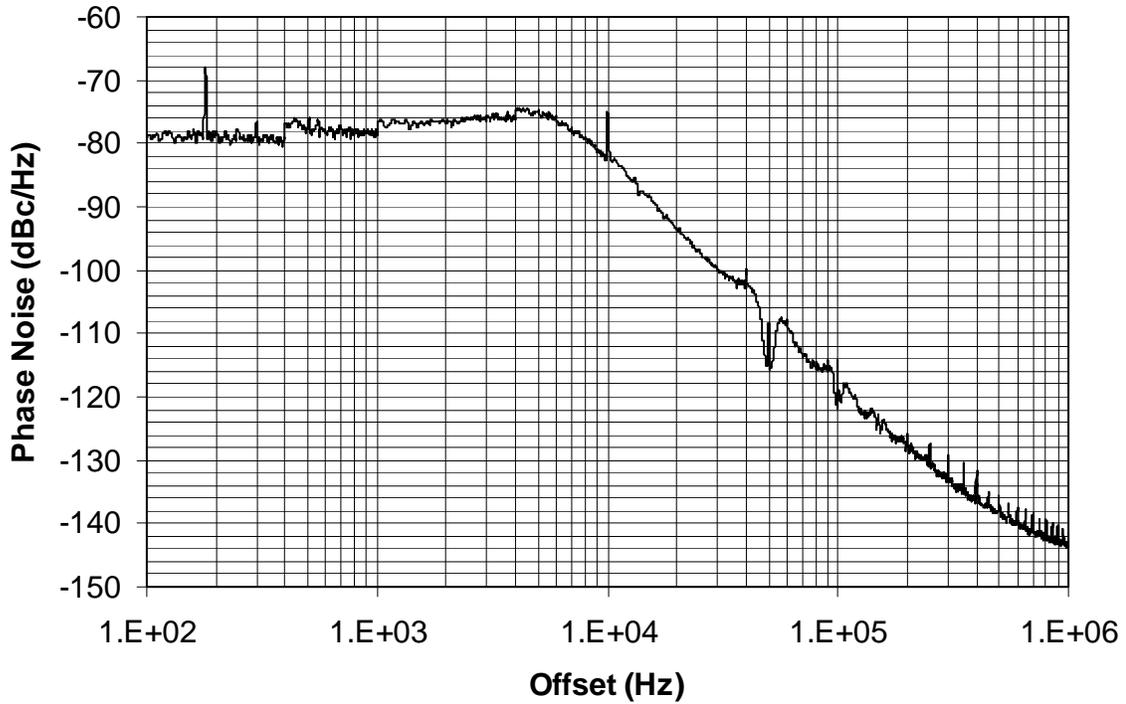
Figure 15.6 Downloaded Phase Noise Profile

From this phase noise, integrated phase noise quantities were calculated.

f	770	MHz
a	12	kHz
b	100	kHz

A	2.8438×10^{-5}	
$\sigma_{\phi(rad)}$	5.3327×10^{-3}	rad
$\sigma_{\phi(deg)}$	0.3055	deg
EVM	0.533	%
σ_t	1.1023	ps
σ_f	112.6556	Hz

Table 15.3 Calculated Phase Noise Quantities

These calculated results can be compared to measurements done by the instrument itself to verify that indeed these calculations are correct.

Screenshot 1

```
☼ Agilent 10:48:05 Oct 1, 2004                    T      │ RMS Noise
                                                          │
Carrier Freq  770 MHz  Signal Track Off  DANL Off  Trig Free │  RMS Noise
Log Plot                    100.00% of 50 Avg            │    Degree
                                                          │
Marker 100.000 kHz                                        │  RMS Noise
                                                          │    Radian
Carrier Power −8.30 dBm  Atten 0.00 dB    Mkr1   88.0000 kHz │
Ref −60.00dBc/Hz                                305.5m Deg │  RMS Noise
10.00                                                     │    Jitter
dB/                                                       │
                                    1R                    │
                                                          │
                                       1                  │
                                                          │
                                                          │
     100 Hz         Frequency Offset          1 MHz       │
                                                          │
Marker  Trace   Type          X Axis        Value         │
1R       2      RMS Degree     12 kHz    −84.81 dBc/Hz     │
1△       2      RMS Degree     88 kHz    305.5371 mDeg     │
                                                          │
Use View/Trace menu when loading or saving logarithmic traces.
```
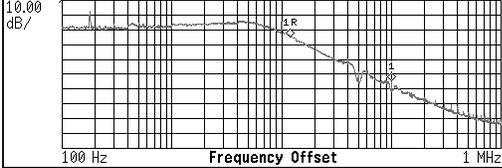
RMS Phase Error Calculation

Screenshot 2

```
☼ Agilent 10:48:43 Oct 1, 2004                    T      │ RMS Noise
                                                          │
Carrier Freq  770 MHz  Signal Track Off  DANL Off  Trig Free │  RMS Noise
Log Plot                    100.00% of 50 Avg            │    Degree
                                                          │
Marker 100.000 kHz                                        │  RMS Noise
                                                          │    Radian
Carrier Power −8.30 dBm  Atten 0.00 dB    Mkr1   88.0000 kHz │
Ref −60.00dBc/Hz                                   1.10ps │  RMS Noise
10.00                                                     │    Jitter
dB/                                                       │
                                    1R                    │
                                                          │
                                       1                  │
                                                          │
                                                          │
     100 Hz         Frequency Offset          1 MHz       │
                                                          │
Marker  Trace   Type          X Axis        Value         │
1R       2      RMS Jitter     12 kHz    −84.81 dBc/Hz     │
1△       2      RMS Jitter     88 kHz       1.102 ps       │
                                                          │
Use View/Trace menu when loading or saving logarithmic traces.
```

RMS Jitter

Screenshot 3

```
☼ Agilent 10:49:05 Oct 1, 2004                    T      │ Marker
                                                          │ Select Marker
Carrier Freq  770 MHz  Signal Track Off  DANL Off  Trig Free │ 1  2  3  4
Log Plot                    100.00% of 50 Avg            │
                                                          │  Normal
Marker 100.000 kHz                                        │
                                                          │
Carrier Power −8.30 dBm  Atten 0.00 dB    Mkr1   88.0000 kHz │  Delta
Ref −60.00dBc/Hz                                112.599 Hz │
10.00                                                     │
dB/                                                       │  RMS Noise▶
                                    1R                    │
                                                          │  Residual FM
                                       1                  │
                                                          │
                                                          │  Off
     100 Hz         Frequency Offset          1 MHz       │
                                                          │
Marker  Trace   Type          X Axis        Value         │  More
1R       2      Residual FM    12 kHz    −84.81 dBc/Hz     │  1 of 2
1△       2      Residual FM    88 kHz    112.5986 Hz       │
                                                          │
Use View/Trace menu when loading or saving logarithmic traces.
```
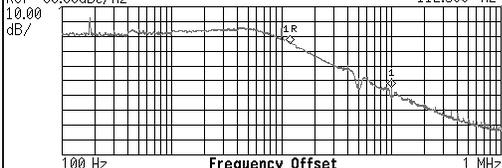
RMS Frequency Error

Chapter 16   Transient Response of PLL Frequency Synthesizers

Introduction
This chapter considers the frequency response of a PLL when the *N* divider is changed. Second order approximations involving the natural frequency and damping factor are often used to model this event. These two terms can be related to phase margin and loop bandwidth. However, models using these quantities are lower order approximations and give only a fair indication of this time. This chapter derives some of these lower order models and also derives a higher order fourth order model that is much more accurate.

Derivation of Transfer Functions
The filter coefficients *A0*, *A1*, *A2*, and *A3* were discussed in a previous chapter. Recall that the transfer function of the loop filter is as follows:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet \left[A3 \bullet s^3 + A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0\right]} \qquad (16.1)$$

This leads to the following closed-loop transfer function:

$$CL(s) = \frac{K \bullet N \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2)}{s^5 \bullet A3 + s^4 \bullet A2 + s^3 \bullet A1 + s^2 \bullet A0 + s \bullet K \bullet T2 + K} \qquad (16.2)$$

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}$$

It should be noted that the *N* value to use in this equation is the *N* value corresponding to the final frequency value, not the initial frequency value or the frequency for which the loop filter was designed for. This will probably be a slightly different than the N value corresponding to the N counter value that, not the starting frequency value or the *N* value the loop filter was optimized for.

Second Order Approximation to Transient Response
Derivation of Equations

To this point, no approximations have been made, and this form works up to a fourth order loop filter. In this section, *CL(s)* will be approximated by a second order expression, in order to derive results that give an intuitive feel of the transient response.

It is assumed that these higher order terms are small relative to the lower order terms. The Initial Value Theorem (16.3) suggests that the consequences of ignoring these terms are more on the initial characteristics, such as overshoot, and less on long time behavior, such as lock time. In addition, the impact of neglecting the zero, *T2*, has a noticeable impact on overshoot, but only a minimal impact on lock time.

$$\lim_{s \to \infty} s \bullet Y(s) = \lim_{t \to 0} y(t) \qquad (16.3)$$

The simplified second order expression is:

$$CL(s) \approx \frac{K/A0}{s^2 + s \bullet \left(\dfrac{K \bullet T2}{A0}\right) + \dfrac{K}{A0}} \qquad (16.4)$$

(16.5)

Defining

$$\omega n = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet A0}} \qquad (16.6)$$

(16.7)

$$\zeta = \frac{T2}{2} \bullet \omega n \qquad (16.8)$$

(16.9)

It can be seen that the poles of this function are at:

$$-\zeta \bullet \omega n \pm j \bullet \omega n \bullet \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2} \qquad (16.10)$$

(16.11)

Now consider a PLL, which is initially locked at frequency *f1*, and then the *N* counter is changed such to cause the PLL to switch to frequency *f2*. It should be noted that the value for *N* that is used in all of these equations should be the value of *N* corresponding to *f2*. This event is equivalent to changing the reference frequency from *f1/N* to *f2/N*. Using inverse Laplace transforms it follows that the frequency response is:

$$F(t) = f2 + (f1 - f2) \bullet e^{-\zeta \bullet \omega n \bullet t} \bullet \left[cos\left(\omega n \sqrt{1-\zeta^2} \bullet t\right) + \frac{\zeta - R2 \bullet C2 \bullet \omega n}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \bullet sin\left(\omega n \sqrt{1-\zeta^2} \bullet t\right) \right] \qquad (16.12)$$

Since the term in brackets has a maximum value of:

$$\frac{1 - 2 \bullet R2 \bullet C2 \bullet \zeta \bullet \omega n + R2^2 \bullet C2^2 \bullet \omega n^2}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \qquad (16.13)$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

It follows that the lock time in seconds is given by:

$$Lock\,Time = \frac{-ln\left(\frac{tol}{f2-f1} \bullet \frac{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}}{1-2 \bullet R2 \bullet C2 \bullet \zeta \bullet \omega n + R2^2 \bullet C2^2 \bullet \omega n^2}\right)}{\zeta \bullet \omega n} \qquad (16.14)$$

Many times, this is approximated by:

$$Lock\,Time = \frac{-ln\left(\frac{tol}{f2-f1} \bullet \sqrt{1-\zeta^2}\right)}{\zeta \bullet \omega n} \qquad (16.15)$$

The peak time can be calculated by taking the derivative of expression (16.12) and setting this equal to zero. In this case, calculations are simplified if one assumes that **C2** is sufficiently small. Note that the solution for t=0 is ignored.

$$Peak\,Time = \frac{\pi}{\omega n \sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \qquad (16.16)$$

Combining this with (16.12)and (16.13) yields the following:

$$Overshoot = \frac{f2-f1}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \bullet e^{-\zeta \bullet \pi / \sqrt{1-\zeta^2}} \qquad (16.17)$$
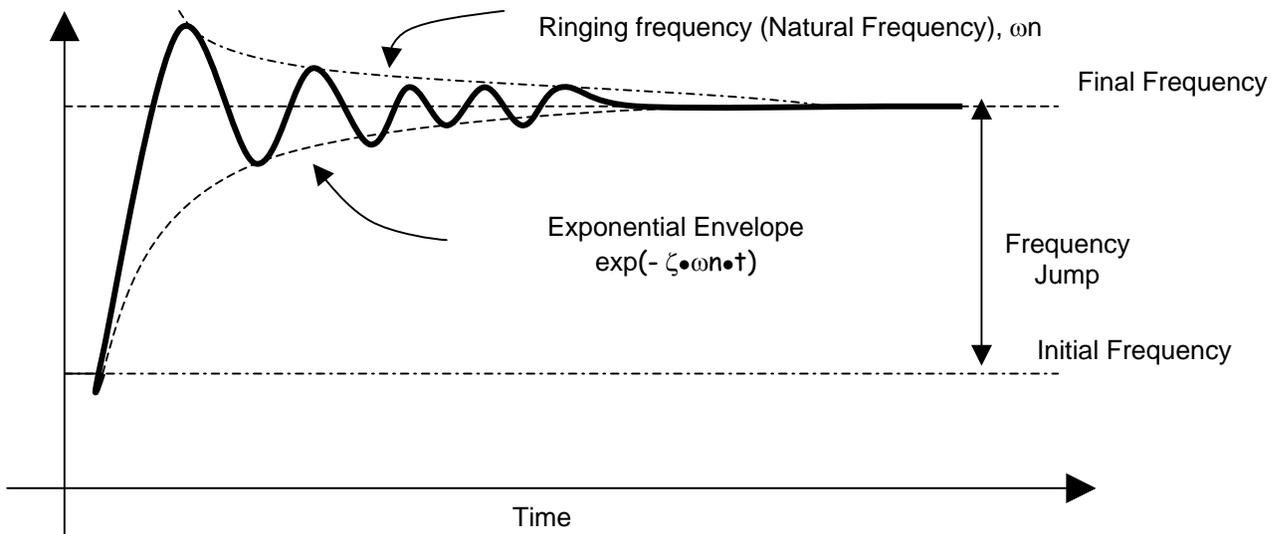
Figure 16.1 *Classical Model for the Transient Response of a PLL*

Relationship Between Phase Margin, Loop Bandwidth, Damping Factor, and Natural Frequency

For a second order filter, the following relationships exist for loop filters designed with National Semiconductor's AN-1001, National Semiconductor's online EasyPLL Program, or the equations presented in this book. These relationships are proven in the Appendix.

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \zeta \bullet \omega n \qquad (16.18)$$

$$\sec \phi - \tan \phi = \frac{1}{4 \bullet \zeta^2}$$

Phase Margin, ϕ	Damping Factor, ζ	Natural Frequency, ωn
30.00 degrees	0.6580	$0.7599 \bullet \omega c$
35.00 degrees	0.6930	$0.7215 \bullet \omega c$
36.87 degrees	0.7071	$0.7071 \bullet \omega c$
40.00 degrees	0.7322	$0.6829 \bullet \omega c$
45.00 degrees	0.7769	$0.6436 \bullet \omega c$
50.00 degrees	0.8288	$0.6033 \bullet \omega c$
55.00 degrees	0.8904	$0.5615 \bullet \omega c$
60.00 degrees	0.9659	$0.5177 \bullet \omega c$
61.93 degrees	1.0000	$0.5000 \bullet \omega c$
65.00 degrees	1.0619	$0.4709 \bullet \omega c$
70.00 degrees	1.1907	$0.4199 \bullet \omega c$

Table 16.1 *Relationship Between Phase Margin, Damping Factor and Natural Frequency*

So by specifying the loop bandwidth, ωc, and the phase margin, ϕ, the damping factor and natural frequency can be determined, and vise versa.

Fast Approximations to Lock Time, Rise Time, and Overshoot

If one assumes 50 degrees of phase margin, a settling tolerance of 1/100000 and factors in all the factors of $2 \bullet \pi$, the following simple relationships can be derived.

$$Lock\ Time \approx \frac{4}{Fc} \qquad (16.19)$$

$$Peak\ Time \approx \frac{0.8}{Fc} \qquad (16.20)$$

$$Overshoot \approx \frac{f2 - f1}{9} \qquad\qquad (16.21)$$

These rules of thumb are easy to use and roughly accurate, except for the expression for overshoot. Because the approximation ignores the impact of **R2** and **C2**, the overshoot is much less. In practice it is more accurate to assume the overshoot is 1/3rd of the frequency difference. Also note that the first two equations imply that the peak time is roughly one-fifth of the lock time.

Fourth Order Transient Analysis

This analysis considers all the poles and zeros of the transfer function and gives the most accurate results. To start with, the transfer function in (16.2) is multiplied by *(f2-f1)/(N•s)*. However, since these formulas are really referring to the phase response, and it is the frequency response that is sought, the whole transfer function is also multiplied by *s* to perform differentiation (frequency is the derivative of phase). The resulting expression is rewritten in the following form:

$$F(s) = s \bullet CL(s) \bullet \frac{f2 - f1}{N \bullet s} \;=\; \frac{K \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2) \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A3 \bullet s^5 + A2 \bullet s^4 + A1 \bullet s^3 + A0 \bullet s^2 + K \bullet T2 \bullet s + K} \qquad (16.22)$$

The challenge is finding the poles of the closed loop transfer function. The polynomial can be up to fifth order, depending on the loop filter order. Abel's Impossibility Theorem states that there cannot exist a closed form solution for polynomials of fifth and higher order. Closed form solutions do exist for polynomials of fourth and lower order, although the fourth and third order equations are rather complicated. If the means are not available to solve for the poles, then one can approximate by reducing the order of the polynomial, until it is solvable.

Note that the roots of the denominator correspond to the poles of the transfer function. Since this is a fourth order polynomial, the roots of this function can be found analytically, although it is much easier to find them numerically. The transient response can be rewritten as:

$$F(s) = \sum_{i=0}^{4*} B_i \bullet \left[\frac{1}{s \bullet (s - p_i)} + \frac{T2}{s - p_i} \right] \qquad\qquad (16.23)$$

$$B_i = \frac{K \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A3*} \bullet \prod_{k \neq i} \frac{1}{p_i - p_k}$$

Note that if the filter order is lower than fourth order, or an approximation is being used, the terms with the asterisks will be reduced. For the above formulas and the formulas to follow, an asterisk will be used to designate places where the coefficient is changed depending on the filter order. For the above equations, for a fourth order filter, the summation index goes to 4 and the denominator for the coefficients is *A3*. For a third order filter, the summation index goes to 3 and the denominator for the coefficients is *A2*. For a second order filter, the summation index goes to 2 and the denominator for the coefficients is *A1*. Note that some of the coefficients B_i will be complex; however, they will combine in such a way that the final solution is real. Now since the poles need to be calculated for this, it will be assumed that they all have negative real parts. If this is not the case, then the design is unstable. Using this assumption that the design is stable, the transient response can be simplified. Also, if the simulator does not do this, the solution can be expressed with all real variables by applying Euler's formula:

$$e^{\alpha + j \bullet \beta} = e^{\alpha} \bullet (cos\ \beta + j \bullet sin\ \beta) \tag{16.24}$$

Assuming a stable system, the transient response is:

$$\tag{16.25}$$
$$f(t) = f2 + \sum_{i=0}^{4*} B_i \bullet e^{p_i \bullet t} \bullet \left(\frac{1}{p_i} + T2 \right)$$

Additional Comments Regarding the Lock Time Formula

Using the Exponential Envelope

(16.25) provides a complete analysis for the transient response, including all of the ringing of the PLL. However, for the purposes of lock time determination, it is better to eliminate the ringing from the equation, and study only the exponential envelope. This makes the prediction of lock time more consistent. The exponential envelope is obtained by applying the triangle inequality to (16.26).

$$\tag{16.26}$$
$$Exponential\ Envelope = f2 + \sum_{i=0}^{4*} \left| B_i \bullet e^{p_i \bullet t} \bullet \left(\frac{1}{p_i} + T2 \right) \right|$$

Cycle Slips

When an instantaneous phase error is presented to the phase detector, then cycle slipping can occur. When the *N* counter value changes, then the phase of the VCO signal divided by *N* will initially be incorrect in relation to the crystal reference signal divided by R. If the loop bandwidth is very small (around 1%) relative to the comparison frequency, then this phase error will accumulate faster than the PLL can correct for it and eventually cause the phase detector to put out a current correction of the wrong polarity. By dividing the comparison

frequency by the instantaneous phase error presented to the phase detector, one can approximate how many cycles it would take the phase detector to cycle slip. If this time is less than about half the rise time of the PLL, then cycle slipping is likely to occur. An easier rule of thumb that is less accurate is that cycle slipping tends to occur when the loop bandwidth is less than 1% of the comparison frequency. Cycle slips are somewhat rare in integer PLL designs, but are common with fractional N PLL designs, since they typically run at higher comparison frequencies. Many of National Semiconductor's PLLs have features such as cycle slip reduction and Fastlock that reduce the effects of cycle slipping significantly or even completely.

Dependence of Lock Time on Loop Bandwidth

Consider a two loop filters that are designed for the exact same parameters, except for the second loop filter is designed to have a loop bandwidth of *M* times the loop bandwidth of the first filter. In this case, the scaling rule for loop filters apples. All the resistor values in the second filter will be *M* times the resistor values in the first filter and the capacitors values in the second filter will be $1/M^2$ times the capacitor values of the first filter. Substituting this in for the definition of the filter coefficients yields the result that *A0* will be multiplied by $1/M^2$, *A1* by $1/M^3$, *A2* by $1/M^4$, and *A3* by $1/M^5$. It therefore follows that if *p* which makes the denominator in equation (16.22) equal to zero for the first filter, then *M•p* will make the denominator in equation (16.22) equal to zero for the second filter. Combining this information with formula (16.23) yields the result that the coefficients B_i are divided by a factor of *M*. Looking at formulas (16.22) or (16.23), the factors of *M* all cancel out, except in the exponent. This proves that the transient response for the second loop filter will be identical to that of the first, except for the time axis is scaled by a factor of *1/M*. The grand result of all this analysis is that it proves that the lock time is inversely proportional to the loop bandwidth, and that the overshoot (undershoot) will remain exactly the same.

Dependence of Lock Time on the Frequency Jump

The quantity |*f2 - f1*| is the frequency jump. Now consider the same loop filter. For the first lock time measurement, the transient response is recorded. For the second lock time measurement, the final frequency, *f2*, is kept constant, but the initial frequency, *f1*, is changed such that the frequency jump is increased by a factor of *K*, equation (16.22) and (16.23) will be the same for both cases, except for the fact that the coefficients for A_i in the second case will be multiplied by a factor of *K*. This implies that the transient response will be the same for both cases, except for in the second case, the ringing is multiplied by a factor of *K*. Note that although the lock time for the second case will be longer, it will be not be increased by a factor of *K*, but rather something much less. What can be implied from this is that if the frequency jump and frequency tolerance are scaled by equal amounts, the lock time will be identical.

Rule of Thumb for Lock Time for an Optimized Filter

Although (16.25) is very complete, it is difficult to apply without the aid of computers. Simulations show optimal lock time occurs with a phase margin around 48 degrees. Recall that it was shown that lock time was inversely proportional to loop bandwidth, and that the lock time does not change if the frequency jump and frequency tolerance are scaled in equal amounts. Using the above rules and assuming 48 degrees of phase margin, a rule of thumb for lock time can be derived from simulated data.

$$LT \approx \frac{400}{Fc} \bullet \left(1 - log_{10}\left|\Delta F\right|\right)$$

$$\Delta F = \frac{Frequency\,Tolerance}{Frequency\,Jump}$$

(16.27)

LT is the lock time in microseconds, **Fc** is the loop bandwidth in kHz, and **ΔF** is the ratio as shown above.

Simulation Results

Figure 16.2 and Figure 16.3 show a comparison between simulated results, based on this chapter, and actual measured data. There is very good agreement between these graphs. Note that the **C2** capacitor in the loop filter was type C0G. When this was changed to a worse dielectric, the lock time increased from 489 μS to 578 μS. This example was also contrived so that the charge pump stayed away from the power supply rails, in order to eliminate the saturation effects of the charge pump. These are the effects that most often cause the measured result to differ from the theoretical result. The VCO capacitance was added to **C3** for the purposes of the calculations.
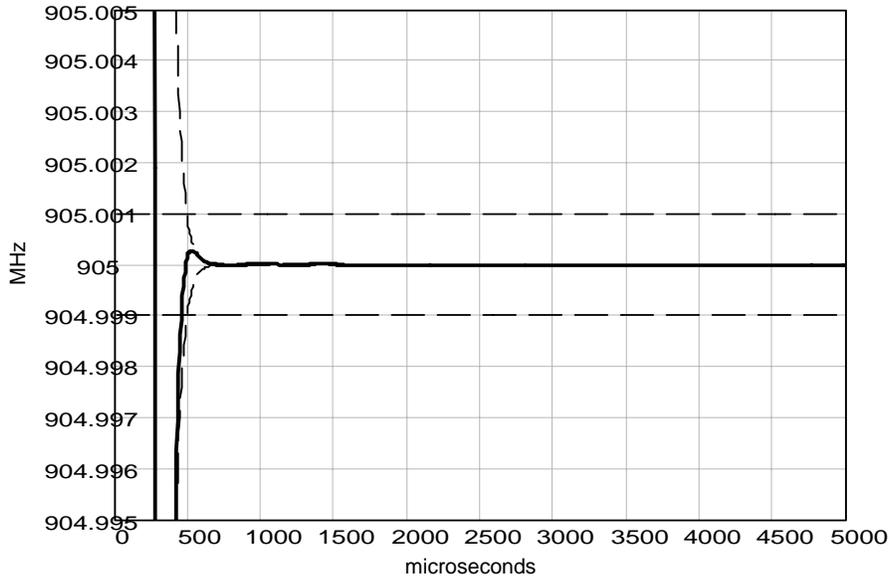
Figure 16.2 Theoretical Lock Time to 1 kHz Tolerance is 446 μs
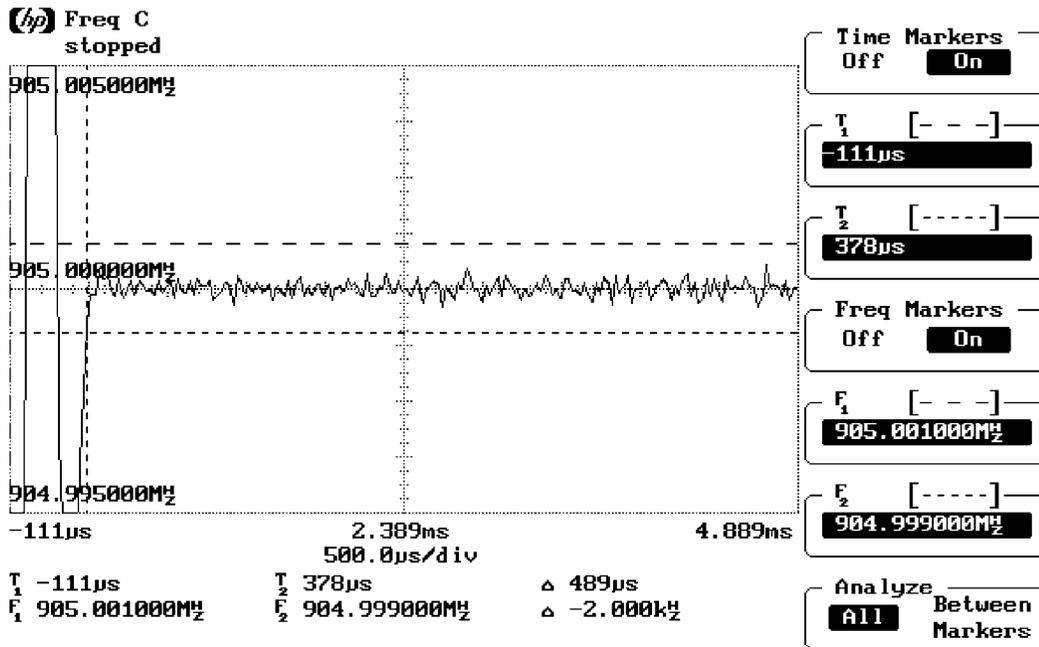
Figure 16.3 Actual Lock Time to 1 kHz Tolerance is 449 S

Factors that Can Degrade Lock Time

Simulations are only as good as the information that goes into them. The calculations so far have assumed ideal components. Despite these assumptions, the model is quite accurate. However, there are several things that can degrade lock time. Often, it is useful to compare the theoretical and measured lock time to help understand if there are any other factors degrading lock time. The next few paragraphs discuss some of these things that can degrade lock time.

VCO and Charge Pump Non-linearity

Perhaps the biggest real world effect that could throw off this analysis is the non-linear characteristics of the VCO and the charge pump. When switching from one frequency to another, there is typically overshoot in the order of one third of the frequency jump. This overshoot is dependent on the phase margin/damping factor. If the VCO overshoots too far past its intended range for usage, or if the tuning voltage ever gets too close (about 0.5 V) to the supply rails for the charge pump, the first lobe of the transient response gets longer and increases the lock time. The designer should be aware that if overshoot causes the frequency to go outside the tuning range of the VCO, the modeled prediction could lose accuracy. To deal with this, design for a higher phase margin in order to decrease the overshoot.

Not Accounting for the VCO Input Capacitance

The VCO input capacitance adds in parallel with the capacitor that it is next to. If not accounted for, this could distort the results. This tends to decrease the loop bandwidth, and therefore increase the lock time.

Bad Capacitor Dielectrics

The simulations presented in this chapter assume ideal capacitors. In addition to real world capacitors not being exactly on the correct value, they have other undesired properties. Dielectric absorption is a property of capacitors. In order to test dielectric absorption, a voltage is applied, and then a short is placed across the capacitor and removed. Parts with a low dielectric absorption will have a smaller residual voltage develop across than ones with a larger dielectric absorption. Dielectrics such as NP0 and Film have good performance in this respect. However, for larger capacitor values, it is often necessary to use a lower performance dielectric like X7R. These dielectrics can drastically increase lock times. Some PLL designs seem completely immune to the impact of dielectrics, while others can have the lock time double or increase even more. If the actual lock time is substantially longer than the theoretical lock time, then replace the capacitors, especially capacitor *C2*, with ones of higher quality. For the example previously given, using a higher dielectric absorption capacitor for component *C2* increased the lock time from 489 μS to 578 μS.

Phase Detector Discrete Sampling Effects

The discrete sampling effects of the phase detector usually have little bearing on the lock time, provided that the comparison frequency is larger than about 10 times the loop bandwidth and less than 100 times the loop bandwidth. Nevertheless, there are those situations where these factors are important. The discrete time model is presented in a later chapter. Although, the discrete model is more accurate, the analog model presented in this chapter is still very useful because it is much faster to calculate and gives one a better insight into what impacts the lock time without relying completely on computer simulations.

Other Comments

There are some other factors that can have a lesser impact on lock time. Charge pump mismatch and charge pump leakage can slow lock time, but only if they are pretty severe. Some capacitors can be leaky, and this can also degrade lock time. Although the equations for the transient response of the fourth order loop filter, they can easily be derived in a similar fashion that the formulas in this chapter were derived.

Conclusion

This chapter has gone through a rigorous derivation of the equations involved in predicting lock time and the transient response of the PLL when the N divider is changed. A second order and a fourth order model were presented. For the fourth order model, discrepancies between theoretical lock times and measured lock times are on the order of 10 - 20% or less. If theoretical lock times and measured lock times closely agree, then this indicates that this is the best the PLL can do. However, if there is a large discrepancy, it makes sense to check and make sure that there is not some factor that is making the lock time worse than it could be.

Appendix

The Relationship Between Natural Frequency (ωn), Damping Factor (ζ), Loop Bandwidth (ωc) , and Phase Margin (φ)

Below is a list of equations that can be derived from the definitions for various parameters. The strategy for this derivation is to eliminate the parameters **T1**, **T2**, **A0**, and **A1** in order to find the desired relationship.

$$\gamma = \omega c^2 \bullet T2 \bullet \frac{A1}{A0} \approx 1 \qquad (16.28)$$

$$\omega n = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet A0}} \qquad (16.29)$$

$$\zeta = \frac{T2}{2} \bullet \omega n \qquad (16.30)$$

$$\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2 \bullet A0} \bullet \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2}} = 1 \qquad (16.31)$$

$$\pi - arctan(\omega c \bullet T2) + arctan(\omega c \bullet T1) = \phi \qquad (16.32)$$

$$\frac{A1}{A0} = T1 \qquad (16.33)$$

Eliminating **A1** and **A0** yields the following new equations:

$$1 = \omega c^2 \bullet T2 \bullet T1 \qquad (16.34)$$

$$\zeta = \frac{T2}{2} \bullet \omega n \qquad (16.35)$$

$$\frac{\omega n^2}{\omega c^2} \bullet \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2}} = 1 \qquad (16.36)$$

$$T1 = \frac{sec\,\phi - tan\,\phi}{\omega c} \qquad (16.37)$$

T2 and *T1* can be eliminated as follows:

$$T2 = \frac{2 \bullet \zeta}{\omega n} \qquad (16.38)$$

$$T1 = \frac{\omega n}{2 \bullet \zeta \bullet \omega c^2} \qquad (16.39)$$

These values can be substituted in:

$$\left[4 \bullet \zeta^{2^2} \bullet \left(\frac{\omega n}{\omega c} \right)^2 - 1 \right] + \left[\left(\frac{\omega n}{\omega c} \right)^4 - \frac{1}{4 \bullet \zeta^2} \bullet \left(\frac{\omega n}{\omega c} \right)^2 \right] = 0 \qquad (16.40)$$

(16.41)

By inspection, both terms will be zero provided that:

$$\frac{\omega n}{\omega c} = \frac{1}{2 \bullet \zeta} \qquad \Rightarrow \quad \omega c = 2 \bullet \zeta \bullet \omega n \qquad (16.42)$$

Substituting in this new result yields the other relationship:

$$sec \, \phi - tan \, \phi = \frac{1}{4 \bullet \zeta^2} \qquad (16.43)$$

Chapter 17   Impact of PFD Discrete Sampling Effects on Lock Time

Introduction
The previous model for lock time assumes that the charge pump puts out a continuous current that is proportional to the phase error. In reality, the charge pump puts out a pulse width modulated signal. Modeling this as an analog signal usually serves as a good approximation provided that the loop bandwidth of the PLL is between one-tenth and one-hundredth of the comparison frequency. The loop bandwidth is usually kept less than one-tenth of the comparison frequency as a design requirement. However, there is no design requirement that drives the loop bandwidth to be more than one-hundredth of the comparison frequency. This condition is often the case of fractional PLLs. This chapter models the lock time in a discrete fashion and investigates some of the discrete effects of the charge pump on lock time.

High Level Overview of the Model Derivation
The discrete lock time model for lock time is well suited for computer modeling because it creates a set of difference equations. These are the steps used in deriving the model.

- Define all voltages across the capacitors

- Derive the differential equations involved

- Convert the differential equations to difference equations

- Solve the system by incrementing in small discrete time steps

Deriving the Nomenclature
Although a trivial step, defining the problem in the right way simplifies the analysis. The easiest convention to use is to define all the voltages to be across the capacitors, and all the currents to be through the capacitors. For instance, *VC1* stands for the voltage across capacitor *C1*, and *i1* stands for the current through capacitor *C1*. Once this is done, the equations are easy to derive.

Deriving the Equations
To derive the equations, the first step is to initialize all voltages to zero. Define the tuning voltage in this way corresponds to initializing the problem so that the PLL is considered to be locked before the frequency change is initiated. The next thing that needs to be done is to derive equations to calculate the new change in voltages from the old voltages. These voltages are added to the old voltages in order to compute the new voltages. The new VCO frequency can be calculated from this, and from the VCO frequency, the new phase at the N counter can be calculated. It simplifies things to think of this phase in terms of cycles, not radians. This phase can be calculated by adding the product of the time step times the frequency. From this, the charge pump state can be calculated and then the whole process is repeated for the next time step.

Step 1:   ***Initialize all States***

Define all states and voltages to be zero. Define a time increment, which should be much smaller than the period of the comparison frequency. Define the frequency of the VCO to be the starting frequency.

Step 2:   ***Determine the new charge pump state and current***

Define this as *ICPout*. A charge pump event occurs when the phases of one of the inputs to the phase detector exceeds one and it causes the phase detector to change states

Step 3:   ***Determine the new voltage at the VCO***

For example, in a second order filter the following equations hold:

$$I_{CPout} = i1 + i2 \qquad\qquad (17.1)$$

$$i1 = \frac{1}{C1} \bullet \frac{\Delta VC1}{\Delta t}$$

$$i2 = \frac{1}{C2} \bullet \frac{\Delta VC2}{\Delta t}$$

$$VC2 + i2 \bullet R2 = VC1$$

Now these equations can be combined to solve for *ΔVC1* and *ΔVC2*. Once these are known, the new VCO frequency can be found. The table below shows the values for various orders of active and passive loop filters. These are found using the brute force method. This method may take a lot of computer time, but will give an accurate result, provided that step size *Δt* is sufficiently small.

		Filter Type	
		Passive	**Active**
Filter Order	2nd	$\Delta VC2 = \dfrac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$ $\Delta VC1 = \dfrac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \dfrac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$	

		Filter Type (Passive)	Filter Type (Active)

Filter Order

2nd — Passive (spans both columns):

$$\Delta VC2 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$$

$$\Delta VC1 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \frac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$$

3rd — Passive:

$$\Delta VC3 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC3)}{C3 \bullet R3}$$

$$\Delta VC2 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$$

$$\Delta VC1 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \frac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$$

3rd — Active:

$$\Delta VC3 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet AMP \bullet (VC1 - VC3)}{C3 \bullet R3}$$

$$\Delta VC2 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$$

$$\Delta VC1 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \frac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$$

4th — Passive:

$$\Delta VC4 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC3 - VC4)}{C4 \bullet R4}$$

$$\Delta VC3 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC3)}{C3 \bullet R3} - \frac{C4 \bullet \Delta VC4}{C3}$$

$$\Delta VC2 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$$

$$\Delta VC1 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \frac{C4 \bullet \Delta VC4}{C1} - \frac{C3 \bullet \Delta VC3}{C1} - \frac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$$

4th — Active:

$$\Delta VC4 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC3 - VC4)}{C3 \bullet R3}$$

$$\Delta VC3 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (AMP \bullet VC1 - VC3)}{C3 \bullet R3} - \frac{C4 \bullet \Delta VC4}{C4 \bullet R4}$$

$$\Delta VC2 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet (VC1 - VC2)}{C2 \bullet R2}$$

$$\Delta VC1 = \frac{\Delta t \bullet CPout}{C1} - \frac{C2 \bullet \Delta VC2}{C1}$$

Table 17.1 *Discrete Lock Time Formulae*

Step 4: Calculate the new VCO frequency

The tuning voltage will be the voltage across the highest order capacitor.

Step 5: Calculate the New Phases for the Inputs of the Phase Detector

Recalling that 1 Hz is one cycle per second, calculated the fraction of added cycles by multiplying the frequency times the time step and adding it to the current number of cycles. If this cycle exceeds one, consider a charge pump event. Now return to step 2.

*Comments Regarding Computational Accuracy of the Brute Force Method*

The accuracy of the computations are limited by the size of the time step Δt. This typically requires a time step that is too small to be practical. However, the transient response that happens up to the peak time is the part that is most impacted by the discrete sampling effects of the charge pump. This portion of the transient response is of the most interest when studying discrete sampling effects and is also much less sensitive to the step size. Using solution methods like Runga-Kutta do not really improve the accuracy because the limiting factor is that there should be at least 8 time cycles within the amount of time the charge pump comes on in order to get a good final settling frequency tolerance. One trick to improve this is to make the size of the time step dynamic such that the resolution is finer near the times the charge pump is on. Another good trick is to bail out of the routine once the frequency is close and there are less than 8 time steps in one charge pump event. If one studies the analog simulation, the increase in lock time due to discrete sampling effects will be roughly equal to the increase in the peak time due to discrete sampling effects. Now although this method will converge to the exact solution provided that the time step, Δt, is small, it takes a very large amount of iterations and takes a while, even with modern computers.

Improvements to the Brute Force Method

The improvement to the Brute Force Method that really makes a difference is to actually calculate each of the voltages as an exact function of the the time step Δt, instead of using an approximation that becomes valid in the limit as this time step becomes small.

The first reaction to this is that the mathematics are hideously complicated, and in fact, they are. With a fourth order passive filter, that's four voltages, and each one interacts with the others. And that interaction is the problem. However, there is relief in the fact that it is not necessary to know all of these voltages to know the output voltage, provided that no resistors or components are switched in or out during the PLL is locking. Even if this is the case, the fastlocking mode can be modeled as well as the steady state mode. All of these types of routines produce a glitch when they are disengaged, so it proves little to try to add this in the model.

The key assumption is to transform the loop filter into one that the poles are separated. In the case of a fourth order loop filter, it is possible that the transformed values for **R3** and **R4** are complex. However, the mathematics still holds even in this pathological case. In order to transform this filter, the zero, poles, and loop filter coefficients must first be calculated.
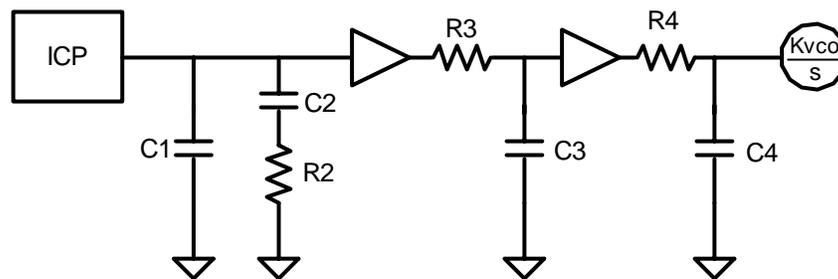
Figure 17.1 *Circuit Used to Simplify Discrete Lock Time Calculations*

The components for this analysis can be calculated from the loop filter time constants as follows:

$$C1 = A0 \bullet \frac{T1}{T2} \qquad (17.2)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad (17.3)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (17.4)$$

$$C3 = 1nF \qquad (17.5)$$

$$R3 = \frac{T3}{C3} \qquad (17.6)$$

$$C4 = 1nF \qquad (17.7)$$

$$R4 = \frac{T4}{C4} \qquad (17.8)$$

After the virtual components are calculated, it is then necessary to understand the impact of injecting a current of magnitude, *ICP*, and duration *Δt* on the various voltage of the capacitors in loop. This can be done by simply taking the inverse Laplace Transform of the transfer function. The resulting formulas are shown on the next page.

From these functions, the voltage can be calculated exactly. The positive transitions on the phase detector due to the rising edges of the R counter are known. For the N counter, one method is to approximate this by the phase error. For numerical methods, use half the phase error for the first iteration, and then keep dividing this phase error by 2, until the tolerance on the time error is acceptable. Although the formulas for the third and fourth order filter look especially brutal, it is actually far less work than tinkering to improve computational accuracy and speed the other way. The only disadvantage of doing it this way is that the formulas are a little more work to use and that these approximations would break down if a component was switched in during fastlock. In the case that a component is switched in, the glitch caused by doing so is usually very difficult to model, and therefore this model could be applied to the time before and the time after the component was switched in. However, there would be no problem if the charge pump current or the comparison frequency was changed.

		Voltage Calculations
Filter Order	VC1	$$\Delta V1_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{CPout \bullet \left(\Delta t + (T2 - T1) \bullet \left(1 - e^{-\Delta t/T1} \right) \right)}{C1 + C2}$$ $$V1_{Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{V1_{Old} \bullet C1 + V2_{Old} \bullet C2}{C1 + C2}$$ $$+ e^{-\Delta t/T1} \bullet \frac{\left(C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet \frac{T2}{T1} - C1 \bullet V1_{Old} - C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \right)}{C1 + C2}$$ $$V1_{New} = \Delta V1_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} + V1_{Initial\ Conditions}$$
	VC2	$$V2_{New} = V2_{Old} + \frac{CPout \bullet \Delta t - C1 \bullet (V1_{New} - V1_{Old})}{C2}$$
	VC3	$$\Delta VC3_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{CPout \bullet A}{C1 + C2} \bullet \left[T2 - T1 - T3 + \Delta t + \frac{(T1 - T2) \bullet T1 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T1} + (T2 - T3) \bullet T3 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T3}}{T1 - T3} \right]$$ $$\Delta VC3_{Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{A}{C1 + C2} \left[C1 \bullet V1_{Old} + C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \right]$$ $$+ \frac{A \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T1}}{C1 + C2} \left[C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T2 - C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \bullet T1 - T1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet C1 \right]$$ $$+ \frac{A \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T3}}{C1 + C2} \left[C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T3 - C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T2 - T3 \bullet V2_{Old} \bullet C2 \right]$$ $$+ VC3_{Old} \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T3}$$ $$V3_{New} = \Delta V3_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} + V3_{Initial\ Conditions}$$
	VC4	$$\Delta VC4_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{CPout \bullet A}{C1 + C2} \bullet \left[T2 - T1 - T3 - T4 + \Delta t + \frac{(T1 - T2) \bullet T1^2 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T1}}{(T1 - T3)(T1 - T4)} + \frac{(T2 - T3) \bullet T3^2 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T3}}{(T1 - T3)(T3 - T4)} - \frac{(T2 - T4) \bullet T4^2 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T41}}{(T1 - T4)(T3 - T4)} \right]$$ $$\Delta VC4_{Initial\ Conditions} = \frac{A}{C1 + C2} \left[C1 \bullet V1_{Old} + C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \right]$$ $$- \frac{A \bullet T1 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T1}}{C1 + C2} \bullet \frac{C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T2 - C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \bullet T1 - C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T1}{(T1 - T3)(T3 - T4)}$$ $$+ \frac{A \bullet T3 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T3}}{C1 + C2} \bullet \frac{C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T2 - C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T3 - C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \bullet T3}{(T1 - T3)(T3 - T4)}$$ $$+ \frac{A \bullet T4 \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T4}}{C1 + C2} \bullet \frac{C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T2 - C1 \bullet V1_{Old} \bullet T4 - C2 \bullet V2_{Old} \bullet T4}{(T1 - T3)(T3 - T4)}$$ $$+ \frac{V3_{Old} \bullet T3}{T3 - T4} \bullet \left(e^{-\Delta t/T3} - e^{-\Delta t/T4} \right)$$ $$+ VC4_{Old} \bullet e^{-\Delta t/T4}$$ $$V4_{New} = \Delta V4_{No\ Initial\ Conditions} + V4_{Initial\ Conditions}$$

Table 17.2 *Simplified Formulae for Discrete Lock Time Calculation*

## Cycle Slipping

Cause of Cycle Slipping

The cause of cycle slipping is that the charge pump goes from a very high duty cycle to a very low duty cycle. The charge pump does not pump in the wrong direction in order to cause a cycle slip. What happens is that a large voltage is developed across the resistor **R2** in the loop filter when the charge pump current is flowing, and when it is removed, there is a corresponding drop in the VCO tuning voltage. Note that the capacitor **C1** and the other loop filter components may reduce this voltage drop. In the example below, a single cycle slip occurs around 17 μs. In this particular case, the cycle slip has only a small impact on the lock time. However, in the above example, there can be far more cycle slips that can greatly degrade the lock time.
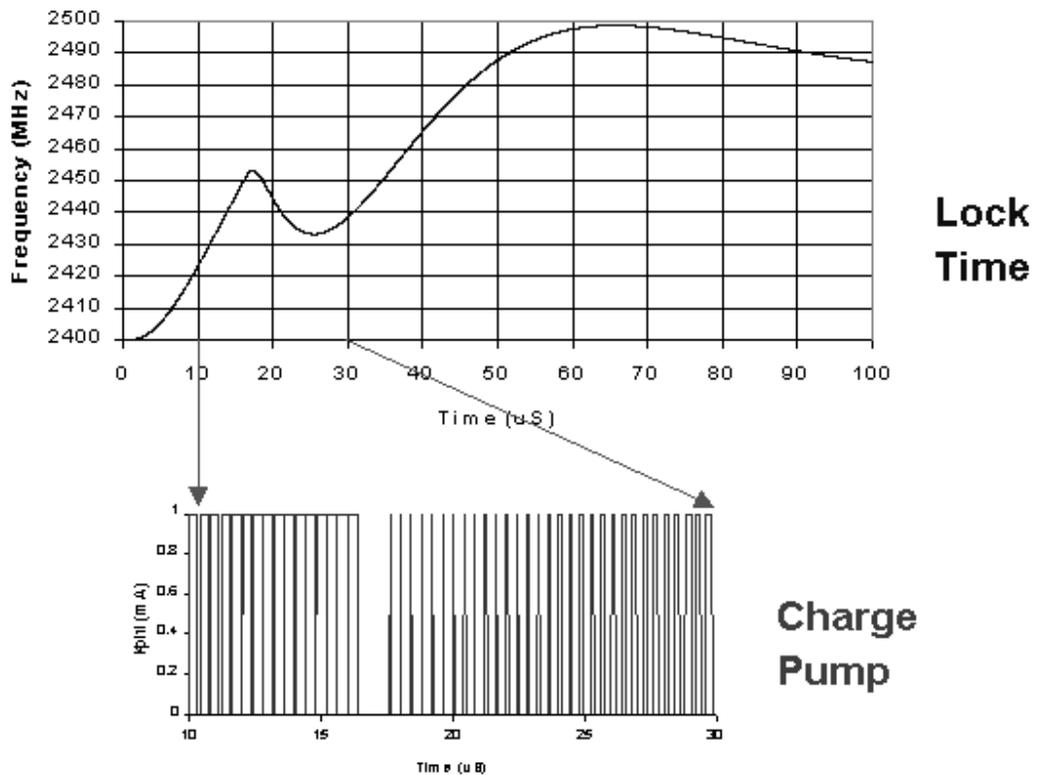
Figure 17.2 *Anatomy of a Cycle Slip*

Calculating if Cycle Slipping is an Issue

Assuming that both the **N** and the **R** counters start off in phase and the loop bandwidth is infinite, the time to the first cycle slip is when one the **N** counter gets an extra cycle.
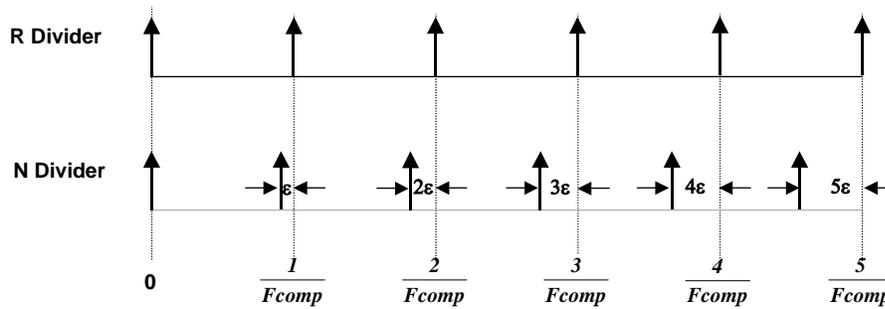
Figure 17.3 *Calculating the time to the First Cycle Slip for an Infinite Loop Bandwidth*

This time to the first cycle slip with a zero Hz loop bandwidth is:

$$t = \frac{1}{Fcomp} \bullet \frac{\left(\dfrac{1}{Fcomp}\right)}{\varepsilon} = \frac{1}{Fcomp^2 \bullet \left|\dfrac{N}{f1} - \dfrac{N}{f2}\right|} = \frac{1}{Fcomp \bullet \left|1 - \dfrac{f1}{f2}\right|}$$

(17.9)

Now if the PLL is in lock, no cycle slipping occurs and *t* is infinite. However, if not, this time should be about the rise time or more in order to avoid cycle slipping. In actuality, the loop bandwidth is not infinite, and assuming that no cycle slipping occurs before the peak time is way to conservative. A more reasonable assumption is to assume that the first cycle slip cannot occur before one-fourth of the peak time. Applying this rule and using the equations for peak time from the previous chapter give the following relationship.

$$\frac{Fcomp}{BW} < \frac{5}{\left|1 - \dfrac{f2}{f1}\right|}$$

(17.10)

For instance, if the frequency changes 5%, then the ratio of the comparison frequency to the loop bandwidth should be no more than 100 if one wants to avoid the effects of cycle slipping. This factor of 100 will be used throughout this book for the sake of simplicity.

Impact of Cycle Slipping on Lock Time

But what is the impact on lock time if this limit is exceeded? In general, this can be approximated by the increase in the peak time times the overdrive factor. The overdrive factor can never be less than one and the factor by which this limit is exceeded.

$$Overdrive\,Factor = max\left\{ \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{\left(\dfrac{Fcomp}{BW} \right)}{\left(\dfrac{5}{\left| 1 - \dfrac{f2}{f1} \right|} \right)}, 1 \right\} \qquad (17.11)$$

$$Peak\,Time(\,Accounting\,for\,Discrete\,Effects\,) = Overdrive\,Factor \times \frac{0.8}{BW} \qquad (17.12)$$

Now the factor of 2/3 comes in the overdrive factor comes in for two reasons. The first is that the overshoot typically is a lot less in cases where cycle slipping is occurring and this decreases the peak time. The second reason is that the severity of the cycle slipping decreases as the PLL gets closer to the target frequency. There is nothing magical about the number 2/3 and this number comes from experience and simulation, as opposed to mathematical derivation.

Figure 17.4 shows the lock time for a PLL system with a 2 kHz loop bandwidth and various comparison frequencies. Note that when the comparison frequency is less than 100 times the loop bandwidth (200 kHz in this case), the analog and discrete lock time model agree. However, when the comparison frequency is much larger than 100 times the loop bandwidth, the rise time is greatly increased, which in turn increases the lock time. It is a reasonably accurate rule of thumb to assume that the amount that the lock time is increased due to cycle slipping is equal to the amount that the rise time is increased by cycle slipping.
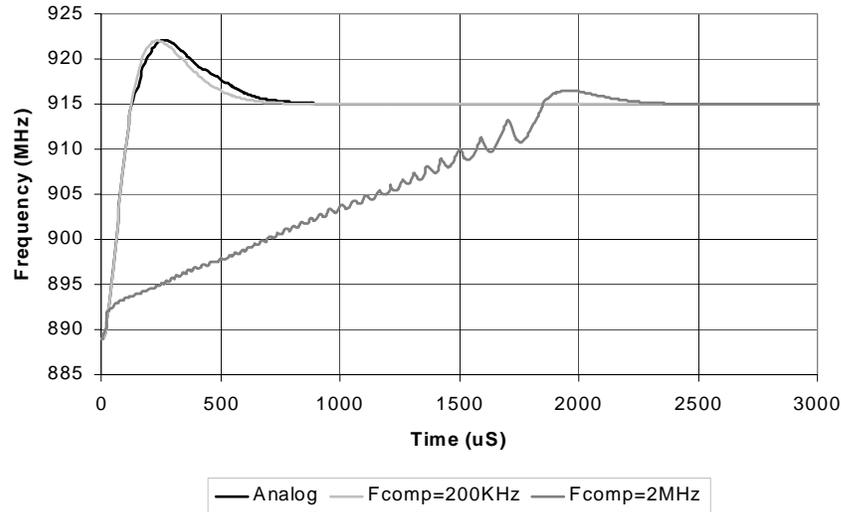
Figure 17.4 *Cycle Slip Example*

Conclusion

The analog model of lock time does a good job provided that the comparison frequency does not exceed about 100 times the loop bandwidth and is not less than 10 times the loop bandwidth. There are many advantages of the analog method including computational speed and accuracy. However, in situations where the comparison frequency exceeds 100 times the loop bandwidth, discrete sampling effects become relevant and the most significant impact is the increase in lock time. In situations where the comparison frequency is too small compared to the loop bandwidth, the impact of the discrete sampling action of the phase detector sometimes increases lock time and sometimes degrades it. If the comparison frequency is not at least five times the loop bandwidth, instability is very likely to happen.

Chapter 18   Routh Stability for PLL Loop Filters

Introduction

There are two ways to make a loop filter unstable. The first is to design for a loop bandwidth that is more than about $1/3^{rd}$ of the comparison frequency. The second is to design a loop filter such that the poles of the closed loop system fall in the right hand plane. This can happen when the phase margin is too low, at least for a third order filter. For the purposes of this chapter, the term Routh stability refers to a system where all the poles of the closed loop transfer function are in the left hand plane. This chapter examines what restrictions Routh's Stability Criterion implies.

Calculation of Stability Coefficients

The open loop transfer function for a loop filter up to 4th order can be expressed as follows:

$$G(s) = \frac{N \bullet K \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2)}{s^2 \bullet (A3 \bullet s^3 + A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0)} \qquad (18.1)$$

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N} \qquad (18.2)$$

The closed loop transfer function is as follows:

$$\frac{G(s)}{1 + G(s)/N} = \frac{N \bullet K \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2)}{A3 \bullet s^5 + A2 \bullet s^4 + A1 \bullet s^3 + A0 \bullet s^2 + T2 \bullet K \bullet s + K} \qquad (18.3)$$

Formation of a Routh Table

The system will be stable if all of the poles of the denominator have negative real parts. Instead of explicitly calculating the roots, it is far easier to use Routh's stability criterion, which says that all the roots have negative real parts if and only if the elements in the Routh array are positive. The elements in the Routh Array are the elements in the second column of the Routh table that is shown below. The Routh table is formed by putting the odd terms in the first row and the even terms in the second row. Note that the term with the highest power is considered to be the first term, and therefore an odd term. The lower rows are formed by taking the determinant of the 2 X 2 matrix formed by eliminating the column that the entry of interest is in, and dividing by the first entry in the row above the entry of interest. Any row can be multiplied by a positive constant without affecting stability. Since all the filter coefficients are positive, this means that the denominator portions of the formulas may be disregarded.

s^n	d_n	d_{n-2}	d_{n-4}	...
s^{n-1}	d_{n-1}	d_{n-3}	d_{n-5}	...
	$b_1 = \dfrac{d_{n-1} \bullet d_{n-2} - d_n \bullet d_{n-3}}{d_{n-1}}$	$b_2 = \dfrac{d_{n-1} \bullet d_{n-4} - d_n \bullet d_{n-5}}{d_{n-1}}$	...	...
	$c_1 = \dfrac{b_1 \bullet d_{n-3} - b_2 \bullet d_{n-1}}{b_1}$	...	...	...

Table 18.1 A Generic Routh Table

Proof of Routh Stability for a Second Order Filter

The second order loop filter is a special case where $A3 = A2 = 0$.

s^3	$A1 = T1 \bullet A0$	$T2 \bullet K$
s^2	$A0$	K
	$K \bullet A0 \bullet (T2 - T1)$	0
	K	0

Table 18.2 Routh Table for Second Order Loop Filter

Now from the definition of **K**, it is clear that **K>0**. From the third row, this puts the restriction that **T2 > T1**. For a second order filter, this is always the case because:

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad (18.4)$$

$$T1 = T2 \bullet \frac{C1}{C1 + C2}$$

(18.5)

Although not shown, in the case that the alternative feedback approach is used with an OP AMP, **T2>T1** is also always true.

Theorem 1:

Using real non-zero component values and the standard loop filter topology, it is impossible to design a second order loop filter which is unstable, provided that the loop bandwidth is sufficiently small to justify the continuous time approximation.

So using the standard topology, it is impossible to design a loop filter that is unstable due to too low phase margin or poles in the right hand plane. This stability makes the second order filter a good choice when the VCO gain, charge pump gain, or **N** value drastically varies.

Conditions for Third Order Routh Stability

For the third order filter, it turns out that the Routh table is not so simple and that it is possible to design an unstable loop filter, regardless of loop bandwidth. Since the loop bandwidth decreases as the charge pump gain or VCO gain decreases, reducing these will eventually guarantee second order filter stability, and will always make a third order filter stable provided $T2 > T1 + T3$. For the purposes of simplifying the math in the Routh table, the following constant is introduced.

s^4	A2	A0	K
s^3	A1	K•T2	0
	A1•A0 - K•A2•T2 = x	K•A1	0
	K•(T2•x - A1²)	0	0
	K²•A1•(T2•x - A1²)	0	0

Table 18.3 *Third Order Routh Stability Table*

The closed loop system will be stable provided that

$$T2 \bullet x - A1^2 > 0 \qquad\qquad (18.6)$$

If this is expressed in terms of filter coefficients, then the following rule can be derived:

$$T2 - T1 - T3 > \frac{K \bullet T2^2 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}{A0 \bullet (T1 + T3)} \qquad (18.7)$$

This criteria implies that $T2 > T1 + T3$ and there is some maximum upper bound for **K**. Since **K** includes the charge pump gain, VCO gain, and **N** divider, and $T2 > T1 + T3$ is a constraint applied in all loop passive loop filter designs, this implies that a passive third order loop filter can be made stable by sufficiently increasing N, sufficiently decreasing the VCO gain, or sufficiently decreasing the charge pump gain.

Conditions for Fourth Order Routh Stability

For the fourth order filter, there is some added complexity, but the general rule remains the same. There is a restriction on high the loop gain, **K**, can be, and also there is a restriction that **T2 > T1 + T3 + T4**. Table 18.4 shows the coefficients for a fourth order loop filter.

s^5	A3	A1	K•T2
s^4	A2	A0	K
s^3	A2•A1 - A0•A3 = x	K•(A2•T2 – A3)= y	0
	A0•x - A2•y	K•x	0
	y•(A0•x - A2•y) - K•x²	0	0
	K•[y•(A0•x - A2•y) - K•x²]	0	0

Table 18.4 *Fourth Order Routh Stability Table*

This imposes three constraints:

$$A2 \bullet A1 - A0 \bullet A3 > 0 \qquad\qquad (18.8)$$

$$A0 \bullet x - A2 \bullet y > 0 \qquad\qquad (18.9)$$

$$y \bullet z - K \bullet x^2 > 0 \qquad\qquad (18.10)$$

If one substitutes in the time constants in place of the filter coefficients, we find that the first constraint is always satisfied. The second constraint implies:

$$\frac{T2}{\frac{1}{T1}+\frac{1}{T3}+\frac{1}{T4}} > 1 \qquad\qquad (18.11)$$

The third constraint implies that:

$$y \bullet A0 - A2 \bullet y^2 - K \bullet x^2 > 0 \qquad\qquad (18.12)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{K \bullet (A2 \bullet T2 - A3)}{x} < A2 \bullet (T2 \bullet A0 - A1)$$

Substituting in the values for the poles and recalling that **x>0** reduces this constraint to the following:

$$T2 > T1 + T3 + T4 \qquad\qquad (18.13)$$

As in the case of a third order filter, this also implies that there is some restriction on the loop gain constant as well. Note that although it is possible for a fourth order loop filter to have complex poles, the sum of these poles will always be real.

Conclusion

The conditions for stability of loop filters have been investigated. There is always the condition that the loop bandwidth be sufficiently narrow relative to the comparison frequency, but there is also the constraint that all the poles of the closed loop transfer function have negative real parts. For the second order filter, this was shown to always be the case, but for the third and fourth order loop filters, there were real restrictions.

From a stability standpoint, the second order filter is the most robust to changes in the VCO gain. In fact, it is mathematically impossible to design an unstable second order loop filter provided that the loop bandwidth is not too wide relative to the comparison frequency.

This chapter was actually inspired by the quest to find a filter that attenuated the spurs more. Notice that *T2* must be larger than *T1* or *T3* for the PLL to be stable. Theoretically, if *T3* or *T1* is chosen larger than *T2*, then the spurs could be reduced significantly. This chapter on Routh Stability proves why this type of loop filter will never be stable. The zero *T2* is necessary for stability because of the *1/s* factor introduced by the VCO.

References

Franklin, G., et. al.   *Feedback Control of Dynamic Systems*   Addison Wesley

Chapter 19   A Sample PLL Analysis

Introduction

This chapter is an example of a PLL analysis that applies many of the formulas and concepts that were derived in previous chapters.

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
$K\phi$	Charge Pump Gain	5	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	30	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	900	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	200	kHz
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	5.600	nF
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	100.00	nF
C3	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.330	nF
C4*	Loop Filter Capacitor *(Not Accounting For VCO input Capacitance)	0.082	nF
VCOcap	VCO Input Capacitance	0.022	nF
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	1.0	kΩ
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	6.8	kΩ
R4	Loop Filter Resistor	33.0	kΩ

Calculate Basic Parameters

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \tag{19.1}$$

$$C4 = C4* + VCOcap \tag{19.2}$$

$$A0 = C1 + C2 + C3 + C4 \tag{19.3}$$

$$A1 = C2 \bullet R2 \bullet (C1 + C3 + C4) + R3 \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet (C3 + C4) + C4 \bullet R4 \bullet (C1 + C2 + C3) \tag{19.4}$$

$$A2 = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet R3 \bullet (C3 + C4)$$
$$+ C4 \bullet R4 \bullet (C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2) \tag{19.5}$$

$$A3 = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R2 \bullet R3 \bullet R4 \tag{19.6}$$

Define

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet \left(A3 \bullet s^3 + A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0\right)}$$ (19.7)

$$G(s) = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet Z(s)}{s}$$

Fc, the loop bandwidth can be found by numerically solving the following equation.

$$\left|G\left(Fc \bullet 2\pi \bullet i\right)\right| = N$$ (19.8)

Once **Fc** is known, the phase margin and gamma optimization parameter can also be calculated.

$$\phi = \angle G\left(Fc \bullet 2\pi \bullet i\right) + 180°$$ (19.9)

$$\gamma = \frac{\left(Fc \bullet 2\pi\right)^2 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet A1}{A0}$$ (19.10)

Here are the results so far.

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
N	N Counter Value	4500	none
$C4$	Loop Filter Capacitor accounting for VCO input Capacitance	0.104	nF
$A0$	Total Capacitance	106.0340	nF
$A1$	First order loop filter coefficient	1.2786×10^{-3}	nFs
$A2$	Second Order loop filter coefficient	4.5011×10^{-9}	nFs^2
$A3$	Third Order loop filter coefficient	4.3128×10^{-15}	nFs^3
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	5.0857	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	50.7527	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.2313	none

Now Find the Poles and Zero

Solving for **T1** is the hard part. First a cubic polynomial must be solved, and the results need to be manipulated in order to obtain **T1**. Once **T1** is known, the other poles are easy to find. The following cubic polynomial needs to be solved for **x**, and then **y** can be calculated.

$$x^3 - 2 \bullet \frac{A1}{A0} \bullet x^2 + \left(\frac{A1^2}{A0^2} + \frac{A2}{A0}\right) \bullet x + \left(\frac{A3}{A0} - \frac{A1 \bullet A2}{A0^2}\right) = 0$$ (19.11)

$$y = x^2 - \frac{A1}{A0} \bullet x + \frac{A2}{A0} \qquad (19.12)$$

$$T3, T4 = \frac{x \pm \sqrt{x^2 - 4 \bullet y}}{2} \qquad (19.13)$$

$$T1 = \frac{A3}{A0 \bullet y} \qquad (19.14)$$

Now that the poles are known, reorder them such that:

$$T1 \geq T3 \geq T4 \qquad (19.15)$$

Calculate the Zero

$$T2 = C2 \bullet R2 \qquad (19.16)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
x	Intermediate Calculation	1.0498×10^{-5}	s
y	Intermediate Calculation	2.6072×10^{-11}	s^2
$T1$	Loop Filter Pole	6.4665×10^{-6}	s
$T2$	Loop Filter Zero	1.0000×10^{-4}	s
$T3$	Loop Filter Pole	4.0318×10^{-6}	s
$T4$	Loop Filter Pole	1.5601×10^{-6}	s
$\dfrac{T3}{T1}$	Pole Ratio	62.3481	%
$\dfrac{T4}{T3}$	Pole Ratio	38.6947	%
$\dfrac{1}{2\pi \bullet \|T1\|}$	Frequency of Loop Filter Pole	24.6121	kHz
$\dfrac{1}{2\pi \bullet T2}$	Frequency of Loop Filter Zero	1.5915	kHz
$\dfrac{1}{2\pi \bullet \|T3\|}$	Frequency of Loop Filter Pole	39.4753	kHz
$\dfrac{1}{2\pi \bullet \|T4\|}$	Frequency of Loop Filter Pole	102.0173	kHz

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition
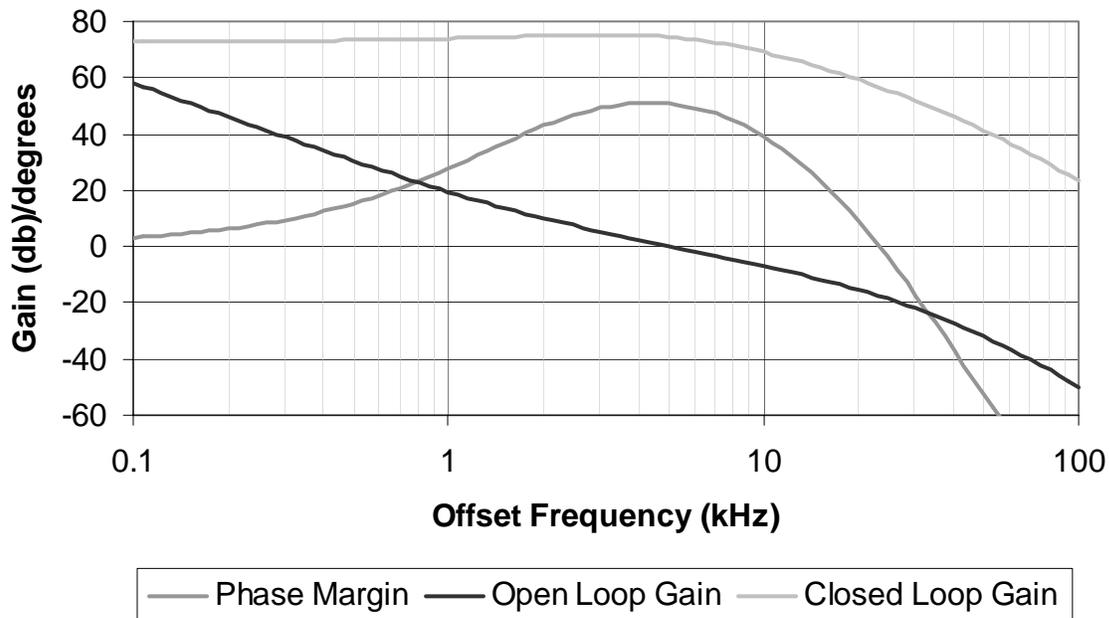
Reference Spur Simulation

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
BaseLeakageSpur	Constant for All Leakage Based Spurs	16.0	dBc
BasePulseSpur	Base Pulse Spur for the LMX2331U	-311	dBc
LeakageCurrent	Charge Pump Leakage Current	1	nA

Calculate the spur levels. Recall that *G(s)* has already been defined earlier.

$$SpurGain = 20 \bullet log\left|G(Fcomp \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)\right| \qquad (19.17)$$

$$LeakageSpur = BaseLeakageSpur + 20 \bullet log\left|\frac{LeakageCurrent}{K\phi}\right| + SpurGain \qquad (19.18)$$

$$PulseSpur = BasePulseSpur + SpurGain + 40 \bullet log\left|\frac{Fcomp}{1\,Hz}\right| \qquad (19.19)$$

$$TotalSpur = 10 \bullet log\left|10^{\frac{LeakageSpur}{10}} + 10^{\frac{PulseSpur}{10}}\right| \qquad (19.20)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
SpurGain	Spur Gain for this spur at 200 kHz offset	1.7663	dB
LeakageSpur	Estimated spur level based only on leakage	-116.3249	dBc
PulseSpur	Estimated spur level based only on charge pump pulse	-97.3043	dBc
TotalSpur	Combination of the above two spurs	-97.2052	dBc

Phase Noise Simulation

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
KϕKnee	Phase noise knee current	1000	uA
PN1Hz*	1 Hz Normalized Phase Noise for infinite Kϕ	-214.8	dBc/Hz
PN1Hz	Calculated 1 Hz Normalized Phase Noise for this Kϕ	-214.0	dBc/Hz
PN10kHz	1 GHz Normalized 1/f Noise @ 10 kHz offset	-94.6	dBc/Hz
Plateau	Plateau frequency for 1/f noise	1.00	kHz
VCO10kHz	VCO phase noise @ 10 kHz offset	-105	kHz
TCXO10khz	TCXO frequency @ 10 kHz offset	-160	dBc/Hz
TCXO	Crystal Frequency	10	MHz

PLL Noise

Flat Noise

$$PN1Hz = PN1Hz* + 10 \bullet log \left| 1 + \frac{K\phi Knee}{K\phi} \right| \qquad (19.21)$$

$$PN\_Flat(f) = PN1Hz + 10 \bullet log \left| \frac{Fcomp}{1Hz} \right| \qquad (19.22)$$

1/f Noise

$$PN\_Slope(f) = PN10kHz + 20 \bullet log \left| \frac{Fout}{1GHz} \right| - 10 \bullet log \left| \frac{max\{f, Plateau\}}{10kHz} \right| - 20 \bullet log |N| \qquad (19.23)$$

Total PLL Noise

$$Noise\_PLL(f) = 10 \bullet log \left| 10^{PN\_Flat(f)/10} + 10^{PN\_Slope(f)/10} \right| + 20 \bullet log \left| \frac{G(f \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)}{1 + \frac{G(f \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)}{N}} \right| \qquad (19.24)$$

VCO Noise

$$VCO\_Noise(f) = VCO10kHz - 20 \bullet log \left| \frac{f}{10kHz} \right| - 20 \bullet log \left| 1 + \frac{G(f \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)}{N} \right| \qquad (19.25)$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

TCXO Noise

$$TCXO\_Noise(f) = TCXO10kHz - 20 \bullet log\left|\frac{f}{10kHz}\right| - 20 \bullet log\left|\frac{TCXO}{Fcomp}\right| \qquad (19.26)$$

$$+ 20 \bullet log\left|\frac{G(f \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)}{1 + \frac{G(f \bullet 2\pi \bullet i)}{N}}\right|$$

Resistor Noises

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
k	Boltzman's Constant	1.3807	J/K
T	Ambient Temperature	300	K
VnR2	Noise Voltage Generated by Resistor R2	4.0704	$nV\!\!\big/\!\sqrt{Hz}$
VnR3	Noise Voltage Generated by Resistor R3	10.0614	$nV\!\!\big/\!\sqrt{Hz}$
VnR4	Noise Voltage Generated by Resistor R4	23.3382	$nV\!\!\big/\!\sqrt{Hz}$

Calculate Thermal Noise Before Transfer Functions are Applied

$$R\_Noise(R) = \sqrt{4 \bullet T \bullet k \bullet R} \qquad (19.27)$$

$$VnR2 = R\_Noise(R2) \qquad (19.28)$$
$$VnR3 = R\_Noise(R3)$$
$$VnR4 = R\_Noise(R4)$$

Find Resistor Noise for R2

$$Z1\_R2(s) = \frac{1}{s \bullet C2} + R2 \qquad (19.29)$$

$$Z2\_R2(s) = R3 + \frac{1 + s \bullet C4 \bullet R4}{s \bullet (C3 + C4) + s^2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R4} \qquad (19.30)$$

$$Z\_R2(s) = \frac{Z2\_R2(s)}{1 + s \bullet C1 \bullet Z2\_R2(s)} \qquad (19.31)$$

$$Z3\_R2(s) = \frac{1}{1 + s \bullet (C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4 + C4 \bullet R3) + s^2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4} \qquad (19.32)$$

$$T\_R2(s) = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{G(s)}{N}} \bullet \frac{Z\_R2(s)}{Z1\_R2(s) + Z\_R2(s)} \bullet Z3\_R2(s) \qquad (19.33)$$

$$R2\_Noise(f) = 20 \bullet log \left| \frac{\sqrt{2} \bullet VnR2 \bullet T\_R2(2\pi \bullet f \bullet i) \bullet Kvco}{2 \bullet f} \right| \qquad (19.34)$$

*Find Resistor Noise for **R3***

$$Z1\_R3(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (C1 + C2) + s^2 \bullet C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2} + R3 \qquad (19.35)$$

$$Z2\_R3(s) = R3 + \frac{1 + s \bullet C4 \bullet R4}{s \bullet (C3 + C4) + s^2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R4} \qquad (19.36)$$

$$T\_R3(s) = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{G(s)}{N}} \bullet \frac{Z3\_R3(s)}{Z1\_R3(s) + Z3\_R3(s)} \bullet \frac{1}{1 + s \bullet C4 \bullet R4} \qquad (19.37)$$

$$R3\_Noise(f) = 20 \bullet log \left| \frac{\sqrt{2} \bullet Vn\_R3 \bullet T\_R3(2\pi \bullet f \bullet i) \bullet Kvco}{2 \bullet f} \right| \qquad (19.38)$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Find Resistor Noise for **R4**

$$Z1\_R4(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (C1 + C2) + s^2 \bullet C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2} + R3 \qquad (19.39)$$

$$Z2\_R4(s) = R4 + \frac{R3 + Z1\_R4(s)}{1 + s \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + s \bullet C3 \bullet Z1\_R4(s)} \qquad (19.40)$$

$$T\_R4(s) = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{G(s)}{N}} \bullet \frac{1}{1 + s \bullet C4 \bullet Z2\_R4(s)} \qquad (19.41)$$

$$R4\_Noise(f) = 20 \bullet log\left| \frac{\sqrt{2} \bullet Vn\_R4 \bullet T\_R4(2\pi \bullet f \bullet i) \bullet Kvco}{2 \bullet f} \right| \qquad (19.42)$$

Calculate Total Noise

$$Total\_Noise(f) = 10 \bullet log\left| \begin{matrix} 10^{PLL\_Noise(f)/10} + 10^{VCO\_Noise(f)/10} + 10^{TCXO\_Noise(f)/10} \\ + 10^{R2\_Noise(f)/10} + 10^{R3\_Noise(f)/10} + 10^{R4\_Noise(f)/10} \end{matrix} \right| \qquad (19.43)$$

Calculate RMS Phase Error, Error Vector Magnitude, and Jitter

Note that the integration limits for this example are 1.7 kHz to 200 kHz. The choice of these limits is very specific to the application, and these limits should not be assumed for other applications.

$$RMS\_Phase\_Error = \frac{180}{\pi} \bullet \sqrt{2 \bullet \int_{1.7\,kHz}^{200\,kHz} 10^{Total\_Noise(f)/10} df} \qquad (19.44)$$

$$EVM = \frac{\pi}{180} \bullet RMS\_Phase\_Error \qquad (19.45)$$

$$Jitter = \frac{1}{Fout} \bullet \frac{RMS\_Phase\_Error}{360^o} \qquad (19.46)$$

Calculate RMS Frequency Error

$$RMS\_Frequency\_Error = \sqrt{2 \bullet \int_{1.7\,kHz}^{200\,kHz} 10^{Total\_Noise(f)/10} \bullet f^2 \, df} \qquad (19.47)$$
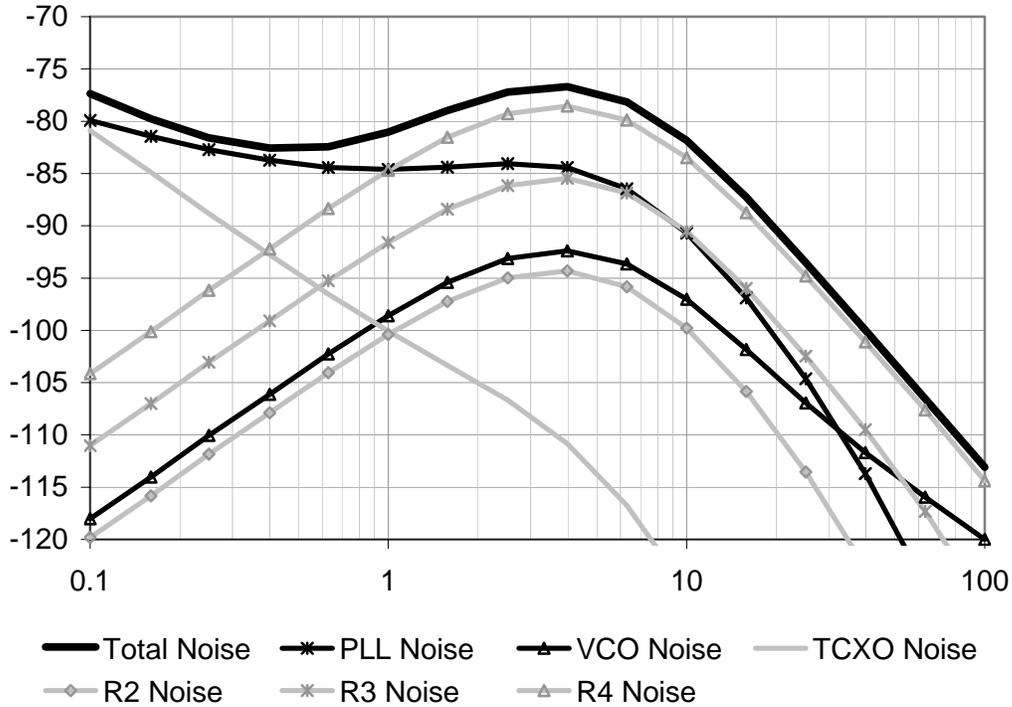
Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Total_Noise(1 kHz)	Phase Noise at 1 kHz offset	-80.15	dBc/Hz
Total_Noise(10 kHz)	Phase Noise at 10 kHz offset	-81.98	dBc/Hz
Total_Noise(100 kHz)	Phase Noise at 100 kHz offset	-113.75	dBc/Hz
RMS_Phase_Error	Root Mean Square Phase Error	1.0191	deg
EVM	Error Vector Magnitude	1.7787	%
Jitter	Jitter	3.1453	ps
RMS_Frequency_Error	Root Mean Square Frequency Error	202.1157	Hz

Lock Time Analysis

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
f2	Final Frequency	915	MHz
f1	Starting Frequency	889	MHz
tol	Settling tolerance within which PLL is considered locked	1000	Hz

The first step is to define the following constants. Note that the frequency used to calculate the *N* value is the final frequency.

$$N = \frac{f2}{Fcomp} \tag{19.48}$$

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N} \tag{19.49}$$

The next step is to find the poles of the closed loop transfer function. In this case, it would involve solving a fifth order polynomial. Because a closed form solution for this does not exist, the polynomial will be approximated with a fourth order polynomial.

$$A2 \bullet p^4 + A1 \bullet p^3 + A0 \bullet p^2 + K \bullet T2 \bullet p + K = 0 \tag{19.50}$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
N	N Value for final settling frequency	4575	MHz
$K \bullet T2$	Constant	3.2787×10^{-3}	$\frac{1}{\Omega}$
K	Constant	32.7869	$\frac{1}{s\Omega}$
p_0	Closed Loop Transfer Function Pole	-1.6825×10^5	Hz
p_1	Closed Loop Transfer Function Pole	-5.9884×10^4	Hz
p_2	Closed Loop Transfer Function Pole	-3.5642×10^4	Hz
p_3	Closed Loop Transfer Function Pole	-2.0284×10^4	Hz

Calculate the Closed Loop Transfer Function Constants

$$B_0 = \frac{K \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A2} \bullet \frac{1}{(p_0 - p_1) \bullet (p_0 - p_2) \bullet (p_0 - p_3)} \tag{19.51}$$

$$B_1 = \frac{K \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A2} \bullet \frac{1}{(p_1 - p_0) \bullet (p_1 - p_2) \bullet (p_1 - p_3)} \tag{19.52}$$

$$B_2 = \frac{K \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A2} \bullet \frac{1}{(p_2 - p_0) \bullet (p_2 - p_1) \bullet (p_2 - p_3)}$$

(19.53)

$$B_3 = \frac{K \bullet (f2 - f1)}{A2} \bullet \frac{1}{(p_3 - p_0) \bullet (p_3 - p_1) \bullet (p_3 - p_2)}$$

(19.54)

Calculate the Transient Response and Exponential Envelope

$$F(t) = f2 + \sum_{i=0}^{3} \left[B_i \bullet \left(\frac{1}{p_i} + C2 \bullet R2 \right) \right]$$

(19.55)

$$E(t) = \left| B_i \bullet \left(\frac{1}{p_i} + C2 \bullet R2 \right) \right|$$

(19.56)

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
B_0	Transient Function Constant	-8.9062 x 10^{10}	$\dfrac{1}{s^2}$
B_1	Transient Function Constant	1.8205 x 10^{12}	$\dfrac{1}{s^2}$
B_2	Transient Function Constant	-3.8359 x 10^{12}	$\dfrac{1}{s^2}$
B_3	Transient Function Constant	2.1045 x 10^{12}	$\dfrac{1}{s^2}$
Peak Time	Peak Time (extrapolated from curve)	92	μs
Lock Time	Lock Time (extrapolated from exponential envelope)	570	μs
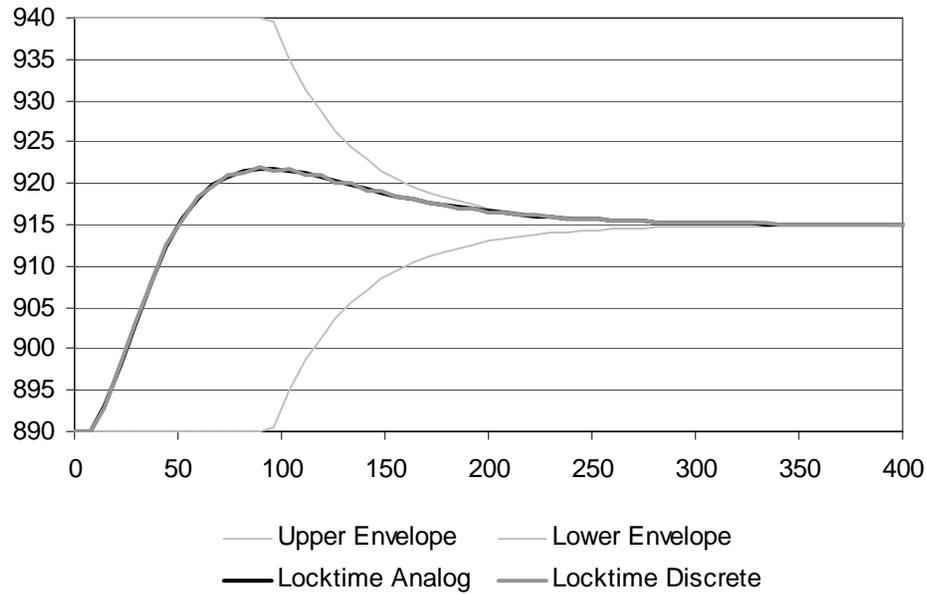
Note that although only the analog model lock time calculations are shown, the graph above also shows the curve for the discrete lock time as well.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

PLL Design
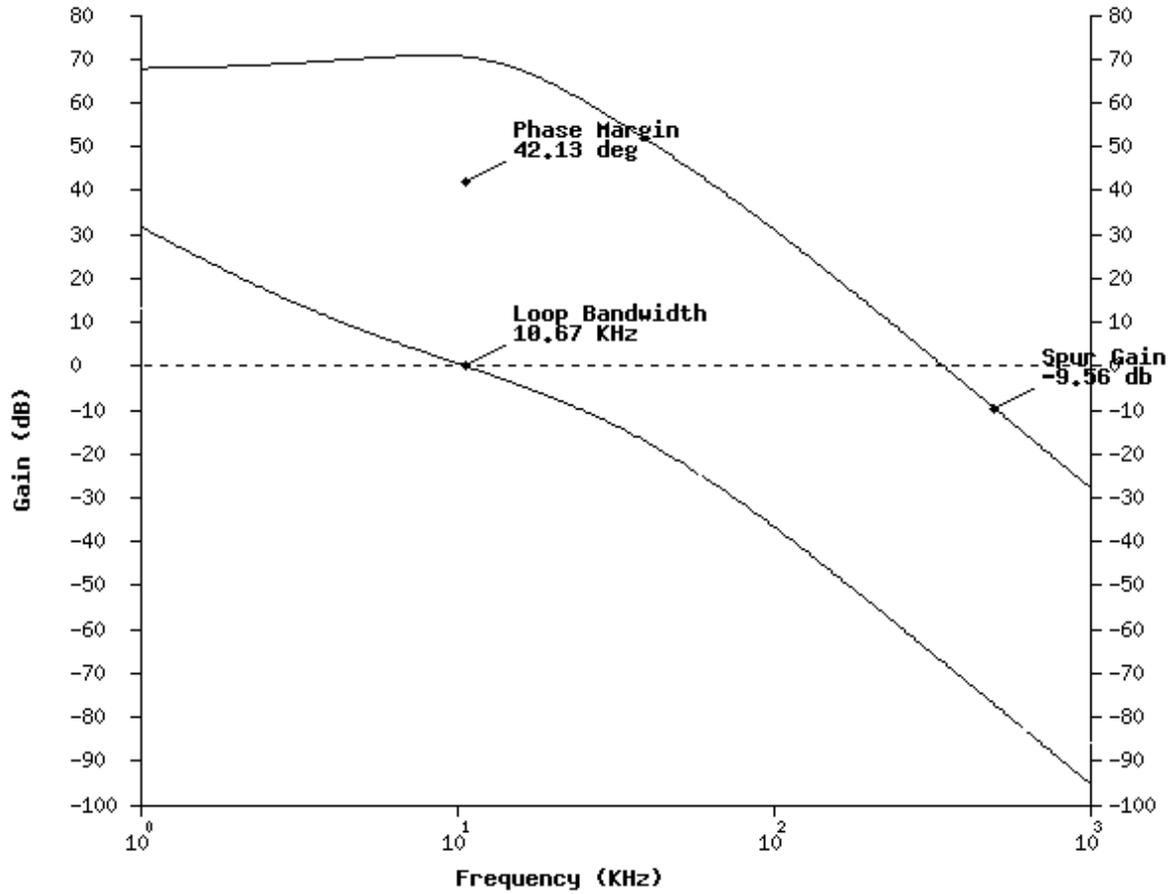
Chapter 20   Fundamentals of PLL Passive Loop Filter Design

Introduction

This chapter discusses the many technical issues that come with loop filter design. Loop filter design involves choosing the proper loop filter topology, loop filter order, phase margin, loop bandwidth, and pole ratios. Once these are chosen, the poles and zero of the filter can be determined. From these, the loop filter components can then be calculated. This chapter discusses the fundamental principles that are necessary for an understanding of loop filter design.

Determining N and Adjusting for Variations in VCO Gain

The loop filter is designed for a VCO gain, charge pump gain, and N value. However, it is really the loop gain, K, which is important. Recall that the loop gain is given by the equation:

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N} \qquad (20.1)$$

Provided that the loop gain is kept relatively constant, then it is not critical from a loop filter design perspective if the VCO gain, charge pump gain, or N counter value vary. So if the N counter varies by a factor of two and the charge pump current is programmable, then this could be used to counteract this effect. After one makes all reasonable efforts to make this loop gain constant, then one considers the minimum and maximum this value could be. In order to minimize how much the loop bandwidth can vary from the intended design value, design for the loop gain to be the geometric mean of its minimum and maximum values.

$$K_{design} = \sqrt{K_{min} \bullet K_{max}} \qquad (20.2)$$

Since the loop gain is not directly specified, one of the parameters, like charge pump current can be adjusted for this. If the VCO gain and charge pump current are relatively constant, then choose the N counter value to be the geometric mean of the minimum and maximum values

$$N_{design} = \sqrt{N_{min} \bullet N_{max}} \qquad (20.3)$$

If the loop gain varies more than a factor of two, then add more consideration to lower order loop filters, because they are more resistant to changes in the loop gain. If the loop gain varies by more than two, a second order filter can handle this, but higher order problems could start having issues.

Determining the Loop Filter Topology and Order
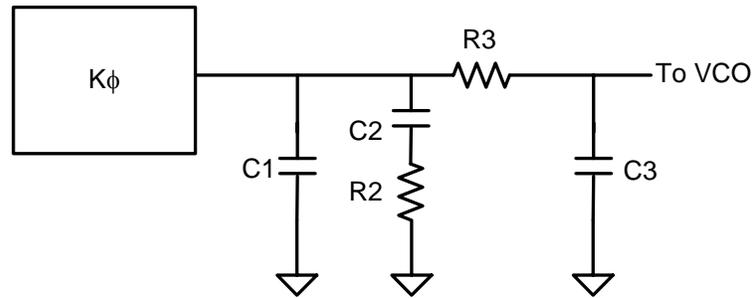
Figure 20.1 *A Third Order Passive Loop Filter*

The order of a loop filter is determined by the number of poles. The confusing point is that there is a pole at zero. Many people count this pole, but this book does not count the pole at zero when defining the order of the loop filter. A third order passive loop filter is show above. Passive loop filters are usually recommended above active loop filters, because adding active devices adds phase noise, complexity, and cost. However, there are cases where an active filter is necessary. The most common case arises when the maximum PLL charge pump voltage is lower than the VCO tuning voltage requirements. If higher tuning voltages are supplied to a VCO, then either the tuning range can be expanded or the phase noise reduced. In terms of filter order, the most basic is the second order filter. Additional RC low pass filtering stages can be added to reduce the reference spurs. The impact of adding these additional stages is discussed in other chapters. In Figure 20.1 , *R3* and *C3* form an additional low pass filtering stage.

Choosing the Phase Margin, Loop Bandwidth, and Pole Ratios

The phase margin (ϕ) relates to the stability of a system. This parameter is typically chosen between 40 and 55 degrees. Simulations show that a phase margin of about 48 degrees yields the optimal lock time. Higher phase margins may decrease peaking response of the loop filter at the expense of degrading the lock time. For minimum RMS phase error designs, 50 degrees is a good starting point for phase margin.

The loop bandwidth (*Fc*) is the most critical parameter of the loop filter. Choosing the loop bandwidth too small will yield a design with improved reference spurs and RMS phase error, but all at the expense of increased lock time. Choosing the loop bandwidth too wide will result in improved lock time at the expense of increased reference spurs and RMS phase error. The suggested method of choosing the loop bandwidth is to choose it so that it is sufficient to meet the lock time requirement with sufficient margin. In cases where there is no lock time requirement, then it makes sense to choose the loop bandwidth at the frequency where the PLL noise equals the VCO noise for an optimal RMS phase error design. For a minimum reference spur design, the narrower the loop bandwidth, the lower the spurs. However, at some point the loop filter component values will be come unrealistically large.

The pole ratios (*T31*, *T41*, ..) have less impact on the design than the loop bandwidth, but still are important. They tell the ratio of each pole, relative to the pole *T1*, for instance:

$$T1 \quad = \quad T11 \bullet T1 \qquad\qquad\qquad (20.4)$$
$$T3 \quad = \quad T31 \bullet T1$$
$$T4 \quad = \quad T41 \bullet T1$$

(Note $T11$ is trivial and always equal to 1)

It will be shown in a later chapter that choosing all pole ratios to be one is theoretically the lowest spur solution, although physically impossible for passive filters. The VCO input capacitance also can put practical limits on how close to this limit the loop filer can be designed for. Typically, the VCO input capacitance is on the order of 10 to 100 pF and it is desirable to have the capacitor in the loop filter next to the VCO to be at least three times the input capacitance of the VCO. The reason for this is that the input capacitance of the VCO sometimes can change with the frequency and is typically not specified with limits.

The Loop Filter Impedance and Open Loop Gain

The loop filter impedance is defined as the output voltage at the VCO divided by current injected at the PLL charge pump. The expression for the loop filter impedance and the corresponding poles and zeros are shown below for various filter orders.

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{A0 \bullet s \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} \qquad (20.5)$$

Parameter	Second Order Filter	Third Order Filter	Fourth Order Filter
T1	$\dfrac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{A0}$	$\dfrac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{A0}$ *	$\dfrac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{A0}$ *
T2	R2•C2	R2•C2	R2•C2
T3	0	R3•C3*	R3•C3*
T4	0	0	R4•C4*
A0	C1 + C2	C1 + C2 + C3	C1+C2 + C3 + C4

* This indicates this formula is approximate, not exact

***Table 20.1** Impedance Parameters for Various Filter Orders*

Once the impedance ($Z(s)$), charge pump gain ($K\phi$), and VCO Gain ($Kvco$) are known, then the open loop gain ($G(s)$) is given below:

$$G(s) = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{s} \bullet Z(s) \qquad\qquad (20.6)$$

Determining the Time Constants

This method of determining the poles and zeros is taken from Application Note 1001 by National Semiconductor. The phase margin is specified as 180 degrees plus the phase of the forward loop gain, where the forward loop gain is specified as the open loop gain divided by the *N* divider value. Therefore, it is true that:

$$\phi = 180 + arctan(\omega c \bullet T2) - arctan(\omega c \bullet T1) - arctan(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) - arctan(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T41) \qquad (20.7)$$

Since ϕ and the pole ratios are known, then this can be simplified to an expression involving *T1* and *T2*. A second expression involving *T1* and *T2* can be found by setting the derivative of the phase margin equal to zero at the frequency equal to the loop bandwidth. This maximizes the phase margin at this frequency. Simulations show that satisfying this condition minimizes the lock time of the PLL for second order filter. This method was taken from National Semiconductor's Application Note 1001.

$$\left. \frac{d\phi}{d\omega} \right|_{\omega = \omega c} = 0 = \frac{T2}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2} - \frac{T1}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2} - \frac{T1 \bullet T31}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2 \bullet T31^2} - \frac{T1 \bullet T41}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2 \bullet T41^2} \qquad (20.8)$$

Equations (20.7) and (20.8) present a system of two equations with the two unknowns, *T1* and *T2*. The solution to these equations is presented in chapters to come. This system can always be solved numerically and in the case of a second order filter (*T3 = T4 = 0*), an elegant closed form solution exists.

Simulations show that using equation (20.8) as a constraint gives a close approximation to the loop filter with the fastest lock time, but this is not exactly correct. Using some approximations, equation (20.8) can be simplified to

$$T2 = \frac{1}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3 + T4)} \qquad (20.9)$$

Since this is an approximation to a rule of thumb that is only an approximation to the exact criteria for optimal performance, it makes sense to generalize this equation as:

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1 \bullet (1 + T31 + T43 \bullet T31)} \qquad (20.10)$$

In the above equation, γ is defined as the Gamma Optimization Factor. Now 1.0 is a good starting value for this parameter, but this parameter is discussed in depth in other chapters.

Calculating the Components from the Time Constants

Calculating the Loop Filter Coefficient A0

This is the step that is expanded in much greater detail in other chapters. However, one common concept that arises, regardless of the filter order, is the total capacitance. This is the sum of all the capacitance values in the loop filter. If one considers a delta current spike, then it should be intuitive that in the long term, the voltages across all the capacitors should be the same and that its voltage would be the same as if all four capacitors values were added together. The final value theorem says this result can be found by taking the limit of $s \bullet Z(s)$ as s approaches zero. This result is $A0$, the total loop filter capacitance. $A0$ can be found by setting the forward loop gain ($G(s)$ divided by N) equal to one at the loop bandwidth.

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2\right)}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4^2\right)}} \qquad (20.11)$$

Concerns with the VCO Input Capacitance

The VCO will have an input capacitance, typically on the order of 10 – 100 pF, which will add to the capacitances of the loop filter. This often becomes an issue with third and higher order loop filter designs, because the capacitor shunt with the VCO should be at least three times the VCO input capacitance to keep it from distorting the performance of the loop filter. In order to maximize this capacitance, design for the highest charge pump setting.

Concerns with Resistor Thermal Noise

The resistors in the loop filter, particularly the ones in the low pass RC filters ($R3$, $R4$, ..) generate thermal noise, which can increase the phase noise at and outside of the loop bandwidth. This starts to become a factor when these resistances are bigger than about 10 KΩ, although this is design specific. Designing for a higher charge pump current and lower pole ratios minimizes the loop filter resistors and thermal noise.

Conclusion

The equations to explicitly solve for the component values are presented in upcoming chapters, but they are all derived from these fundamental concepts and formulas presented in this chapter. The second order filter is a special case where $T3 = T4 = 0$. The third order filter is the case where $T3>0$ and $T4 = 0$. These formulas could be easily generalized for filters of higher than fourth order, but this is more of an academic exercise than something of practical value. Note that some textbooks show a similar filter topology as presented in this chapter, except that $C1 = 0$. Although this is a stable loop filter design, this topology is not recommended, because the reference spur attenuation is not as good.

References

Keese, William O.   *An Analysis and Performance Evaluation of a Passive Filter Design Technique for Charge Pump Phase-Locked Loops* Application Note 1001. National Semiconductor

Chapter 21   Equations for a Passive Second Order Loop Filter

Introduction

The second order loop filter is the least complex loop filter and allows one to explicitly solve for the component values in closed form. The second order filter has the smallest resistor thermal noise and largest capacitor next to the VCO to minimize the impact of VCO input capacitance. This filter also has maximum resistance to variations in VCO gain and charge pump gain. In cases where the first spur to be filtered is less than 10 times the loop bandwidth frequency, filter orders higher than third order do not provide much real improvement in spur levels. For the second order filter *T3 = T4 = T31 = T41 = 0*.

Loop Filter Impedance, Pole, and Zero
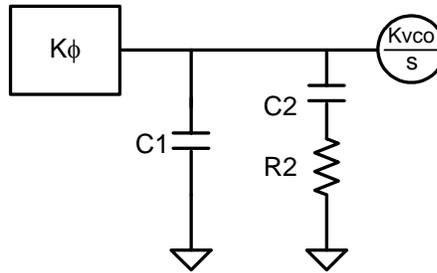
Figure 21.1 *A Second Order Passive Loop Filter*

The transfer function of a second order loop filter is given below:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet \left(1 + s \bullet \dfrac{C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{C1 + C2}\right)} = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1)} \qquad (21.1)$$

From the above equation, it should be clear:

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad (21.2)$$

$$T1 = \frac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{A0}$$

$$A0 = C1 + C2$$

A system of two equations and two unknowns can be established by calculating the phase margin and also setting the derivative of the phase margin equal to zero at the loop bandwidth.

$$\phi = 180 + arctan(\omega c \bullet T2) - arctan(\omega c \bullet T1) \qquad (21.3)$$

The solution to this equation is given below.

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1}$$ (21.4)

Substituting (21.4) into (21.3), taking the tangent of both sides, and solving yields:

$$T1 = \frac{\sqrt{(1+\gamma)^2 \bullet \tan^2 \phi + 4 \bullet \gamma} - (1+\gamma) \bullet \tan \phi}{2 \bullet \omega c}$$ (21.5)

The time constant **T2** can now be easily found using equation (21.4). The total loop filter capacitance, **A0**, can be found and **C1** can be calculated.

$$A0 = \frac{C1 \bullet T2}{T1} = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2\right)}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right)}}$$ (21.6)

Once the total capacitance is known, the components can be easily found:

$$\Rightarrow C1 = A0 \bullet \frac{T1}{T2}$$ (21.7)

$$\Rightarrow C2 = A0 - C1$$ (21.8)

$$\Rightarrow R2 = \frac{T2}{C2}$$ (21.9)

Conclusion

The formulas for the second order passive loop filter have been presented in this chapter. These formulas are just a special case of the formulas presented in a previous chapter. The second order filter has an elegant solution for the component values, but higher order filters may have lower reference spurs. A particular topology of loop filter was assumed in this chapter. There is actually another topology for the second order filter that is sometimes used in active filters. For different topologies, the component values may change, but the formulas for the time constants remain the same.

Reference

Keese, William O.   *An Analysis and Performance Evaluation of a Passive Filter Design Technique for Charge Pump Phase-Locked Loops*

Appendix A: A Second Order Loop Filter Design

Design Specifications

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	10	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	49.2	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.024	none
$K\phi$	Charge Pump Gain	1	mA
$Kvco$	VCO Gain	60	MHz/V
$Fout$	Output Frequency	1960	MHz
$Fcomp$	Comparison Frequency	50	kHz

Calculate Poles and Zero

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \tag{21.10}$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \tag{21.11}$$

$$T1 = \frac{\sqrt{(1+\gamma)^2 \bullet tan^2 \phi + 4 \bullet \gamma} \; - \; (1+\gamma) \bullet tan \phi}{2 \bullet \omega c} \tag{21.12}$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1} \tag{21.13}$$

Calculate Loop Filter Coefficients

$$A0 = \frac{C1 \bullet T2}{T1} = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2\right)}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right)}} \tag{21.14}$$

Solve For Components

$$C1 = A0 \bullet \frac{T1}{T2} \tag{21.15}$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \tag{21.16}$$

$$\Rightarrow R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \tag{21.17}$$

Results

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
N	N Counter Value	39200	none
ωc	Loop Bandwidth	6.283×10^{4}	rad/s
T1	Loop Filter Pole	5.989×10^{-6}	s
T2	Loop Filter Zero	4.331×10^{-5}	s
A0	Total Capacitance	1.052	nF
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.145	nF
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.906	nF
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	47.776	kΩ

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Chapter 22   Equations for a Passive Third Order Loop Filter

Introduction

The third order loop filter is useful in filtering spurs or noise caused by the PLL that is at an offset frequency of ten times the loop bandwidth or greater.   Unlike the second order loop filter, there is no closed form solution for the exact component values. Designing the loop filter involves solving for the time constants, and then determining the loop filter components from the time constants.   The time constants can be calculated either by introducing approximations and writing down a closed form approximate solution, or using numerical methods to solve more precisely for the time constants. Once the time constants are found, the component values can also be calculated by introducing approximations (although the results will not be exact), or can be calculated more exactly by using numerical methods. In addition to specifying the loop bandwidth, ωc, and phase margin, ϕ, the user also has to specify the pole ratio, **T31**. This parameter can range from zero to one. A good starting value for this parameter is **0.5**.

Calculating the Loop Filter Impedance and Time Constants
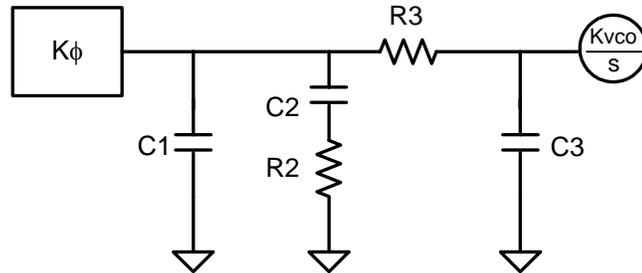
Figure 22.1 Third Order Passive Loop Filter

For the loop filter shown in Figure 22.1 , the impedance is given below:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1+s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1+s \bullet T1) \bullet (1+s \bullet T3)} = \tag{22.1}$$

$$\frac{1+s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0)} \tag{22.2}$$

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \tag{22.3}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A2 &= A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 &&= C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 \\
A1 &= A0 \bullet (T1+T3) &&= C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 \\
A0 & &&= C1 + C2 + C3
\end{aligned}
\tag{22.4}
$$

Loop Filter Calculation

Calculation of Time Constants

By setting the derivative of the phase margin equal to zero, the following relationship is obtained:

$$T2 \approx \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1 \bullet (1 + T31)} \qquad (22.5)$$

The phase margin is given by:

$$\phi = tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T2) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T3) \qquad (22.6)$$

$$\phi = tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1 + T31)}\right) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) \qquad (22.7)$$

This can either be solved numerically or approximately as shown below:

$$tan(x) \approx x \approx tan^{-1}(x) \qquad (22.8)$$

$$T1 \approx \frac{sec(\phi) - tan(\phi)}{\omega c \bullet (1 + T31)} \qquad (22.9)$$

Once **T1** is known, **T2** and **T3** can be easily found:

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \qquad (22.10)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3)} \qquad (22.11)$$

Solution of Component Values from Time Constants

The first step to is to calculate the total capacitance:

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2)}} \qquad (22.12)$$

True Loop Filter Impedance

The true impedance of the filter is given by:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3)} \bullet \frac{1}{A0}$$

<div align="right">(22.13)</div>

Recall that the loop filter components relate to the time constants in the following manner for a passive filter.

$$
\begin{aligned}
A2 &= A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 &&= C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 \\
A1 &= A0 \bullet (T1 + T3) &&= C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 \\
A0 & && = C1 + C2 + C3
\end{aligned}
$$

<div align="right">(22.14)</div>

Now the first step to solving for the components is to choose the component **C1**. There are many possible choices, but the optimal choice is the one that maximizes the capacitor **C3**. This is desirable because it minimizes the impact of the VCO capacitance and also resistor thermal noise due to **R3**. Although the choice of **C1** that minimizes **R3** is slightly different than the choice of **C1** that maximizes **C3**, these two values are very close, and making **C3** larger attenuates the noise due to resistor **R3** more. The justification for the choice of **C1** is shown in the appendix.

$$C1 = \frac{A2}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{A2} \bullet (T2 \bullet A0 - A1)} \right)$$

<div align="right">(22.15)</div>

Combining these equations yields:

$$A1 = T2 \bullet C1 - \frac{A2 \bullet A0}{T2 \bullet C1} - \frac{A2 \bullet C3}{T2 \bullet C1}$$

<div align="right">(22.16)</div>

The above equation can be solved in order to express **C3** in terms of **C1**:

$$C3 = \frac{-T2^2 \bullet C1^2 + T2 \bullet A1 \bullet C1 - A2 \bullet A0}{T2^2 \bullet C1 - A2}$$

<div align="right">(22.17)</div>

C2 and the other components can now be easily found.

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3 \qquad (22.18)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (22.19)$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{C1 \bullet C3 \bullet T2} \qquad (22.20)$$

Proof for the Optimal Choice of *C1* and Verification it Leads to Positive Components

The process to fully justify the choice of *C1* to express *C3* as a function of *C1* and apply the first derivative to find the critical points. Then it will be proven that the largest critical point is indeed the value of *C1* that yields the largest value for *C3*, provided that *C1*>0. Then it will be shown that the values attained for *C2* and *C3* from this optimal choice of *C1* are always positive. Once all the capacitor values are known to be positive, one can easily show the resistor values must be positive as well. As a residual result of these calculations it is also shown that *T31* must be strictly less than one.

*Find the Critical Points for the Expression for *C3* in terms of *C1* and Find the Critical Point*

The first step is to apply the first derivative to equation (21.17) and equate this to zero in order to find the critical points.

$$\frac{dC3}{dC1} = -\frac{C1^2 - \left(\frac{2 \bullet A2}{T2^2}\right) \bullet C1 + \left(\frac{A1 \bullet A2}{T2^3} - \frac{A2 \bullet A0}{T2^2}\right)}{\left(C1 - \frac{A2}{T2^2}\right)^2} = 0 \qquad (22.21)$$

By setting the numerator equal to zero and solving, the following result is obtained.

$$C1 = \frac{A2}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 \pm \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{A2} \bullet (T2 \bullet A0 - A1)}\right) \qquad (22.22)$$

*Determine Which Critical Point is the Correct One and Verify that it is a Global Maximum for *C1*>0*

Recall that if the second derivative is negative, it indicates the critical point is a local maximum, and if it is positive, it indicates that it is a local minimum. Taking another derivative of (22.17) yields:

$$\frac{d^2C3}{dC1^2} = \frac{-2}{C1 - \dfrac{A2}{T2^2}} \qquad (22.23)$$

Now if one uses the critical point in equation (22.22) with the negative sign in front of the square root sign, this will be a local minimum, since the derivative would be positive. It also follows that the using the critical point with the positive root yields a local maximum. Now within a small neighborhood of this largest critical point, for **C1** larger than this value, the value of **C3** is decreasing. Since there are no critical points larger than this value, it follows that there can be no global maximum value for **C1** larger than the largest critical point. Now for an infinitesimally small neighborhood around this critical point, but for slightly smaller values for **C1**, the slope is negative, and it does not become positive again until one reaches the smaller critical point. But since this critical point can be shown to be less than 0, it follows that the following value yields the largest possible value for **C3**, provided that **C1**>0.

$$C1 = \frac{A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{T1 \bullet T3} \bullet (T2 - T1 - T3)} \right) \qquad (22.24)$$

*Find the Restrictions on **C1** to Ensure That **C3** is Positive*

Now the expression for **C3** can be expressed in terms of time constants, **C1**, and **A0**.

$$C3 = \frac{-T2^2 \bullet C1^2 + T2 \bullet A0 \bullet (T1 + T3) \bullet C1 - T1 \bullet T3 \bullet A0^2}{T2^2 \bullet C1 - T1 \bullet T3 \bullet A0} \qquad (22.25)$$

Now it is easy to see by inspection that the denominator will be positive for the optimal choice of **C1**, but the numerator is not so obvious. Using the quadratic formula and simplifying yields the restrictions on **C1** which are necessary to make **C3**>0. It is assumed, by definition, that **T3**>**T1**.

$$\frac{T3}{T2} \bullet A0 < C1 < \frac{T1}{T2} \bullet A0 \qquad (22.26)$$

Now applying these above restrictions to the value of **C1** shows that they will be satisfied, provided the following conditions are met.

$$T2 > T1 > T3 \qquad (22.27)$$

Note that **T2**>**T1** is required for stability and **T1**>**T3** is true, since **T1** is defined as the larger of the two time constants. Note this also shows that if one chooses **T1** = **T3**, the capacitor

C3 will be zero, which is indeed the case. Therefore there is an additional requirement implied by this.

*Find Restrictions on **C1** to Ensure that **C2** is Positive*

Applying (22.26) and seeking the condition that ensures that *C2* is positive is yields the following constraint that is always satisfied for a stable loop filter, since *T2>T1+T3*.

$$C1+C3 < A0 \tag{22.28}$$
$$\Rightarrow T1 \bullet T3 + T2 \bullet (T2 - T1 - T3)$$

Conclusion

This chapter has presented a method for calculating a third order passive loop filter. Unlike the second order filter equations, there is no closed form solution for the time constants, although it is easy to solve for them numerically. Once these time constants are known, then the component values can be calculated. For those who wish to avoid these numerical methods, simplified approximate equations for the time constants have also been presented.

Regardless of the filter calculation method used, the VCO input capacitance adds to capacitor *C3*, so this component should be at least four times the VCO input capacitance. In many circumstances, this is not possible. If the value of *T31* is decreased, then the capacitor *C3* will become larger and the resistor *R3* will become smaller. Choosing *C3* as large as possible also corresponds to choosing *R3* as small as possible. It is desirable to not have the *R3* resistor too large, or else the thermal noise from this resistor can add to the out of band phase noise.

References

Keese, William O. *An Analysis and Performance Evaluation of a Passive Filter Design Technique for Charge Pump Phase-Locked Loops*

Appendix A:　　A Third Order Loop Filter Design

Design Specifications

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	2	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	47.1	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.136	none
Kϕ	Charge Pump Gain	4	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	30	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	1392	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	60	kHz
T31	Ratio of pole T3 to Pole T1	0.6	none

Calculate Poles and Zero

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \qquad (22.29)$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \qquad (22.30)$$

T1 is the only unknown. Use the Exact Method to Solve for T1 Using Numerical Methods

$$\phi = tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1+T31)}\right) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) \qquad (22.31)$$

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \qquad (22.32)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^{2} \bullet (T1+T3)} \qquad (22.33)$$

Calculate Loop Filter Coefficients

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^{2} \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1+\omega c^{2} \bullet T2^{2}}{\left(1+\omega c^{2} \bullet T1^{2}\right) \bullet \left(1+\omega c^{2} \bullet T3^{2}\right)}} \qquad (22.34)$$

$$A1 = A0 \bullet (T1+T3) \qquad (22.35)$$

$$A2 = A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \qquad (22.36)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
N	N Counter Value	23200	none
ωc	Loop Bandwidth	1.2566×10^{4}	rad/s
T1	Loop Filter Pole	2.0333×10^{-5}	s
T2	Loop Filter Zero	2.2112×10^{-4}	s
T3	Loop Filter Zero	1.2200×10^{-5}	s
A0	Total Capacitance	92.6372	nF
A1	First order loop filter coefficient	3.0138×10^{-3}	nFs
A2	Second Order loop filter coefficient	2.2980×10^{-8}	nFs^{2}

Solve For Components

$$C1 = \frac{A2}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{A2} \bullet (T2 \bullet A0 - A1)} \right) \tag{22.37}$$

$$C3 = \frac{-T2^2 \bullet C1^2 + T2 \bullet A1 \bullet C1 - A2 \bullet A0}{T2^2 \bullet C1 - A2} \tag{22.38}$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3 \tag{22.39}$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \tag{22.40}$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{C1 \bullet C3 \bullet T2} \tag{22.41}$$

Results

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	6.5817	nF
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	85.5896	nF
C3	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.4660	nF
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	2.5835	kΩ
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	33.8818	kΩ

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Chapter 23   Equations for a Passive Fourth Order Loop Filter

Introduction

The fourth order loop filter is effecting in filtering spur or noise caused by the PLL that is at an offset that is at least twenty times the loop bandwidth. In the cause when a delta sigma PLL of order three is used, a fourth order loop filter is recommended.

Many challenges come with the 4th order loop filter design. The challenge with the fourth order filter is definitely solving for the components. Unlike lower order filters, it is actually possible to design a stable fourth order loop filter that has all real components, yet has complex poles. Although this may prove advantageous, this chapter assumes all poles in the filter are real. It is also a challenge to have any idea if the component values yield the maximum possible value for **C4**. In the case of a 3rd order loop filter, it was possible to solve for components and prove that the solution always yielded the maximum possible capacitor next to the VCO. In the case of a 4th order loop filter, this is possible, but because the routine is so complicated and has so many problems with reliably converging to a solution with all positive component values, it makes sense to introduce simplifications. The basic strategy presented in this chapter is to design a third order loop filter and then perturb this into a fourth order loop filter.   The solution yields very close to the parameters designed for, but does not yield the maximum possible value for **C4**, although it comes very close.

Calculating the Loop Filter Impedance and Time Constants
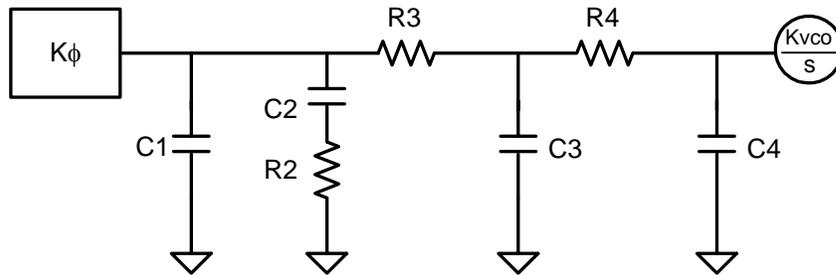
Figure 23.1 *Fourth Order Passive Loop Filter*

For the loop filter shown in Figure 23.1 , the impedance is given below:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (A3 \bullet s^3 + A2 \bullet s^2 + A1 \bullet s + A0)} \qquad (23.1)$$

$$A3 = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R2 \bullet R3 \bullet R4 \qquad (23.2)$$

$$A2 = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet R3 \bullet (C3+C4)$$
$$+C4 \bullet R4 \bullet (C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R2)$$

$$A1 = C2 \bullet R2 \bullet (C1+C3+C4) + R3 \bullet (C1+C2) \bullet (C3+C4)$$
$$+C4 \bullet R4 \bullet (C1+C2+C3)$$

$$A0 = C1+C2+C3+C4$$

Loop Filter Calculation

Calculation of Time Constants

The phase margin is given by:

$$\phi = tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T2) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T3) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T4) \qquad (23.3)$$

$$\phi = tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1+T31+T31 \bullet T43)} \right) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) \qquad (23.4)$$
$$- tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31 \bullet T43)$$

Now **T1** is the only unknown in the equation above, and this can be solved for numerically for **T1**, and afterwards, **T2**, **T3**, and **T4** can easily be found.

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \qquad (23.5)$$

$$T4 = T1 \bullet T31 \bullet T43 \qquad (23.6)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1+T3+T4)} \qquad (23.7)$$

Solution of Component Values from Time Constants

Calculation of Filter Impedance Coefficients

The loop filter coefficients can be calculated as follows:

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4^2\right)}} \qquad (23.8)$$

$$A1 = A0 \bullet (T1 + T3 + T4) \qquad (23.9)$$

$$A2 = A0 \bullet (T1 \bullet T3 + T1 \bullet T4 + T3 \bullet T4) \qquad (23.10)$$

$$A3 = A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \bullet T4 \qquad (23.11)$$

Relation of Filter Impedance Coefficients to Component Values

Relating the filter impedance coefficients and zero, $T2$, to the component values yields a system of 5 equations and seven unknowns. The unknowns are the components $C1$, $C2$, $C3$, $C4$, $R2$, $R3$, and $R4$.

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad (23.12)$$
$$A3 = R2 \bullet R3 \bullet R4 \bullet C1 \bullet C2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4$$
$$A2 = R2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1 \bullet C2 \bullet (C3 + C4) + R4 \bullet C4 \bullet \left(C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C3 \bullet C2 \bullet R2\right)$$
$$A1 = R2 \bullet C2 \bullet (C1 + C3 + C4) + R3 \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet (C3 + C4) + R4 \bullet C4 \bullet \left(C1 + C2 + C3\right)$$
$$A0 = C1 + C2 + C3 + C4$$

Since there are only five equations and seven unknowns, one can actually choose two parameters. However, it is not nearly that simple, since it is not at all obvious which components should be chosen, how to choose them to maximize $C4$, and how to choose them in such a way that the other five components values will be real and positive. These above three issues have been explored in depth, although the reader will be spared all of this. It turns out that these equations can be solved exactly. In addition to this, there does exist a method that generates the largest possible value for $C4$. The problem with this method is that it is hideously complicated, requires numerical methods to solve, and can lead to negative component values for the other components. The method presented here does not exactly maximize $C4$, but is orders of magnitude easier to use, and for all test cases, yields positive component values. It also turns out that it gets pretty close to maximum value for $C4$. Although many different avenues have been explored, the most robust solution seems to be to choose $C1$ and $R3$ first, and then solve for the other component values.

Choosing the Components C1 and R3

Recall that for the third order loop filter, it was shown that the solution always yielded positive components and yielded the maximum capacitor for **C3**. The concept here is choose **C1** and **R3** from the third order loop filter design, and then find the other components. The solution to the third order loop filter is as follows:

$$a0 = A0 = C1 + C2 + C3 + C4 \tag{23.13}$$
$$a1 = a0 \bullet (T1 + T3)$$
$$a2 = a0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3$$

$$C1 = \frac{a2}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{a2} \bullet (T2 \bullet a0 - a1)}\right) \tag{23.14}$$

$$c3 = \frac{-T2^2 \bullet C1^2 + T2 \bullet a1 \bullet C1 - a2 \bullet a0}{T2^2 \bullet C1 - a2} \tag{23.15}$$

$$R3 = \frac{a2}{C1 \bullet c3 \bullet T2} \tag{23.16}$$

Note that in the above equations, **A0**, **A1**, **A2**, and **C3** are intentionally not capitalized due to the fact that they are only intermediate calculations for these values, and not the actual loop filter impedance parameters or capacitance.

Determination of C2

Now if **C1** and **C2** were specified first then the equations would be simplified. However, the problem is that the loop filter values are extremely sensitive to the choice of **C2**. Once **C1** is specified, then if **C2** is not chosen in a very narrow range, then negative component the solution will yield negative component values for some of the other components. However, if **C1** and **R3** are chosen first, this problem does not seem to exhibit itself.

The equations simplified can be rewritten in this form:

$$\frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1} = R4 \bullet C4 \bullet C3 \tag{23.17}$$

$$\frac{A2}{A3} - \frac{1}{T2} = \frac{1}{C4 \bullet R4} + \frac{1}{C3 \bullet R4} + \frac{1}{C1 \bullet R2} + \frac{1}{C3 \bullet R3} + \left[\frac{1}{C1 \bullet R3}\right]$$

$$A1 - T2 \bullet A0 - \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1} = -T2 \bullet C2 + R3 \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet (C3 + C4) + R4 \bullet C4 \bullet (C1 + C2)$$

$$A0 - C1 = C2 + C3 + C4$$

Now it is necessary to introduce an approximation so that the components will become non-negative. Note that in equation (23.17) that the last term in the second row, $\left[\dfrac{1}{C1 \bullet R3}\right]$ is much less than the term before it, $\dfrac{1}{C3 \bullet R3}$. From trial and error, eliminating the $\left[\dfrac{1}{C1 \bullet R3}\right]$ term causes the solution to be robust in terms of having non-negative component values. Using this simplification and the first equation to eliminate $R4 \bullet C4$ and rearranging yields:

$$k0 = C2 \bullet \left(\frac{1}{T2 \bullet C1} - \frac{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1}{A3}\right) + \frac{1}{C3 \bullet R3} \tag{23.18}$$

$$k1 = -T2 \bullet C2 + C2 \bullet [R3 \bullet (A0 - C1)] + \frac{1}{C3 \bullet R3} \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet \left(\frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1}\right)$$

where

$$k0 = \frac{A2}{A3} - \frac{1}{T2} - \frac{(A0 - C1) \bullet T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1}{A3}$$

$$k1 = A1 - T2 \bullet A0 - \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1} - (A0 - C1) \bullet R3 \bullet C1$$

By combining the above equations to eliminate $\dfrac{1}{C3 \bullet R3}$, $C2$ can be found by solving the following quadratic equation that results:

$$a \bullet C2^2 + b \bullet C2 + c = 0 \tag{23.19}$$

where

$$a = \frac{A3}{(T2 \bullet C1)^2}$$

$$b = T2 + R3 \bullet (C1 - A0) + \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet C1} \bullet \left(\frac{1}{T2} - k0\right)$$

$$c = k1 - \frac{k0 \bullet A3}{T2}$$

$$C2 = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4 \bullet a \bullet c}}{2 \bullet a}$$

Solution for Other Components

Once **C2** is known, the other components can easily be found.

$$C3 = \frac{T2 \bullet A3 \bullet C1}{R3 \bullet \left[k0 \bullet T2 \bullet A3 \bullet C1 - C2 \bullet \left(A3 - R3 \bullet (T2 \bullet C1)^2 \right) \right]} \tag{23.20}$$

$$C4 = A0 - C1 - C2 - C3$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2}$$

$$R4 = \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1 \bullet C3 \bullet C4}$$

Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the design of a fourth order passive filter. A lot of the complexity comes in from solving for the component values, once the filter coefficients are known. Unlike the third order solution, there is no proof that the component values yielded are always positive, nor is there a proof that the capacitor next to the VCO is the largest possible, in fact, it is not. However, there have been no cases found where the techniques presented in this chapter do not yield a realizable solution. provided that the restriction is followed:

$$T31 + T43 \leq 1 \tag{23.21}$$

In addition to this, the solution method presented in this chapter was compared against the solution that does yield the maximum value for the capacitor, **C4**, and the values were close. The reason that the other method was not presented is that it is much more complicated and it has problems converging to real component values in all cases. In the cases tested that it does converge to a solution with real component values, the value for the capacitor, **C4**, was only marginally larger.

References

Keese, William O.   *An Analysis and Performance Evaluation of a Passive Filter Design Technique for Charge Pump Phase-Locked Loops*

Appendix A: A Fourth Order Loop Filter Design

Design Specifications

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	10	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	47.8	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.115	none
Kϕ	Charge Pump Gain	4	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	20	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	900	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	200	kHz
T31	Ratio of pole *T3* to Pole *T1*	0.4	none
T43	Ratio of pole *T4* to Pole *T1*	0.4	none

Calculate Poles and Zero

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \tag{23.22}$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \tag{23.23}$$

T1 is the only unknown. Use the Exact Method to Solve for T1 Using Numerical Methods

$$\phi = tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1+T31)}\right) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) \tag{23.24}$$
$$- tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31 \bullet T43)$$

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \tag{23.25}$$

$$T4 = T1 \bullet T31 \bullet T43 \tag{23.26}$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1+T3+T4)} \tag{23.27}$$

Calculate Intermediate Loop Filter Coefficients

$$a0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1+\omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\left(1+\omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right)\bullet\left(1+\omega c^2 \bullet T3^2\right)\bullet\left(1+\omega c^2 \bullet T4^2\right)}} \qquad (23.28)$$

$$a1 = a0 \bullet (T1+T3) \qquad (23.29)$$

$$a2 = a0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \qquad (23.30)$$

$$a3 = 0 \qquad (23.31)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
N	N Counter Value	4500	none
ωc	Loop Bandwidth	6.2832×10^4	rad/s
T1	Loop Filter Pole	4.0685×10^{-6}	s
T2	Loop Filter Zero	4.4500×10^{-5}	s
T3	Loop Filter Pole	1.6274×10^{-6}	s
T4	Loop Filter Pole	6.5096×10^{-7}	s
A0	Intermediate Total Capacitance	12.8773	nF
A1	Intermediate First order loop filter coefficient	7.3348×10^{-8}	nFs
A2	Intermediate Second Order loop filter coefficient	8.5262×10^{-11}	nFs^2
A3	Intermediate Third Order loop filter coefficient	0	nFs^3

Solve For Components C1 and R3

$$C1 = \frac{a2}{T2^2} \bullet \left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{T2}{a2} \bullet (T2 \bullet a0 - a1)}\right) \qquad (23.32)$$

$$c3 = \frac{-T2^2 \bullet C1^2 + T2 \bullet a1 \bullet C1 - a2 \bullet a0}{T2^2 \bullet C1 - a2} \qquad (23.33)$$

$$R3 = \frac{a2}{C1 \bullet c3 \bullet T2} \qquad (23.34)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.7397	nF
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	15.3409	kΩ

Solve For _C2_

$$A0 = a0 \qquad\qquad (23.35)$$

$$A1 = A0 \bullet (T1 + T3 + T4) \qquad\qquad (23.36)$$

$$A2 = A0 \bullet (T1 \bullet T3 + T1 \bullet T4 + T3 \bullet T4) \qquad\qquad (23.37)$$

$$A3 = A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \bullet T4 \qquad\qquad (23.38)$$

$$k0 = \frac{A2}{A3} - \frac{1}{T2} - \frac{1}{C1 \bullet R3} - \frac{(A0 - C1) \bullet T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1}{A3} \qquad\qquad (23.39)$$

$$k1 = A1 - T2 \bullet A0 - \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1} - (A0 - C1) \bullet R3 \bullet C1$$

$$a = \frac{A3}{(T2 \bullet C1)^2} \qquad\qquad (23.40)$$

$$b = T2 + R3 \bullet (C1 - A0) + \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet C1} \bullet \left(\frac{1}{T2} - k0\right)$$

$$c = k1 - \frac{k0 \bullet A3}{T2}$$

$$C2 = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4 \bullet a \bullet c}}{2 \bullet a} \qquad\qquad (23.41)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad\qquad (23.42)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
_A0_	Total Capacitance	12.8773	nF
_A1_	First order loop filter coefficient	8.1731×10^{-5}	nFs
_A2_	Second Order loop filter coefficient	1.3301×10^{-10}	nFs^2
_A3_	Third Order loop filter coefficient	5.5502×10^{-17}	nFs^3
_k0_	Intermediate Calculation for finding _C2_	-1.0806×10^8	1/s
_k1_	Intermediate Calculation for finding _C2_	-6.2915×10^{-4}	nFs
_a_	Intermediate Calculation for finding _C2_	5.1223×10^{-8}	s/nF
_b_	Intermediate Calculation for finding _C2_	4.0683×10^{-5}	s
_c_	Intermediate Calculation for finding _C2_	-4.9426×10^{-4}	nFs
_C2_	Loop Filter Capacitor	12.0139	nF

Solve for the Other Components

$$C3 = \frac{T2 \bullet A3 \bullet C1}{R3 \bullet \left[k0 \bullet T2 \bullet A3 \bullet C1 - C2 \bullet \left(A3 - R3 \bullet \left(T2 \bullet C1 \right)^2 \right) \right]}$$

$$C4 = A0 - C1 - C2 - C3$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2}$$

$$R4 = \frac{A3}{T2 \bullet R3 \bullet C1 \bullet C3 \bullet C4}$$

(23.43)

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C3	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.0737	nF
C4	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.0499	nF
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	3.7040	kΩ
R4	Loop Filter Resistor	29.8734	kΩ

Chapter 24   Fundamentals of PLL Active Loop Filter Design

Introduction

The following several chapters have discussed passive loop filter designs. Passive loop filters are generally recommended over active filters for reasons of cost, simplicity, and in-band phase noise.   The added in-band phase noise comes from the active device that is used in the loop filter. However in cases where the VCO requires a higher tuning voltage than the PLL charge pump can operate, active filters are necessary. VCOs with high voltage tuning requirements are most common in broadband tuning applications, such as those encountered in cable TV tuners. It is also commonly required for low noise or high power VCOs.

With older styles of phase detectors, before the charge pump PLL, active filters were used in order to obtain a zero steady-state phase error and infinite pull-in range. However, this is not a good reason to use an active filter with a charge pump PLL, since the charge pump PLL always attains these characteristics with a passive filter.

Many of the concepts presented in this chapter are analogous to those in passive loop filter design. The solution for the time constants is identical, however the solution of components from those time constants is not the same, since the active device does provide isolation for the higher stages. The concepts for loop bandwidth, phase margin and pole ratios all apply. It is generally recommended to use at least a third order filter, since the added pole reduces the phase noise of the active device.

Types of Active Filters

The two basic classes of active filters are those using the differential phase detector outputs and those that use the charge pump output pin. For each of these two basic classes, there are also different variations for the loop filter topology. Since most of the concepts in this chapter are not applicable to the approach involving the differential phase detector outputs, this case is treated in a separate chapter.

The other approaches presented all involve using active devices to boost the charge pump output voltage. One such way involves simply adding a gain stage before the VCO. Other approaches involve putting components in the feedback path of the active loop filter device.

If there is a phase inversion introduced, this can be negated by reversing the polarity of the charge pump. One advantage of an active filter is that there is isolation added, which allows a larger capacitor to be chosen next to the VCO to reduce the impact of the VCO input capacitance and loop filter resistor noise.

The Pole Switching Trick

With passive filters, *T31<1* is a constraint for real component values. However, with active filters, *T3*=*T1* is a perfectly valid condition. For optimal spurious attenuation, this condition should be applied. However, often the op-amp noise is a larger consideration than the spurs. Because the pole *T3* comes after the op-amp, it offers more filtering of the op-amp noise.

From this perspective, it makes sense to make **T31 > 1**. In the case of a passive filter, changing the poles **T3** and **T1** have no impact on the loop filter components. In the case of an active filter, switching these two poles does not impact the loop parameters, but does change the loop filter components and also impacts how the op-amp noise is filtered. Making **T31>1** is effectively switching these poles.

Simple Gain Approach
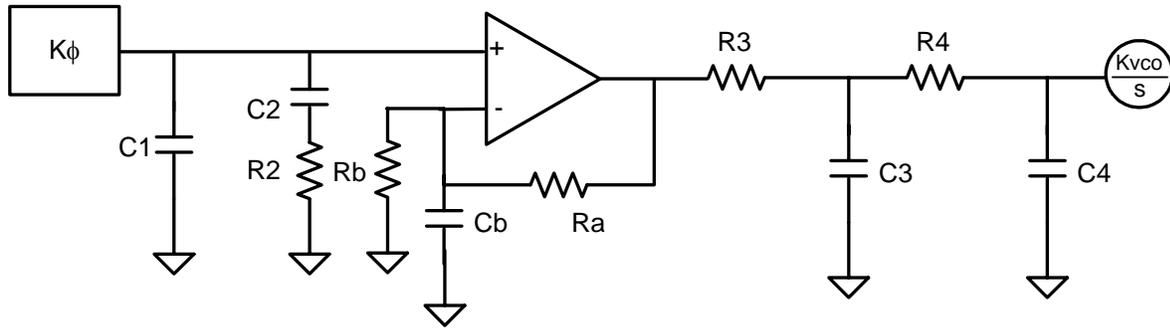
Figure 24.1 *An Active Filter Using the Simple Gain Approach*

This approach involves placing an op-amp in front of the VCO. The advantage of this approach is that it is very intuitive and commonly used. The disadvantage is that it does not optimally center the charge pump and it multiplies the op-amp noise. Since the op-amp generates noise, it is generally recommended to use a third or higher order filter to reduce the op-amp noise, even if the spurs do not benefit much from it.

The gain of **A** is produced by using an op-amp in an non-inverting configuration. The resistor **Rx** is selected to be large enough so that the current consumption is not excessive. However, choosing **Rx** excessively large could lead to problems due to the resistor thermal noise. If thermal noise is a concern, the capacitor **Cb** can be use to greatly reduce it. The gain, **A**, is always negative and is calculated as:

$$A = - (1 + Ra/Rb) \qquad (24.1)$$

Feedback Approaches

The problem with the simple gain approach is that the op-amp noise is multiplied by the gain of the gain stage. Feedback approaches put part of the loop filter components in the feedback path of the op-amp and eliminate this problem. At the non-inverting input of the op-amp, it is necessary to establish a fixed voltage, called the bias voltage. Because this bias voltage is fixed, the charge pump output voltage can be held at a fixed voltage, which is usually half of the charge pump supply voltage. Because this voltage is fixed, spurs should be lower. The only disadvantage of the feedback approaches is that some of them require that the op-amp slew rate is sufficiently fast, but this can be avoided by using the slow slew rate approach.

The bias voltage is established by using a simple resistive divider. If the resistors are chosen too small, there will be excessive current consumption. If they are chosen too large, then there will be excessive resistor noise. In most cases, the resistors will be equal to bias the charge pump output at half of the supply. One trick that can be used is to use a shunt capacitor, **Cb**, in order to reduce this noise. The bias voltage is calculated from the bias resistors as follows:

$$Vbias = \frac{Vp \bullet Rb}{Ra + Rb}$$

<div align="right">(24.2)</div>
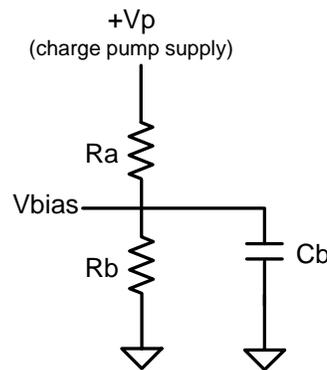
Figure 24.2 *How to Establish a Bias Voltage*

Standard Feedback Approach

This approach involves putting the components **C1**, **C2**, and **R2** in the feedback path of an op-amp. Additional filtering stages are added after the op-amp. This approach is generally superior to the simple gain approach because it allows the charge pump voltage to be centered at half the charge pump supply, for lower and more predictable spur levels.
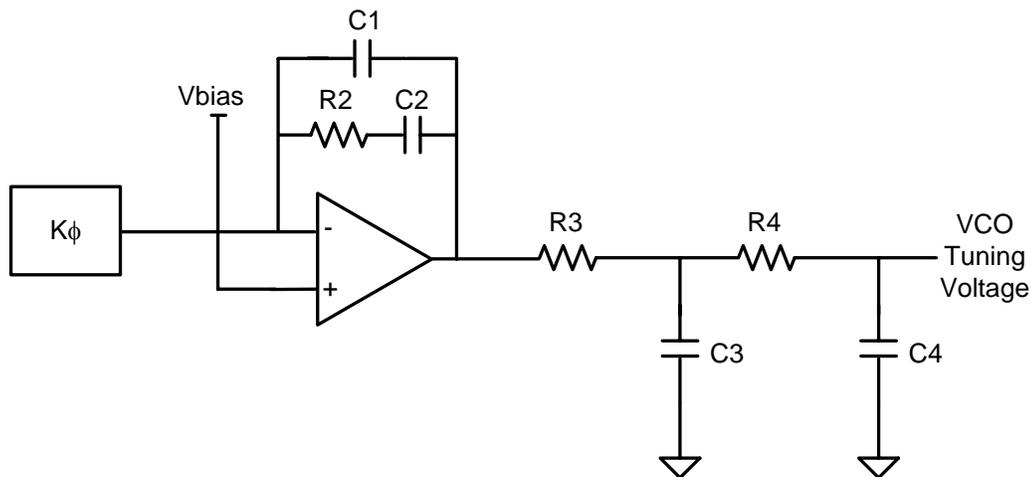
Figure 24.3 *An Active Filter Using the Standard Feedback Approach*

Alternative Feedback Approach
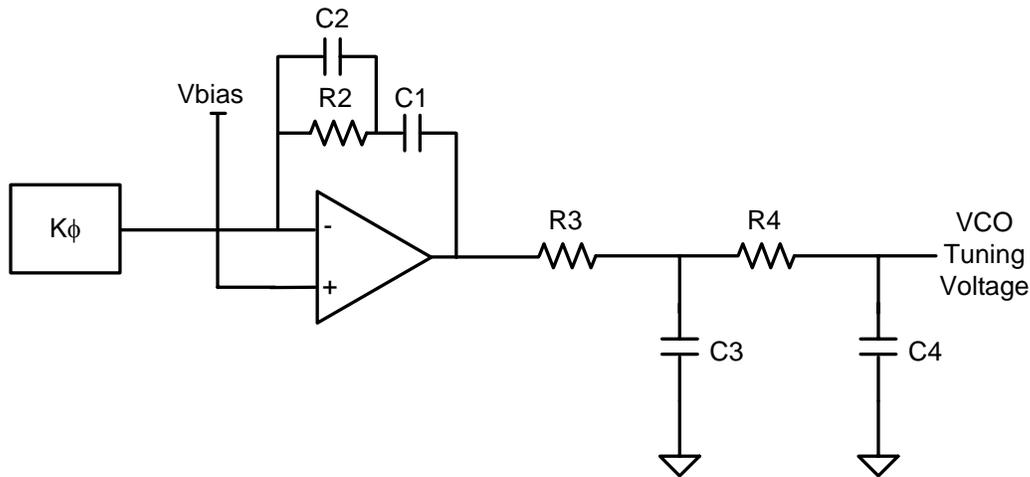
Figure 24.4 *An Active Filter Using the Alternative Feedback Approach*

This approach is very similar to the standard feedback approach, except that the topology is slightly changed. The only possible advantages or disadvantages of this approach would be a consequence of the fact that the actual calculated component values will be different.

Slow Slew Rate Approach

One of the problems with the standard feedback approach is that the charge pump output is presented directly to the op-amp. This puts requirements on the slew rate of the op-amp because the correction pulses from the charge pump are very fast. If the op-amp is not fast enough, then an AC waveform will be generated on the tuning line. Depending on how high the comparison frequency is, the additional filtering after the op-amp might be able to handle this, but often it cannot. In order to fix this problem, the pole, *T1*, is moved before the op-amp to relive the op-amp of this requirement.
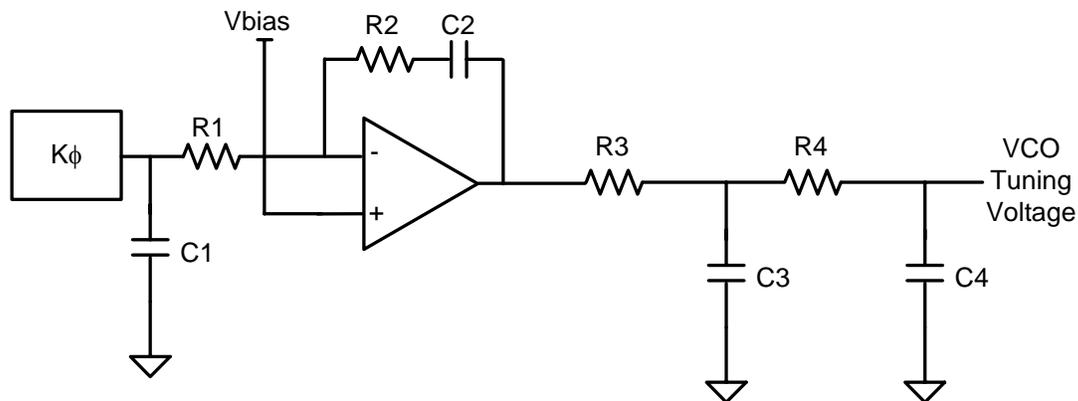
Figure 24.5 *Slow Slew Rate Modification to Standard Feedback Approach*

Using Transistors for the Standard and Alternative Feedback Approaches

For either of the feedback approaches, transistors can be used to replace the op-amp in order to reduce the cost and the noise. For the approach presented here, the transistors can only sink current, so a pull-up resistor, **Rpp**, is required. The choice of **Rpp** is design and possibly transistor specific, but **Rpp = 10 KΩ** is a good starting value. **Rpp** sets the gain of the circuit. Choosing this resistor too large will cause the circuit to be unstable and the carrier to dance around the frequency spectrum. Choosing it too small will cause excessive current consumption since **Vpp** is grounded through the resistor **Rpp** when the transistors turn on. This particular design has been built and tested to 30 volt operation. The optional 20 KΩ resistor may reduce the phase noise. In some cases, this resistor can also be replaced by a capacitor. The 220 Ω resistor sets the bias point for the charge pump output pin. The 1 kΩ resistor limits the sink current.
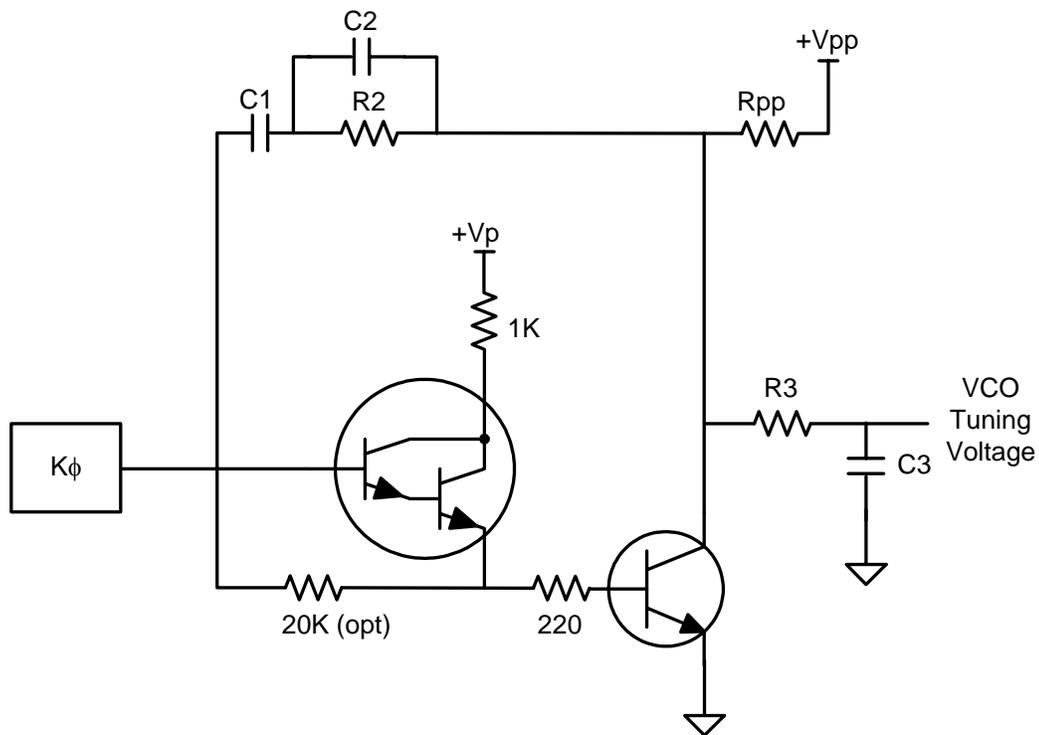
Figure 24.6 *Third Order Alternative Feedback Active Filter Using Transistors*

Choosing the Right Op-Amp

The choice of the correct op-amp is somewhat of an art. The table below summarizes how various parameters impact the system performance.

Parameter	Impact on PLL System
Offset Voltage	This has no impact on system performance.
Noise Voltage	This is very important and has a large impact on phase noise, especially at and outside the loop bandwidth.
Noise Current	This is also very important and has a large impact on phase noise.
Input Rails	In order to avoid a negative supply, it is preferable that the negative supply rail is small. For instance, if the PLL supply is 3 volts, and the negative supply rail is 4 volts, this forces the use of a negative supply. The positive supply rail is much less important.
Output Rails	The op-amp output voltage needs to be able to tune the VCO. The biggest thing to watch for is the negative output rail. If this is too large, it could force one to use a negative supply.
Slew Rate	This can impact both spurs and lock time. For spurs, if the standard or alternative feedback approach is used, if the slew rate is too slow, it can cause an AC modulation on the tuning line, which results in higher spurs. In terms of lock time, the slew rate is unlikely to degrade the lock time, unless the lock time is very fast, on the order of 5 uS. In this case, the peak time can be increased if the op-amp is too slow.

Table 24.1 *Impact of Op-Amp Parameters on PLL System Performance*

Loop Filter Impedance and Forward Loop Gain

Regardless of what filter topology is used, The loop filter impedance is defined as the output voltage to the VCO generated by a current produced from the charge pump. Regardless of the approach used, the loop filter transfer function can be expressed in the following form:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0} \bullet \frac{A}{(1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} \qquad (24.3)$$

Assuming that the charge pump polarity is inverted, the open loop gain becomes:

$$G(s)\Big/N = -\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet A}{\omega^2 \bullet N} \bullet \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + s \bullet T4)} \qquad (24.4)$$

	Simple Gain Approach	Feedback Approaches		Slow Slew Rate Approach
		Standard Feedback	Alternative Feedback	
$T1$	$\dfrac{C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{C1 + C2}$	$\dfrac{C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{C1 + C2}$	$C2 \bullet R2$	$C1 \bullet R1$
$T2$	$C2 \bullet R2$	$C2 \bullet R2$	$R2 \bullet (C1 + C2)$	$C2 \bullet R2$
$T3$	$\dfrac{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4) + \sqrt{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2}$			
$T4$	$\dfrac{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4) - \sqrt{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2}$			
$A0$	$C1 + C2$	$C1 + C2$	$C1$	$C2$
A	$1 + Ra/Rb$	-1		

Table 24.2 *Filter Parameters as they Relate to the Filter Components*

Calculating the Loop Filter Components

Solving for the time constants

The first step in calculating the loop filter components is calculating the time constants. This is done in exactly the same way that it was done in the case of a passive filter, and is therefore not shown again in this chapter. Once the time constants are known, the loop filter components can be calculated from these time constants.

Solving for A0

The first step in solving for the components is determining the value of **A0**. This can be found by setting the open loop gain equal to one at the loop bandwidth.

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet A}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4)}} \qquad (24.5)$$

Solving for the Components

Once that **A0** is found, the other components can be found using the Table 23.4. For a third order loop filter, **C3** should be at least four times the VCO input capacitance and at least **C1/5**. For a fourth order loop filter, **C4** should be at least this stated limit above.

	Simple Gain Approach	Feedback Approaches		
		Standard	Alternative	Slow Slew Rate
C1	$A0 \bullet \dfrac{T1}{T2}$	$A0 \bullet \dfrac{T1}{T2}$	$A0$	*Free to choose. Suggest 1000 pF.*
C2	$A0 \bullet \left(1 - \dfrac{T1}{T2}\right)$	$A0 \bullet \left(1 - \dfrac{T1}{T2}\right)$	$A0 \bullet \dfrac{T1}{T2 - T1}$	$A0$
R2	$\dfrac{T2}{C2}$	$\dfrac{T2}{C2}$	$\dfrac{T2}{C1 + C2}$	$\dfrac{T2}{C2}$
Third Order Filter Components				
C3	*Choose C3 at least 4X the VCO input capacitance and at least 200 pF.*			
R3	$\dfrac{T3}{C3}$			
Fourth Order Components				
C4	*Choose C4 at least 4X the VCO input capacitance and preferably at least 220 pF. Also make sure that this yields realistic values for C3.*			
C3	$C4 \bullet \dfrac{4 \bullet T3 \bullet T4}{(T3 - T4)^2}$			
R3	$\dfrac{T3 + T4}{2 \bullet (C3 + C4)}$			
R4	$\dfrac{T3 + T4}{2 \bullet C4}$			

Table 24.3 *Loop Filter Component Values Computed from Time Constants*

Conclusion

The equations for active loop filter design have been presented. Active filters are necessary when the charge pump can not operate at high enough voltages to tune the VCO and can also help reduce the ill effects of the VCO input capacitance. The choice of the op-amp is somewhat of an art. One has to balance the input and output rails, bias currents, noise voltage, and noise current. For instance, the LMH6624 has excellent noise performance, but very high input bias currents. If a fractional PLL is used, it might be possible to make the comparison frequency high enough to tolerate these higher bias currents. If an integer PLL is used, then one needs to choose an op-amp with lower bias currents. The LMV751 has good noise and bias currents, but only goes to 5.5 volts. The OP27 has good noise and bias currents, but the input rails requires the use of a negative supply. A poor choice for the op-amp could easily increase the phase noise by 10 dB, while a good choice would probably increase the phase noise by a couple dB.

References

I had useful conversations with John Bittner and Eric Eppley regarding active filter design.

Appendix A:　　　An Active Filter Design Example

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	20	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	47.8	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.115	none
Kϕ	Charge Pump Gain	5	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	44	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	2441	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	500	kHz
T31	Ratio of pole *T3* to Pole *T1*	1/0.4 = 2.5	none
T41	Ratio of pole *T4* to Pole *T1*	0.4	none
A	Gain of op-amp	1 and 3	none

Calculate Poles and Zero and *A0*

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \tag{24.6}$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \tag{24.7}$$

T1 is the only unknown. Use the Exact Method to Solve for T1 Using Numerical Methods

$$\phi = tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1 + T31)}\right) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) \tag{24.8}$$
$$- tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31) - tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31 \bullet T43)$$

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \tag{24.9}$$

$$T4 = T1 \bullet T43 \tag{24.10}$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3 + T4)} \tag{24.11}$$

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet A}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4)}} \tag{24.12}$$

Symbol	Description			Value	Units
N	N Counter Value			4882	none
ωc	Loop Bandwidth			1.2566×10^5	rad/s
T1	Loop Filter Pole			8.1370×10^{-7}	s
T2	Loop Filter Zero			2.2250×10^{-5}	s
T3	Loop Filter Pole			2.0343×10^{-6}	s
T4	Loop Filter Pole			3.2548×10^{-7}	s
A0	Loop Filter Coefficient for All Feed Back Approaches			8.1604	nF
	Loop Filter Coefficient for Simple Approach with Gain of 3			24.7100	nF

	Simple Gain Approach	Feedback Approaches		Slow Slew Rate
		Standard	**Alternative**	
A	3	1		
C1	0.8953 nF	0.2984 nF	8.1604 nF	1.0000 nF
C2	23.5859 nF	7.8620 nF	0.3098 nF	8.1604 nF
R2	0.9433 kΩ	2.8300 kΩ	2.6268 kΩ	2.8300 kΩ
C4	0.5600 nF			
C3	0.5079 nF			
R3	1.1048 kΩ			
R4	2.1069 kΩ			

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Chapter 25   Active Loop Filter Using the Differential Phase Detector Outputs

Introduction

This chapter investigates the design and performance of a loop filter designed using the differential phase detector outputs, ϕr and ϕn. In general, modern PLLs have excellent charge pumps on them and it is generally recommended not to bypass it. In doing so, all models concerning phase noise and spurs presented in this book become invalid. In fact, most modern PLLs do not have these differential phase detector outputs. For those who insist on bypassing the charge pump and using these differential outputs, this chapter included.

Loop Filter Topology
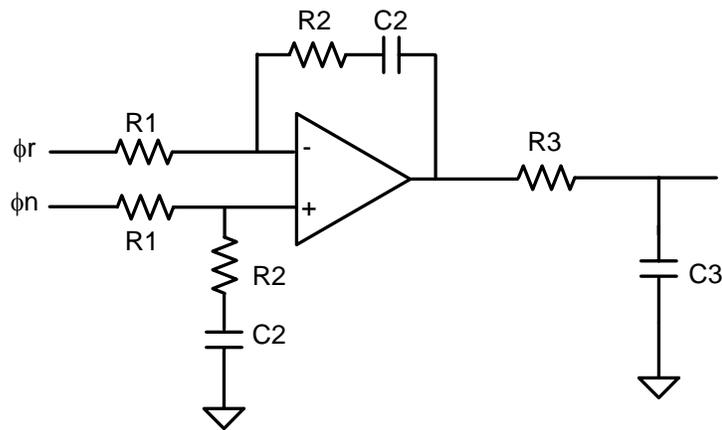
Figure 25.1 *Active Filter Topology Used*

The transfer function of the filter is given by:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet T \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1)} \qquad (25.1)$$

where

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad (25.2)$$

$$T1 = R3 \bullet C3 \qquad (25.3)$$

$$T = R1 \bullet C2 \qquad (25.4)$$

The open loop response is given by:

$$\frac{G(s)}{N} = \frac{Kv \bullet Kvco \bullet (1 + s \bullet T2)}{N \bullet T \bullet s^2 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1)} \qquad (25.5)$$

From the chapter on a second order passive filter, this transfer function has many similarities. If the following substitutions are applied to expression for the open loop response for the second order filter, then the result is the transfer function for this loop filter topology. In these equations, **Kv** represents the maximum voltage output level of the phase detector outputs.

$$T \Rightarrow A0 \qquad (25.6)$$
$$Kv \Rightarrow K\phi$$

The case where **R3 = C3 = 0** presents a special case and has different equations, but is a topology that is sometimes used. This approach will be referred to as the alternative approach, and the case where **T1>0** will be referred to as the standard approach. In either case, the equations for the time constants and filter components are shown in Table 25.1 .

Component	Standard Approach	Alternative Approach
T1	$T1 = \dfrac{sec(\phi) - tan(\phi)}{\omega c}$	*0*
T2	$T2 = \dfrac{1}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1}$	$\omega c \bullet tan\,\phi$
T	$T = \dfrac{Kv \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \bullet \sqrt{\dfrac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2}}$	$T = \dfrac{Kv \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2 \bullet cos\,\phi}$
C2	*Choose this value*	*Choose this value*
R2	$\dfrac{T2}{C2}$	$\dfrac{T2}{C2}$
R1	$\dfrac{T}{C2}$	$\dfrac{T}{C2}$
C3	*Choose this at least four times the VCO input capacitance. Preferably at least 220 pF.*	*0*
R3	$\dfrac{T3}{C3}$	*0*

Table 25.1 *Loop Filter Time Constants and Component Values*

Conclusion

This chapter has presented design equations that can be used with the differential phase detector outputs. This approach is generally not recommended, because it requires an op-amp and most PLLs do not have these differential output pins. The reader should also be very aware of the states of the outputs. For instance, when this type of loop filter is used with National Semiconductor's LMX2301/05/15/20/25 PLLs, it is necessary to invert either ϕr or ϕn.

There are other approaches to loop filter design using these differential outputs. One such approach is to omit the components **R3** and **C3**. In this case, **T1** becomes zero and **T2** becomes $\omega c \bullet tan(\phi)$. This topology is more popular with older PLL designs than newer ones.

The lock time can be predicted with a formula, but the phase noise and spurs for this filter differ than those in a passive filter. The **BasePulseSpur** and **1HzNoiseFloor** are different, since the charge pump has been bypassed.

Reference

AN535   *Phase-Locked Loop Design Fundamentals*   Motorola Semiconductor
        Products, 1970

Chapter 26   Impact of Loop Filter Parameters and Filter Order on Reference Spurs

Introduction

It has been shown that the reference spur levels are directly related to the spur gain, whether they are leakage or pulse dominated. This chapter investigates methods of minimizing the spur gain under various conditions. First, it will be shown why choosing all the pole ratios (**T31**, **T41**,…) equal to one always yields the lowest spur gain filter. Then, the impact of other loop filter design parameters on the spur gain will also be investigated. Recall that in a previous chapter, the impact of various parameters was analyzed in the case that the loop filter was not redesigned.   In this chapter, it will be assumed that the loop filter is redesigned. For instance, having a bigger VCO gain increases spur levels if the loop filter is not redesigned. But, it turns out that it has no impact if the loop filter is redesigned to have the same loop bandwidth.
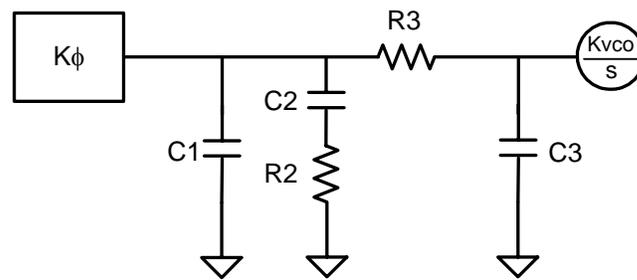
Figure 26.1 *Basic Passive Loop Filter Topology*

Minimization of Spur Gain

Since the spur levels relate directly to the spur gain of the PLL, the problem is therefore reduced to minimizing the spur gain under the constraints of a constant loop bandwidth and phase margin. The poles of the filter will be represented by *Ti*, (*i =1,3,4, …k*). Note that *T2* is the zero of the filter and therefore the index skips over two. The filter order is *k*, which is assumed to be greater than two. *T1(i)* is intended to mean the ratio of pole *Ti* to the pole *T1*. This number can range from zero to one. Note that *T1(1) = 1*. The spur gain at any frequency can be expressed as:

$$|G(\omega)| = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{A0 \bullet \omega^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega^2 \bullet T2^2}{\displaystyle\prod_{i=1,3,4,...k}(1 + \omega^2 \bullet Ti^2)}} \qquad (26.1)$$

However **A0** is not constant. Recall:

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\prod\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k}(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet Ti^2)}}$$

(26.2)

Substituting this in gives the following expression for **G(s)**:

$$|G(s)| = N \bullet \frac{\omega c^2}{\omega^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega^2 \bullet T2^2}{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2} \bullet \prod\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k} \frac{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet Ti^2)}{(1 + \omega^2 \bullet Ti^2)}}$$

(26.3)

The above equation eliminates all of the component values from the equations, but still leaves the time constants to be calculated.   However, there are three approximations that relate the time constants to known design parameters. It therefore follows that the spur gain can be expressed uniquely in terms of design parameters.

$$T1 = \frac{\sec\phi - \tan\phi}{\omega c \bullet \sum\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k} T1(i)}$$

(26.4)

$$Ti = T1 \bullet T1(i) = \frac{\sec\phi - \tan\phi}{\omega c \bullet \sum\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k} T1(i)} \bullet T1(i)$$

(26.5)

$$T2 = \frac{1}{\omega c^2 \bullet \sum\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k} Ti} = \frac{1}{\omega c \bullet (\sec\phi - \tan\phi)}$$

(26.6)

Substituting (26.4), (26.5), and (26.6) into (26.3) yields the spur gain in terms of design parameters.

$$|G(s)| = \frac{N}{r^2} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{r^2 + x^2}{1 + x^2} \bullet \prod\limits_{i=1,3,4,...k} \left[\frac{\left(\sum\limits_{j=1,3,4,...k} T1(j)\right)^2 + T1(i)^2 \bullet x^2}{\left(\sum\limits_{j=1,3,4,...k} T1(j)\right)^2 + T1(i)^2 \bullet x^2 \bullet r^2} \right]}$$

(26.7)

The following terms are defined above:

$$x = \sec\phi - \tan\phi$$

(26.8)

$$r = \frac{Spur\ Frequency}{Loop\ Bandwidth} = \frac{Fspur}{Fc}$$

(26.9)

Since there is a leading $\dfrac{1}{r^2}$ term, it should be clear that the spur gain is minimized for the smallest values of **r**, which corresponds to minimizing the loop bandwidth. Some other things that are a little less obvious are the relationship of spur gain to the parameter **x** and the relationship of spur gain to the poles ratios of the filter. Since **r** can be assumed to be greater than one, it can be shown that (26.7) is a decreasing function in **T1(i)** for **i=1,3,...k**. However, these pole ratios cannot exceed one, since **T1** is by definition the largest pole. From this observation comes the fundamental result that for minimum spur levels, the pole ratios should all be chosen to be one. However, choosing all of the pole ratios to be one can yield a loop filter with a very small capacitor next to the VCO, which can be impacted by the VCO input capacitance. In the case of using the improved design equations for a fourth order filter, this capacitor would be zero. So there is often a good reason why the pole ratios should be chosen less than one.

One can reason from (26.7) that this function is a decreasing function of **/x/**, because if **r > 1**, this makes each one of the fractional parts decreasing functions in **/x/**, therefore the whole function is decreasing in **/x/**. So, for the minimum spur levels, this is equivalent to minimizing (26.8). Going through this exercise shows that this function is an increasing function in ϕ in the interval from 0 to 90 degrees, and therefore minimizing the spur gain corresponds to minimizing the phase margin. However, in practice, the impact of changing the phase margin typically does not have much of an impact on spurs. In the chapter on lock time, the second order function implies that lower phase margins also yield faster lock times. However, computer simulations using the 4th order model show that the phase margin that yields the fastest lock time is usually about 48 degrees. Therefore, it makes sense to design for a phase margin near 48 degrees, because this gives more freedom to adjust the loop bandwidth, which has a far greater impact on spur levels than phase margin.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Symbol	Description	Leakage Dominated Spurs	Mismatch Dominated Spurs
CP_{tri}	Charge Pump Leakage,	$20 \bullet \log(CP_{tri})$	N/A
CP_{mm}	Charge Pump Mismatch	N/A	Correlated to $\|CP_{mm} - Constant\|$
N	N Counter Value	$20 \bullet \log(N)$	$20 \bullet \log(N)$
$Kvco$	VCO Gain	Independent	Independent
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	$40 \bullet \log(Fc)$	$40 \bullet \log(Fc)$
$Fcomp$	Comparison Frequency	$-40 \bullet \log(Fcomp)$	$-40 \bullet \log(Fcomp)$
r	$=Fcomp/Fc$	$-40 \bullet \log(r)$	$-40 \bullet \log(r)$
$K\phi$	Charge Pump Gain	$-10 \bullet \log(K\phi)$	Independent
ϕ	Phase Margin	Weak Inverse Correlation	
$T31$	Ratio of $T3$ to $T1$	Inverse Correlation	

Table 26.1 *Reference Spur Gain vs. Various Loop Filter Parameters*

From Table 26.1 , it follows that the loop bandwidth, comparison frequency, and *N* value have the largest influence on the spur level. If one considers the ratio of the comparison frequency to the loop bandwidth, then this is a rough indicator. The *N* value is also relevant, but is related to the comparison frequency. Larger charge pump gains yield lower leakage dominated spurs, because they yield larger capacitor values in the loop filter. The reader should be very careful to realize that these values assume that the loop filter is redesigned and optimized. If the loop filter is not redesigned, then the results will be very different. These results were derived in a previous chapter.

(26.7), (26.8) , and (26.9) show that the spur gain of a third order filter is approximated by:

$$SG = 20 \bullet log(N) - 40 \bullet log(r)$$
$$+ 10 \bullet log \left| \frac{r^2 + x^2}{1 + x^2} \bullet \frac{(1+T31)^2 + T31^2 \bullet x^2}{(1+T31)^2 + T31^2 \bullet x^2 \bullet r^2} \bullet \frac{(1+T31)^2 + x^2}{(1+T31)^2 + x^2 \bullet r^2} \right| \qquad (26.10)$$

So the *20•log(N)* term shows the clear dependence on *N*, and therefore, Table 26.2 assumes an *N* value of one, to which this *20•log(N)* must be added. Note that these equations assume that the filter is redesigned. If this is not the case, then it turns out that the spurs are not impacted much by the *N* value. The phase margin and *r* values are given. From this, go and find the main block, and then find the corresponding value of the *N=1* normalized spur gain. To this, add *20•log(N)* to get the total spur gain.

		3	5	10	15	20	25	50	100	200	500	1000
							r					
T31 = 0	φ=30	-15.4	-23.6	-35.3	-42.3	-47.3	-51.2	-63.2	-75.2	-87.3	-103.2	-115.2
	φ=40	-14.1	-22.0	-33.6	-40.5	-45.5	-49.3	-61.3	-73.4	-85.4	-101.3	-113.4
	φ=50	-12.9	-20.3	-31.5	-38.4	-43.3	-47.2	-59.2	-71.2	-83.3	-99.2	-111.2
	φ=60	-11.7	-18.4	-29.1	-35.9	-40.8	-44.6	-56.5	-68.6	-80.6	-96.5	-108.6
	φ=70	-10.6	-16.5	-26.1	-32.5	-37.3	-41.1	-52.9	-64.9	-77.0	-92.9	-104.9
T31 = .25	φ=30	-14.9	-23.5	-37.5	-46.8	-53.7	-59.3	-77.0	-94.9	-113.0	-136.8	-154.9
	φ=40	-13.5	-21.6	-34.7	-43.6	-50.3	-55.7	-73.2	-91.1	-109.2	-133.0	-151.1
	φ=50	-12.3	-19.6	-31.8	-40.1	-46.6	-51.8	-69.0	-86.8	-104.8	-128.6	-146.7
	φ=60	-11.2	-17.7	-28.7	-36.3	-42.3	-47.2	-63.8	-81.5	-99.4	-123.2	-141.3
	φ=70	-10.3	-15.9	-25.3	-32.0	-37.3	-41.8	-57.2	-74.3	-92.1	-115.9	-134.0
T31 = .50	φ=30	-14.8	-24.0	-39.2	-49.1	-56.3	-62.0	-79.9	-97.9	-116.0	-139.8	-157.9
	φ=40	-13.4	-21.7	-36.0	-45.5	-52.6	-58.3	-76.1	-94.1	-112.1	-136.0	-154.0
	φ=50	-12.1	-19.5	-32.5	-41.6	-48.5	-54.0	-71.7	-89.6	-107.7	-131.5	-149.6
	φ=60	-11.0	-17.4	-28.9	-37.2	-43.8	-49.1	-66.4	-84.3	-102.3	-126.1	-144.2
	φ=70	-10.2	-15.7	-25.1	-32.2	-38.0	-42.9	-59.4	-77.0	-94.9	-118.8	-136.8
T31 = .75	φ=30	-14.8	-24.2	-39.8	-49.8	-57.1	-62.8	-80.8	-98.8	-116.8	-140.7	-158.8
	φ=40	-13.3	-21.8	-36.4	-46.2	-53.4	-59.1	-76.9	-94.9	-113.0	-136.9	-154.9
	φ=50	-12.0	-19.5	-32.9	-42.2	-49.2	-54.8	-72.5	-90.5	-108.5	-132.4	-150.5
	φ=60	-11.0	-17.4	-29.0	-37.6	-44.3	-49.7	-67.2	-85.1	-103.1	-127.0	-145.0
	φ=70	-10.2	-15.6	-25.1	-32.3	-38.3	-43.3	-60.1	-77.8	-95.8	-119.6	-137.7
T31 = 1.0	φ=30	-14.8	-24.3	-39.9	-50.0	-57.3	-63.0	-80.9	-99.0	-117.0	-140.9	-159.0
	φ=40	-13.3	-21.8	-36.6	-46.3	-53.6	-59.2	-77.1	-95.1	-113.2	-137.0	-155.1
	φ=50	-12.0	-19.5	-32.9	-42.3	-49.4	-54.9	-72.7	-90.7	-108.7	-132.6	-150.7
	φ=60	-11.0	-17.3	-29.1	-37.7	-44.4	-49.8	-67.4	-85.3	-103.3	-127.2	-145.2
	φ=70	-10.2	-15.6	-25.1	-32.4	-38.4	-43.4	-60.3	-78.0	-96.0	-119.8	-137.9

Table 26.2 *Relative N=1 Normalized Spur Gains for a Third Order Filter*

Choosing the Right Filter Order

If one assumes 50 degrees phase margin and takes (26.7) and assumes that all the poles are equal, then the relative attenuation of a filter over a second order filter can be calculated. Some areas are darkly shaded to indicate that the loop filter order is too high and not practical.

		Ratio of Spur Offset Frequency To Loop Bandwidth					
		1000	100	50	20	10	5
Loop Filter Order	3	39.4	19.5	13.5	6.0	1.4	-1.0
	4	74.2	34.3	22.5	8.2	0.6	-1.9
	5	105.9	46.1	28.6	8.5	-0.7	-2.7

Table 26.3 *Spur Improvement for Various Order Filters Above a Second Order Filter*

Although the table does contain some approximations, it does establish an upper estimate for the attenuation that can be achieved. Notice that when the comparison frequency is large relative to the loop bandwidth, there is much more advantage in building higher order filters. Of course in these cases, spurs are often not as much of an issue. The chart also implies that a third order loop filter (two poles) only makes sense if the comparison frequency is at least ten times the loop bandwidth. Although the maximum attenuation is for the case when $T1 = T3 = ... = Tk$, it sometimes makes sense to design for $T1 > T3 > ... > Tk$, in order to keep the capacitors large enough as to not be distorted by the VCO input capacitance and to better justify the approximations made.

Choosing $T31$ for a Third Order Filter

Although a larger $T31$ value always yields theoretically lower spur levels, there is a point at which increasing $T31$ yields diminishing returns for spur improvement, but the capacitor $C3$ approaches zero and the resistor $R3$ approaches infinity. Below is a table that shows what value of $T31$ is necessary to be 0.5 dB less than the theoretical maximum. This table was compiled for a gamma value of one and a phase margin of 50 degrees. The consequence of these findings is that they show that if one chooses $T31$ to be 62.2%, then most of the theoretical benefit of using a third order filter will be realized.

r=10	r=20	r=50	r=100	r=infinite
46.0%	58.6%	61.6%	62.0%	62.2%

*Table 26.4 Minimum **T31** Value Needed to Be Within 0.5 dB of the Maximum Benefit*

Choosing $T31$ and $T43$ for a 4th Order Filter

For the sake of simplicity, $T43$ is defined as follows:

$$T43 = \frac{T41}{T31}$$

(26.11)

This requires a little bit more analysis than the third order filter. If one tries to get within 0.5 dB of the theoretical maximum spur benefit, then the component values will almost always be negative. It's not obvious what the trade-off is between $T31$, $T43$, spur gain, and the capacitor $C4$. Although a detailed theoretical analysis of this would be almost impossible, a computer simulation is much more feasible. The table below shows the range of $T31$ and $T43$ values that allow one to get within 2 dB of the theoretical maximum benefit of using a 4th order filter. The shaded areas indicate that there is no $T31$ value which can get the spur gain within 2 dB of the theoretical minimum value.

		r Value			
		r=10	r=20	r=50	r=100
T43 Value	0.1				
	0.2				
	0.3		71.3		
	0.4		59.2	95.9	
	0.5		**52.0**	71.5	75.0
	0.6		47.0	**60.5**	**62.7**
	0.7		43.2	53.9	55.4
	0.8		40.3	49.4	50.7
	0.9		38.0	46.1	47.2
	1.0		36.0	43.6	44.6

*Figure 26.2 **T31** value as a percentage as a function of **T43** and r values that attain a spur gain 2 dB less than the theoretical minimum.*

To better explain the above table, consider the following example with a 4th order loop filter and a comparison frequency of 200 kHz and a fixed loop bandwidth of 4 kHz. Assume a phase margin of 50 degrees and a gamma factor of one. In this case, r=50 and a 4th order loop filter can theoretically improve spurs by 22.5 dB above a second order filter. If one designs for a **T31** value of 71.5% and a **T43** value of 50%, then one will achieve all but 2 db of this benefit. In other words, one can get a 20.5 dB benefit from using a 4th order loop filter over a 2nd order loop filter. However, one can achieve the same spur benefit choosing **T31** as 46.1% and **T43** as 90%. In fact, there is a whole continuous range of **T31** and **T43** values which fit this description. Which one is best? The optimal choice would be the one that maximizes the value for **C4**. By trial and error, the values in bold in the table have been found to maximize the value for **C4**.   In other words, a **T31** value of 60.5% and a **T43** value of 60% would be the best choice for the table. In general, choosing **T31** = **T43** is not exactly the constraint that optimizes **C4**, but serves as a very good rule of thumb. Note that if **T31** and **T43** are chosen too large, then the component values will be negative. So an excellent starting point is to choose **T31** = **T43** = 50%. If the *r* value is 50 or higher, then perhaps this can be increased to 60%.

Comment Regarding Active Filters

For active filters, it actually makes sense to choose **T31**>100%. In this case, the results are the reciprocal of what has been obtained. For instance, the result that if one chooses **T31**=62.2% will sacrifice at most 0.5 dB in spurs relative to choosing **T31** = 100% corresponds to saying that if one chooses 100% < **T31** < 160.8% will sacrifice at most 0.5 dB in spurs.

Conclusion

This chapter investigated the impact of designing loop filters of higher than second order and when it makes sense to do so. One fundamental result is that the lowest reference spurs occur when the pole ratios are chosen equal to one. However, choosing all pole ratios equal to one can yield very small capacitor values next the VCO, which are easily be impacted by the VCO input capacitance. If one is designing a fourth order filter using the improved calculations, this would imply that *C4 = 0*. Another result was derived that illustrated that there is not much point to make *T31* much larger than 62.2% for a third order filter. In the case of a fourth order filter, this result is a little more complicated. When presented with a situation where the spur to be filtered is less than $1/10^{th}$ of the loop bandwidth, higher order filters do not help much, so it might make more sense to use the Fastlock feature or a switched mode filter.

Chapter 27   Optimal   Choices   for   Phase   Margin   and   Gamma Optimization Parameter

Introduction

This chapter investigates how to choose the phase margin and gamma optimization parameter (γ) in an optimal way. The gamma optimization parameter is the key to designing loop filters in an optimal way. It is possible to design two second order loop filters with the exact phase margin and loop bandwidth and still have one which has dramatically better lock time and spurs. The difference would be in the gamma optimization parameter. Many previous loop filter design techniques assume a gamma value of one, which is a good starting point, but there is further room for optimization. The optimal choice for gamma is dependent on the phase margin.   For this reason, it is necessary to study the gamma optimization parameter and phase margin together.

Definition of the Gamma Optimization Parameter

If one imposes the design constraint that the phase margin is maximized at the loop bandwidth, then this is equivalent to designing for a gamma value of one. Imposing this restriction yields the following equation:

$$\frac{T2}{1+\omega c^2 \bullet T2^2} = \frac{T1}{1+\omega c^2 \bullet T1^2} + \frac{T3}{1+\omega c^2 \bullet T3^2} + \frac{T4}{1+\omega c^2 \bullet T4^2} \tag{27.1}$$

This can be approximated as:

$$T2 = \frac{1}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1+T3+T4)} \tag{27.2}$$

However, since choosing the phase margin to be optimized at the loop bandwidth is a good approximation to minimizing the lock time, but not the exact constraint, it makes sense to generalize this constraint. By introducing the variable, γ, but still keeping the equation in a similar form, one has a good idea of what values to try for this new variable. The new constraint can be stated as follows:

$$\frac{1}{\omega c^2 \bullet T2} = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1+T3+T4)} \tag{27.3}$$

Eliminating and Normalizing Out Other Design Parameters

In the lock time chapter, recall that is was proven that, provided that only the loop bandwidth was changed, the lock time was inversely proportional to the loop bandwidth. What this means is that whatever choice of phase margin and gamma are optimal for one loop bandwidth, is also optimal for another loop bandwidth. The VCO gain, *N* value, and charge pump gain change the filter components, but have no impact on lock time, provided the loop filter is redesigned. So the only thing left to study is the pole ratios, phase margin, and gamma optimization factor. Now it will turn out that the pole ratios will have a small impact on the gamma parameter choice, and the phase margin will have the largest impact.

Results of Computer Simulations

It also turns out that the size of the frequency jump has a slight impact on the lock time, but this effect is minimal. So the approach is to assume fixed conditions for the frequency jump and tolerance, and then compile tables for the optimal gamma value based on computer simulations that cover all cases. Below are the conditions used to simulate the Gamma Parameters

Parameter	Value	Units
Kϕ	5	*mA*
Kvco	20	*MHz/Volt*
Fc	10	*kHz*
Fcomp	200	*kHz*
Phi	Variable	*Degrees*
Frequency Jump	800 – 900	*MHz*
Frequency Tolerance for Lock Time	1	*kHz*
N	4500	*n/a*

Table 27.1 *Conditions for Simulations*

First Simulation: Impact of Gamma Value and Phase Margin on Lock Time
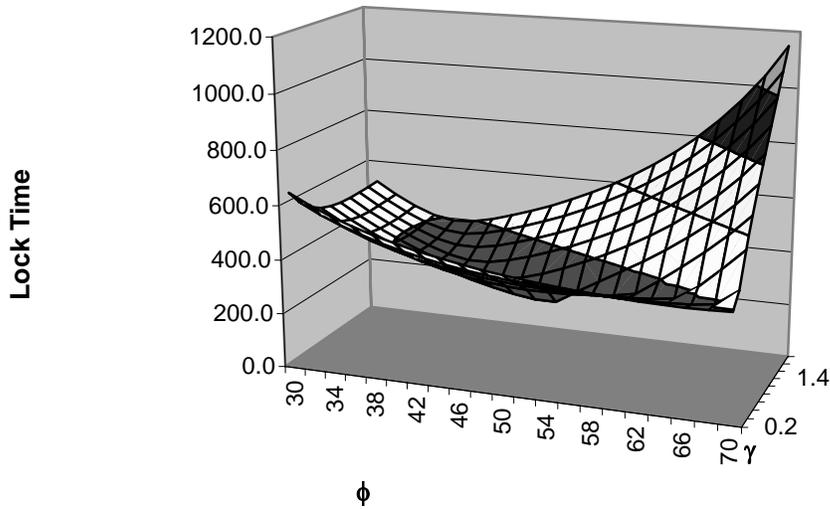
Figure 27.1   *Lock Time as a Function of Phase Margin and Gamma*

Figure 27.1 shows the lock time for this loop filter as a function of phase margin and the Gamma optimization parameter for a second order filter. There is a specific value of gamma and phase margin that minimize the lock time. Later in this chapter, this will be shown to be a phase margin of 50.8 degrees and a gamma value of 1.0062.

The figure above shows the impact of phase margin and gamma on spur gain. The spur gain does not have a minimum point. As the phase margin is decreased and the gamma value is increased, the spur gain decreases. However, the impact of phase margin and gamma on spur gain is much less than the impact of phase margin and gamma on lock time, so it makes sense to choose the phase margin and gamma value such that lock time is minimized.
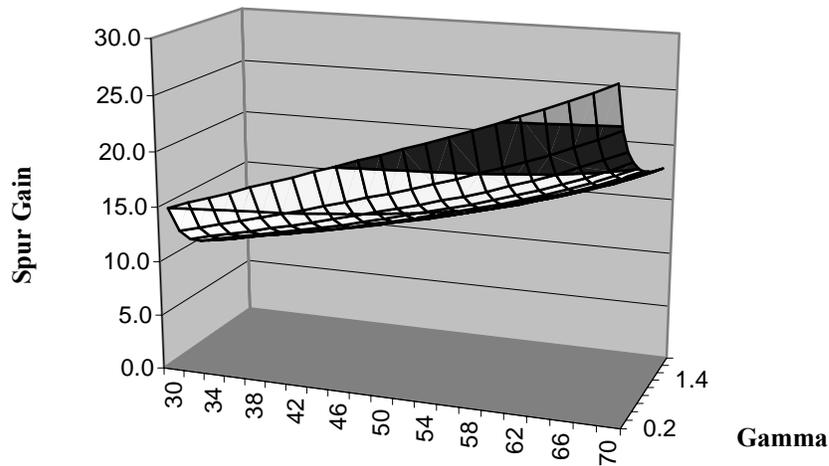
Figure 27.2 *Spur Gain as a Function of Phase Margin and Gamma*

T31	Phi	Gamma	LT	SG
%	*Deg*	*n/a*	*μS*	*dB*
0	50.8	1.006	246.4	29.9
10	49.8	1.045	243.3	28.7
20	49.0	1.075	240.6	26.6
30	48.2	1.098	238.3	24.8
40	47.8	1.115	236.4	23.7
50	47.4	1.127	235.0	22.9
60	47.1	1.136	233.9	22.4
70	47.0	1.141	233.2	22.0
80	47.0	1.144	232.8	21.9
90	46.7	1.147	232.5	21.7
100	46.8	1.147	232.4	21.7

Table 27.2 *Gamma and Phase Margin Values that Minimize Lock Time*

The above table shows how to choose gamma and the phase margin in order to minimize lock time. These numbers may vary slightly if the frequency jump or frequency tolerance for lock time is changed. One thing that this does not take into consideration is the spur gain. The next simulation does this.

Second Simulation: Optimal Choice of Phase Margin and Gamma to Give the Best Trade-Off Between Lock Time and Spurs

For most designs, it is more realistic to try to minimize lock time while keeping the spur levels constant. Although the loop bandwidth is the most dominant factor, phase margin and the gamma optimization parameter have some impact on spurs. Since lock time and spurs are a trade off, the following table tries to consider both of these by minimizing the following index:

$$Index = 40 \bullet Log \left| \frac{Lock\,Time}{100\,uS} \right| + Spur\,Gain \qquad (27.4)$$

T31	Phi	Gamma	LT	SG
%	Deg	n/a	μS	dB
0	49.2	1.024	249.9	29.5
10	46.8	1.081	252.9	27.6
20	44.5	1.144	258.8	24.6
30	43.7	1.168	257.6	22.8
40	43.2	1.184	255.9	21.6
50	42.5	1.203	257.0	20.6
60	42.5	1.204	254.2	20.2
70	42.2	1.212	254.3	19.8
80	42.5	1.207	251.7	19.8
90	42.4	1.209	251.6	19.7
100	42.3	1.211	251.9	19.6

Table 27.3 *Optimal Choices for Phase Margin and Gamma*

The table above is the fundamental result for this chapter. The bottom line is that one should choose **T31** as high as realistically possible for the best lock time and spur performance. Once this parameter is chosen, then the optimal value for phase margin and Gamma can be found from the table. Note that if the frequency jump or tolerance is changed, these numbers change slightly, but this effect is small and can be disregarded for practical purposes. The **T43** ratio was not included because the simulation tool used to generate this table could not model the lock time for this without approximations.

Impact of Phase Margin on Peaking and Flatness

For a stable loop filter with real positive components, it is necessary to design with a phase margin greater than zero degrees and less than 90 degrees. So far, it has been assumed that the goal has been to minimize the spurs and/or lock time. However, there are situations where this is not the driving requirement. Sometimes, the PLL is modulated with information, and it is most important to make the filter response as flat as possible. Another possibility is that the design objective is to minimize the amount of peaking in the filter response and minimize the RMS phase error. In these situations, it makes sense to design for as high of a phase margin as feasible as demonstrated. Figure 27.3 demonstrates this with a second order filter with a 10 kHz loop bandwidth and a gamma optimization factor of one.
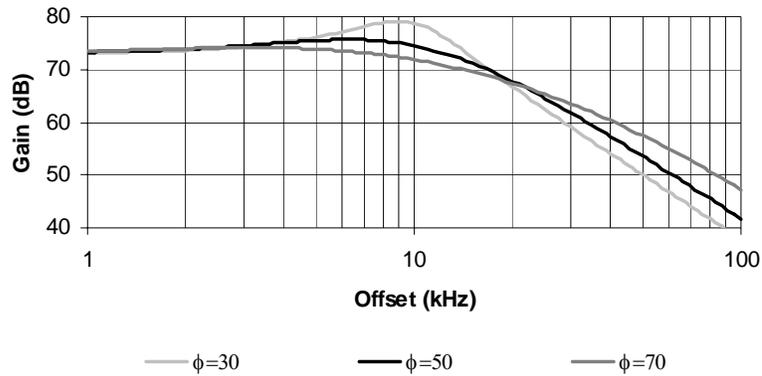
Figure 27.3 *Closed Loop Response vs. Phase Margin*

It is very common that the peaking seen on a spectrum analyzer is really due to the peaking in the loop filter response, but rather it is the VCO noise cropping into the loop bandwidth. Designing for higher phase margins also helps suppress the VCO noise at the loop bandwidth as illustrated in Figure 27.4 .
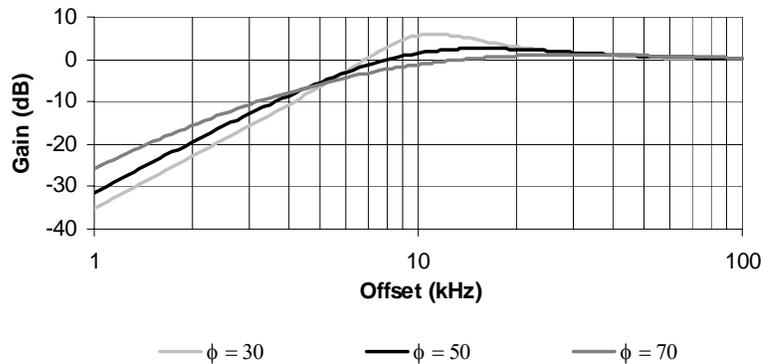
Figure 27.4 *VCO Transfer Function Gain vs. Phase Margin*

Impact of Phase Margin on Stability

The phase margin is related to the stability of the system and a higher phase margin implies more stability. Recall that the closed loop transfer function is of the form:

$$CL(s) = \frac{G(s)}{1 + \frac{G(s)}{N}} \qquad (27.5)$$

Of special interest is at the point where the magnitude of $G(s)/N = 1$, which is the loop bandwidth frequency. The phase of $G(s)/N$ evaluated at the loop bandwidth is also of interest. If this phase is 180 degrees, then the transfer function would have an infinite value and would be unstable. If the phase were zero degrees, then there would be a minimal amount of peaking and maximum stability. Phase margin is therefore defined as the amount of margin on the phase which would be 180 degrees minus the phase of $G(j \bullet \omega c)/N$. In practice, loop filters with less than 20 degrees phase margin are likely to show instability problems and filters above 80 degrees phase margin have yield components that unrealistic because they are too large, or are negative. The exception is the second order loop filter, which theoretically is stable at phase margins down to, but not including zero degrees.

Impact of Gamma Optimization Parameter on Peaking and Flatness

If there is a lot of margin on lock time, then designing for a gamma optimization parameter higher than what is theoretically optimal for lock time might make sense. By doing so, it increases the flatness of the filter. It also pushes the point where the VCO noise transfer function peaks beyond the loop bandwidth. This is useful in situations where the VCO noise is causing the majority of the peaking. Also, in the case that part of the loop filter is partially integrated, this might make sense. Figure 27.5 shows that increasing gamma slightly decreases peaking of the loop filter response and spurs outside the loop bandwidth. However, if gamma is made large, it degrades lock time severely. If one was willing to degrade lock time severely, then the loop bandwidth could be decreased for a much greater improvement in spurs. However, this may not make sense in situations where minimum RMS phase error or maximum flatness are desired.
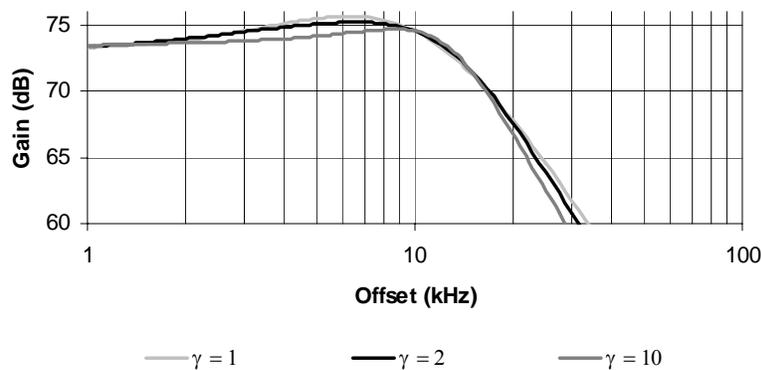
Figure 27.5 Impact of Gamma Optimization Factor On Closed Loop Gain
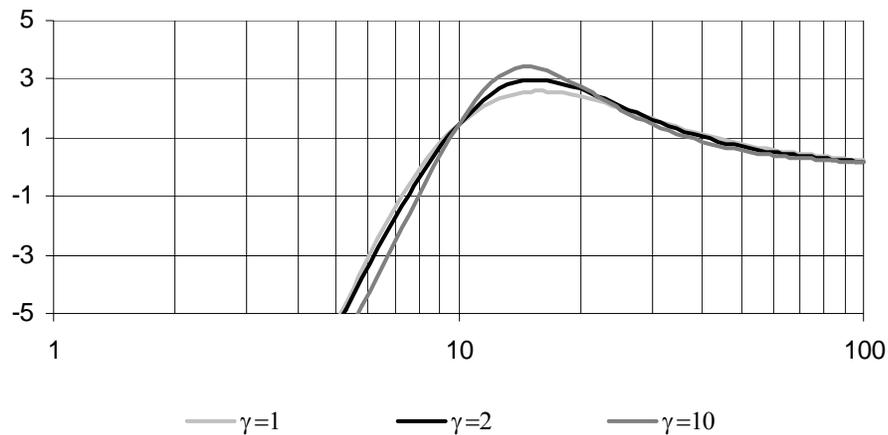
Figure 27.6 *Impact of Gamma VCO Transfer Function Gain*

Typically, the VCO noise, PLL noise, and resistor noises peak close to the same frequency. However, when gamma is made much larger than one, these noise sources can peak at different frequencies, making the spectrum look more flat. However, this is more due to noise shaping, instead of simply making the PLL more stable or PLL response less flat.

Conclusion

Optimal choices for the phase margin and gamma optimization factor have been discussed. In most situations, the design objective is a trade-off between lock time and spurs. By simply choosing gamma in an optimal way instead of just equal to one, lock time can be dramatically improved by up to 30% while simultaneously reducing the spur gain. This is done with the restriction that the loop bandwidth is constant. This assumes that spur and lock time reduction is the goal.

However, in some situations, the design objective is to make the loop filter response as flat as possible and/or reduce the RMS phase error. In these situations, it may make sense to sacrifice lock time by designing for a much higher phase margin and gamma optimization factor than one would do if they were optimizing for spurs and lock time. However, doing so massively can massively degrade lock time.

Chapter 28   Using Fastlock and Cycle Slip Reduction

Introduction

In PLL design, there is a classical trade-off between faster switching time and lower reference spurs. If one increases the loop bandwidth, then the lock time decreases at the expense of increasing the spur levels. If one decreases the loop bandwidth, the spurs decrease at the expense of increasing the lock time. The concept of Fastlock is to use a wide loop bandwidth when switching frequencies, and then switch a narrow loop bandwidth when not switching frequencies. Fastlock can also be used in situations where lock time and RMS phase error are traded off, or in situations where lock time and phase noise outside the loop bandwidth are traded off.

Fastlock Description

Fastlock is a feature of some PLLs that allows a wide loop bandwidth to be used for locking frequencies, and a narrower one to be used in the steady state. This can be used to reduce the spur levels, or phase noise outside the loop bandwidth. Fastlock is typically intended for a second order filter. It can be used in higher order loop filter designs, but the pole ratios (*T31*, *T41*, and so on) need to be small, otherwise, when the wider loop bandwidth is switched in, the filter becomes very unoptimized and the lock time increases. For this reason, this chapter focuses only on the use of Fastlock for a second order design.
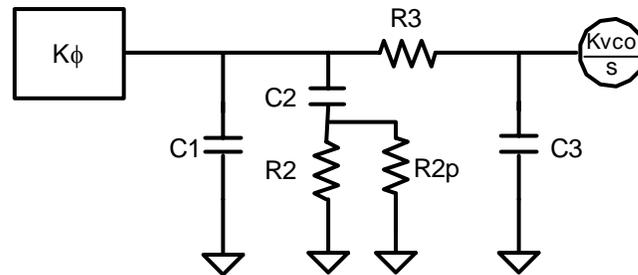
Figure 28.1 *Second Order Filter Using Fastlock*

When the PLL is in the locked state, charge pump gain *Kφ* is used and resistor *R2p* is not grounded, therefore having no impact. When the PLL switches frequency, the charge pump gain is increased by a factor of M^2 to *Kφ** . Resistor *R2p* is also switched in parallel with *R2*, making the total resistance *R2** = *R2 || R2p* = *R2/M*. Recall that the loop filter impedance for the second order filter is given by:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{s \bullet (C1 + C2) \bullet \left(1 + s \bullet \dfrac{C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2}{C1 + C2}\right)} = \frac{1 + s \bullet T2}{s \bullet A0 \bullet (1 + s \bullet T1)} \qquad (28.1)$$

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad\qquad (28.2)$$

$$T1 = \frac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{A0}$$

$$A0 = C1 + C2$$

	Normal Mode	Fastlock Mode
M	$\sqrt{\dfrac{K\phi\,*}{K\phi}}$	$\sqrt{\dfrac{K\phi\,*}{K\phi}}$
R2p	$\dfrac{R2}{M-1}$	$\dfrac{R2}{M-1}$
Equivalent Resistance, R2*	$R2$	$\dfrac{R2}{M}$
Charge Pump Gain	$K\phi$	$K\phi*$
Zero T2	$T2$	$\dfrac{T2}{M}$
Pole T1	$T1$	$\dfrac{T1}{M}$
Loop Bandwidth	Fc	$M \bullet Fc$
Theoretical Lock Time	LT	$\dfrac{LT}{M}$

Table 28.1 *Comparison of Filter Parameters between Normal Mode and Fastlock Mode*

From the above table, one could conclude that if the charge pump was normally 1 mA, and then was switched to 4 mA, **M** would be two and there would be a theoretical 50% improvement in lock time. Another way of thinking about this is that the loop bandwidth could be decreased to half of its original value, thus making a theoretical 12 dB improvement in reference spurs. However, this disregards the fact that there is a glitch when Fastlock is disengaged, and this glitch can be very significant.

The Fastlock Disengagement Glitch

Cause and Behavior of the Glitch

When the Fastlock is disengaged, a frequency glitch is created. This glitch can be caused by parasitic capacitances in the switch that switches out the resistor **R2p**, and also imperfections in charge pump. When the switch is disengaged, a small current is injected into the loop filter. It therefore follows that the size of the glitch is loop filter and PLL specific. One possible way to simulate the glitch is to model the unwanted charge injected into the loop filter as a delta function times a proportionality constant.   From this, one can see why the glitch size is greater for an unoptimized filter and inversely proportional to charge pump gain, assuming an optimized loop filter of fixed loop bandwidth. Experimental results show

that the ratio, **M**, does not have much impact on this glitch, only the charge pump gain used in the steady state. For instance, if the charge pump gain was 100 uA in normal mode and 800 uA in Fastlock mode, then the glitch caused by disengaging Fastlock would be the same if the current was increased from 100 uA to 1600 uA in Fastlock mode.

The glitch also decreases as the loop bandwidth decreases.   This can yield some unanticipated results.   For instance, one would think that a loop filter with 2 kHz loop bandwidth using Fastlock would take twice the time to lock as one with a 4 kHz loop bandwidth using Fastlock. However, it could lock faster than this since the Fastlock glitch for the 2 kHz loop filter is less. In other words, the 4 kHz loop bandwidth filter would lock faster than the 2 kHz loop filter, but maybe not twice as fast. Increasing the capacitor **C1** or the pole ratios decrease the glitch, while increasing **C2** makes the glitch slightly larger.

Switching from 680 – 768 MHz	Switching from 768 – 680 MHz
This shows a lock time of 233 uS and a Fastlock glitch of 10.4 kHz	*This shows a lock time of 189 uS and a Fastlock glitch of 8.4 kHz*
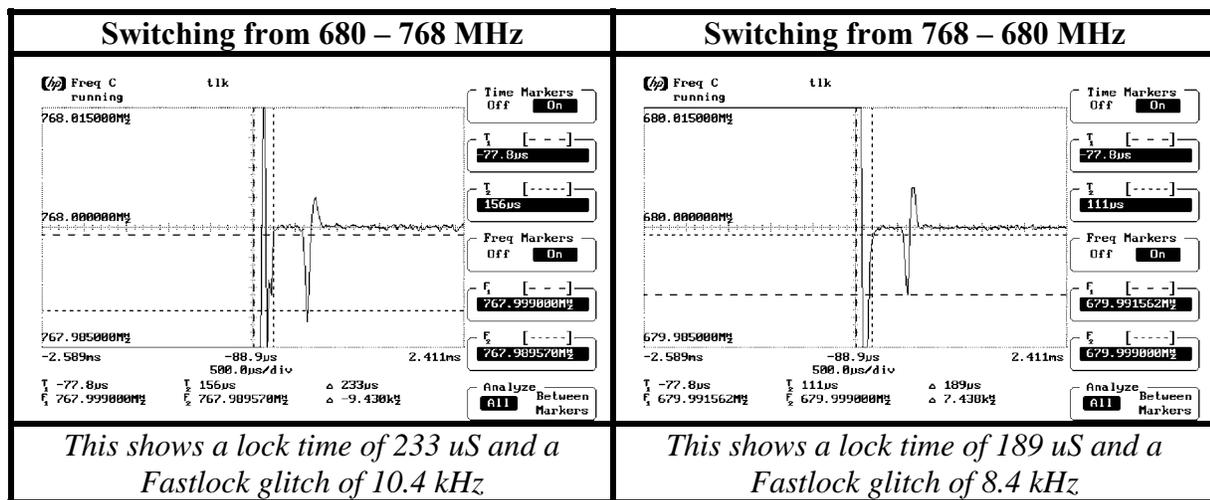
Figure 28.2 *Fastlock Disengagement Glitch*

Optimal Timing for Fastlock Disengagement

For optimal lock time, the Fastlock should be disengaged at a time such that the magnitude of this glitch is about the magnitude of the ringing of the PLL transient response. If Fastlock is disengaged too early, then the full benefits of the Fastlock are not realized.   If it is disengaged too late, then the settle time for the glitch becomes too large of a proportion of the lock time. Figure 28.2 shows the lock time when the Fastlock glitch is taken into consideration.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Switching from 680 – 768 MHz	Switching from 768 – 680 MHz
This shows a composite lock time of 378 uS with a Fastlock timeout of 100 uS	*This shows a composite lock time of 300 uS with a Fastlock timeout of 100 uS*
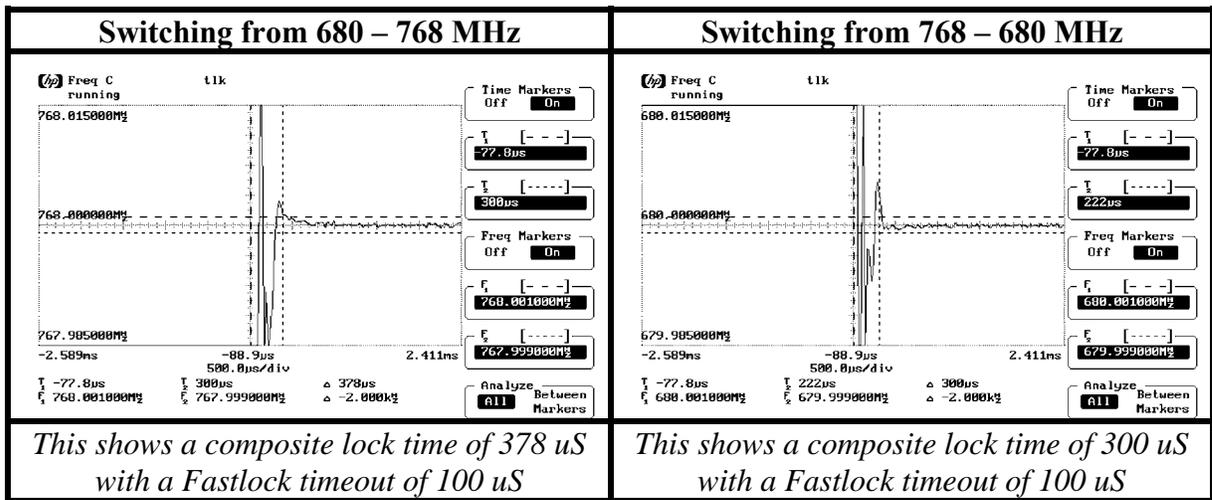
Figure 28.3 *Lock Time Using Optimal Fastlock Timeout of 100 uS*

Disadvantages of Using Fastlock

Increased In-Band Phase Noise

Since Fastlock requires that a higher current is switched in during frequency acquisition, this requires that the PLL is run in less than the highest current mode. Recall from the phase noise chapter that the in-band phase noise is typically better for the higher charge pump gain.

Higher Order Loop Filters

Another disadvantage of using Fastlock is that if one builds a third or higher order filter with much considerable spur attenuation, then it is likely not to work well with Fastlock. Fastlock is most effective for second order loop filters, or higher order filters with small pole ratios.

Benefits of Using Fastlock

$M = \sqrt{\dfrac{K\phi *}{K\phi}}$	Loop Bandwidth Increase	Theoretical Lock Time Reduction	$R2$p
2:1	2 X	50 %	$R2$
3:1	3 X	67 %	$\dfrac{R2}{2}$
4:1	4 X	75 %	$\dfrac{R2}{3}$
M:1	M X	$100 \bullet \left(1 - \dfrac{1}{M}\right)$ %	$\dfrac{R2}{M-1}$

Table 28.2 *Theoretical Benefits of Using Fastlock*

The theoretical benefits of using Fastlock presented in the above table should be interpreted as theoretical best-case numbers for expected improvement, since they disregard the glitch caused when disengaging Fastlock. Typically, in the type of Fastlock when the charge pump current is increased from 1X to 4 X (***M=2***), the actual benefit of using Fastlock is typically about 30%. In the type of Fastlock where the charge pump current is increased from 1X to 16X (***M=4***), the actual benefit of using Fastlock is typically closer to a 50% improvement. These typical numbers are based on National Semiconductor's LMX2330 and LMX2350 PLL families.

Cycle Slip Reduction

When the comparison frequency exceeds about 100 times the loop bandwidth, cycle slipping starts to become a factor in lock time. One technique used by some parts from National Semiconductor involves increasing the charge pump current and decreasing the comparison frequency by the same factor. In this case, all off the loop filter parameters remain the same, but cycle slipping is greatly reduced. This technique works very well in practice. Cycle slip reduction helps to improve the peak time. Normally, the peak time should be about 20% of the total lock time, but if cycle slipping is a problem, it can be the most dominant contributor to lock time. The next several figures show the impact of cycle slip reduction.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Peak Time with Cycle Slip Reduction
Positive peak time using cycle slip reduction is 151 uS. Note the cycle slip. The frequency overshoot is 7.1 MHz. The cycle slip reduction factor was 16, which means the charge pump current is increased, and the comparison frequency is decreased by a factor of 16 during frequency acquisition. For this case Fc=10kHz, **Fcomp** = 20MHz/16

Peak Time without Cycle Slip Reduction
The peak time without using Fastlock is a whopping 561 uS due to excessive cycle slipping. Note that the overshoot is only 1.8 MHz. This is due to distortion caused by the cycle slipping. For this case,
Fc=10kHz, **Fcomp**=20MHz..

Figure 28.4 *Impact of Cycle Slip Reduction On Peak Time*

	Lock Time with Cycle Slip Reduction Positive lock time from 2400 to 2480 MHz with cycle slip reduction is to a 1 kHz tolerance is 486 uS. For this case, Fc = 10kHz, $Fcomp$ = 20MHz/16
	Lock Time without Cycle Slip Reduction Negative lock time from 2480 to 2400 MHz to a 1 kHz tolerance is 491 uS. For this case, Fc = 10kHz, $Fcomp$ = 20MHz/16.
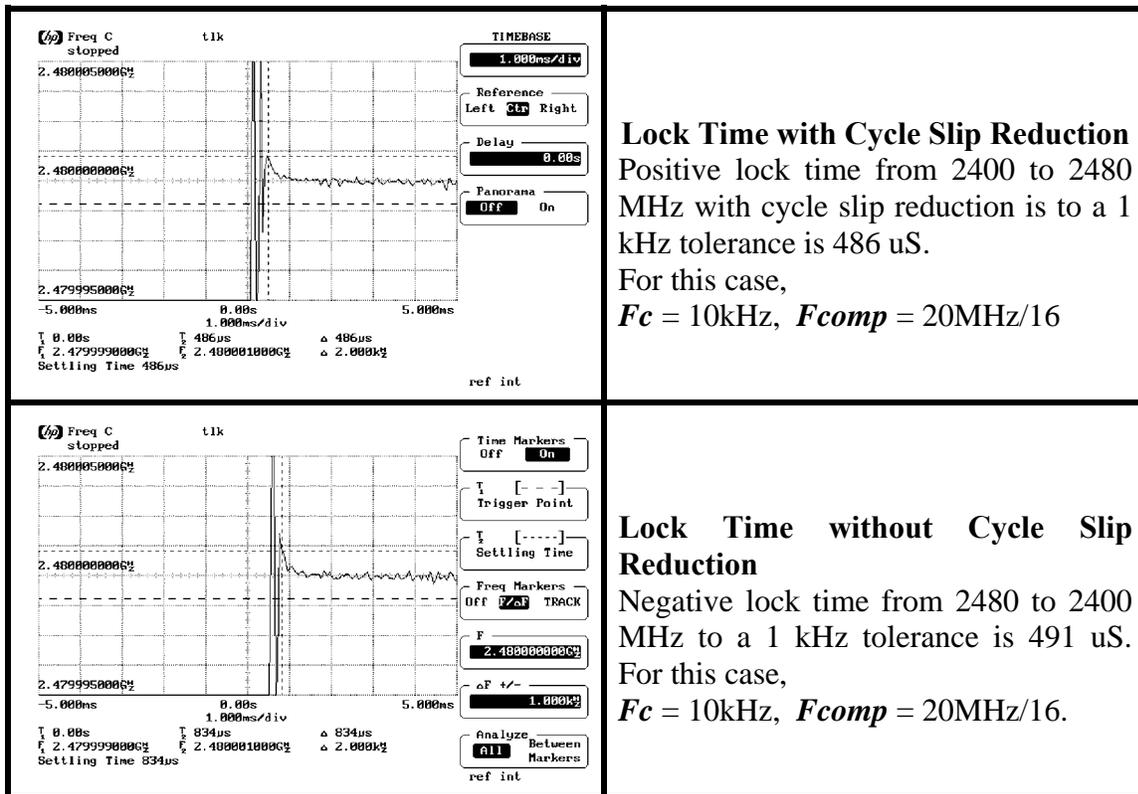
Figure 28.5 *Impact of Cycle Slip Reduction on Total Lock Time*

Conclusion

Fastlock is most beneficial in applications where the frequency offset of the most troublesome spur is less than ten times the loop bandwidth. In these situations, higher order filters have little real impact on the spur. As the spur offset frequency becomes farter from the carrier, higher order filters become more practical. An important issue with Fastlock is the glitch created by when it is disengaged. This is application specific, but it can take a significant portion of the lock time.

References

Davis, Craig, et.al.   A Fast Locking Scheme for PLL Frequency Synthesizers. National Semiconductor AN-1000

Chapter 29   Switched and Multimode Loop Filter Design

Introduction

In some cases, a PLL the same PLL can be used to support multiple modes and frequencies. For instance, some VCOs have a band switch pin that change the frequency band in which they operate. Another example would be a cellular phone that needs a loop filter that supports both the CDMA and AMPS standards.   The phase noise, spur, and lock time requirements may be drastically different for these different standards.   This chapter explores various types of switched filters.

Loop Gain Constant

The concept used in many switched filters is to keep the loop gain constant.

$$K = K\phi \bullet Kvco/N \tag{29.1}$$

If the loop gain constant is held the same, and the loop filter components are not changed, then the phase margin, loop bandwidth, gamma optimization factor, and pole ratios will all remain unchanged.

The No Work Switched Filter

The switched filter can be classified by the amount of extra work that is required.   This means that it is not necessary to adjust the charge pump gain or the comparison frequency. In some cases, there may be two different VCOs. For the higher frequency VCO, the N value is higher, but the VCO gain might track this reasonably well, so that it is not really necessary to re-design the loop filter. In other cases, it might be that the requirements are lax enough that it is not worth the effort of switching in an additional loop filter. If considering using this approach, the second order loop filter is often a good choice because it is more resistant to changes in the loop gain.

The No Switched Component Filter

In this case, the VCO gain and N value do not track well.   Many PLLs have different charge pump current settings. In this case, the charge pump current can sometimes be used. For instance, consider an integer PLL that has a 900 MHz output frequency, but has two modes. The first mode has 30 kHz channel spacing and the second one has 50 kHz channel spacing. So for the mode with 30 kHz channel spacing, if the charge pump current can be roughly adjusted to 5/3 of the value in the other mode, all loop filter characteristics will be preserved.

Using the Fastlock Resistor for Switched Filters

In this case, the loop gain constant changes too much to ignore. Switching in a Fastlock resistor in parallel with **R2** serves as a quick remedy. In this case, the loop bandwidth may change, but the loop filter stays optimized.

The Full Switched Mode Filter

For this case, a new filter is switched in parallel with the old filter. The most common strategy for using this method is to have one filter with a faster lock time requirement, and one with a slower lock time requirement. For the mode with fast lock time, the other filter is not switched in. For the mode with the slower lock time and better spectral performance, a second loop filter is switched in with components that swamp out the other components.
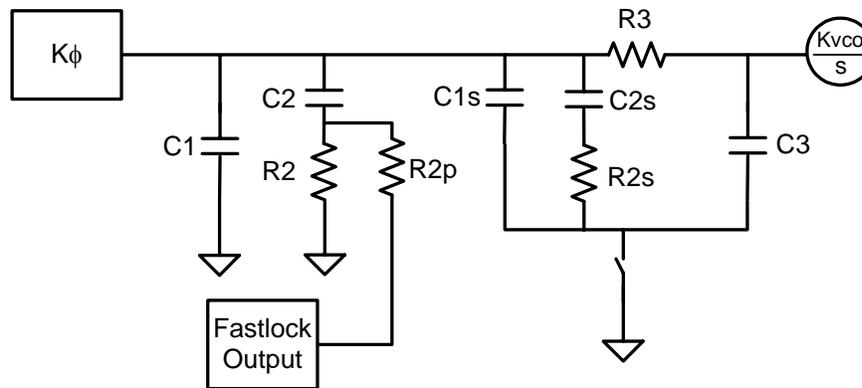
Figure 29.1 *Full Switched Loop Filter*

The strategy with this loop filter design is first to design **C1**, **C2**, **R2**, and **R2**p (Fastlock Resistor) for the mode with fast switching speed. The impact of all the other components is negligible because the switch to ground is off. The components **C3**, **C1s**, **C2s**, and **R2s** add in parallel to **R3** in order to reduce the resistor noise due to this component. In the mode with the more narrow loop bandwidth, the switch to ground is on and **R3** and **C3** form the extra pole for the filter.

Once the filter is designed for the fast mode, then another traditional filter is designed for the slow switching mode. Denote these components with the 'd' suffix. So, **R2d** is the desired component value in slow mode for a non-switched filter. When the switch is grounded, **C1** and **C1s** add together. The transfer function formed by **C2**, **C2s**, **R2**, and **R2s** is as follows:

$$Z(s) = \frac{1 + s \bullet (C2 \bullet R2 + C2s \bullet R2s) + s^2 \bullet C2 \bullet C2s \bullet R2 \bullet R2s}{s \bullet (C2 + C2s) + s^2 \bullet C2 \bullet C2s \bullet (R2 + R2s)} \qquad (29.2)$$

By observing the numerator, it should be apparent that the final transfer function will have a factor of s^2. Because of this, there is no hope of achieving the exact transfer function. Looking at the first term in the denominator, it can be seen that **C2** and **C2s** add to make **C2d**. For **R2**, the middle term should resemble **R2d•C2d**. Now the **C2•R2** makes the

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

calculated value for *R2s* smaller, but the s^2 term would make this smaller. Because these are both second order effects and they roughly cancel out, they can both be neglected. In practice, this approximation seems to work reasonably well. As for *R3s* and *C3s*, all the calculations have been made so far to make the second order part of the loop filter as close as possible, so it makes sense to make these equal to their design target values. Applying all of these concepts, the switched components can be solved for.

$$C1s = C1d - C1 \qquad\qquad (29.3)$$

$$C2s = C2d - C2 \qquad\qquad (29.4)$$

$$C3s = C3d \qquad\qquad (29.5)$$

$$R2s = \frac{R2d \bullet C2d}{C2s} \qquad\qquad (29.6)$$

$$R3s = R3d \qquad\qquad (29.7)$$

Note that the way that these switched component values are calculated is by calculating what the equivalent impedance of the loop filter would be with the components switched together and then solving for the switched values. For instance, capacitor *C1* and *C1s* add to get *C1d*. From this, it is easy to solve for *C1s*. Some coarse approximations have been used, so there could definitely be some benefit to tweaking the components manually.

Example of a Full Switched Filter

Symbol	Units	Fast Filter	Ideal Slow Filter	Switched Components for Slow Filter
Fout	*MHz*	1930-1990	1392 (Fixed Frequency)	
Fcomp	*kHz*	50	60	
Kϕ	*mA*	1	4	
Kvco	*MHz/V*	60	30	
N	*n/a*	39200	23200	
Fc	*kHz*	10.0	2.0	1.9
ϕ	*Deg.*	50.0	50.0	48.9
γ	*n/A*	1.1	1.1	
T3/T1	*%*	0	50	
C1, C1d, C1s	*nF*	0.58494	5.86096	5.27602
C2, C2d, C2s	*nF*	3.83824	91.17890	87.34066
C3d, C3s	*nF*		0.75962	0.75962
R2, R2d, R2s	*kΩ*	23.9181	2.56228	2.67488
R2p	*kΩ*	23.9181		
R3d, R3s	*kΩ*		18.57557	18.57557

Conclusion

Switched filters are useful in situations where the loop filter is to be used under two different conditions. In some cases, it is not necessary to switch in additional components. However, if the requirements of the loop filters are much different, then it might be necessary. Also, there can be times when the requirements for two different modes may be different. Usually, this means that there is one mode that has a faster lock time requirement, and another mode that has a more stringent spur requirement.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Chapter 30   Dealing with Real-World Components

Introduction

Much has been said about calculating loop filters. With all this effort going into calculating the theoretical values, it makes some sense to spend a little time discussing how to fit these theoretical values to standard component values and other practical issues when dealing with actual components.

The Basic Method

The most intuitive way to fit standard component values to ideal components is to simply round each component value to the closest standard value. This method is the most intuitive, but does not yield the optimal solution.

The Iterated Calculation Method

This method is based on the basic method and yields better results, but requires a computer. The basic strategy is to vary the parameters such as loop bandwidth and phase margin and simulate each result. Based on the lock time and spur gain of each result, the optimal choice of components can be found this way. This method yields the best results.

The Advanced Rounding Method for a Passive Loop Filter

The object of this method is to keep the loop filter coefficients as close to the theoretical values as possible. This analysis will be limited to a passive filter to simplify matters. The key to this technique involves understanding what components have the dominant on which parameter.   The steps for rounding are as follows:

Step 1: Choose Capacitor C2 as Close as Possible

The loop bandwidth is perhaps the most dominant factor, and the largest influence on this is the sum of the loop filter capacitors. Because capacitor $C2$ is the largest capacitor, the first step is to choose $C2$ as close as possible.

Step 2: Choose R2 to Make R2●C2 as Close to Design Value as Possible

The time constant, $T2$ has a very large impact on phase margin and gamma optimization factor. Because $T2$ is the product of these components, $R2$ should be chosen to preserve this time constant. So if the actual standard component value for $C2$ is 3% lower than the theoretical value, then the most desirable scenario would be for $R2$ to be 3% higher.

Step 3: Choose C1 to Make C2/C1 as Close to Design Value as Possible

For a second order filter, it can be shown that the ratio of **C2**/**C1** has the largest impact on phase margin, after loop bandwidth and **T2**. Because **C2** is know, now **C1** can be calculated as well.

Step 4: Choose C3 and C4 as Close to Design Value as Possible

The next step is to get the poles **T3** and **T4** as close as possible to the design values. **T3** is most dominated by the product of **R3** and **C3**, and **T4** is most dominated by the product of **R4** and **C4**.   Resistors are easier to stock and it is more likely that these values will be available. With capacitors, it might be the case that not all values are available. This can become the case for the larger values, or if one wants to use a particular type of capacitor, like film.

Step 4: Choose R3 and R4 to Make R3●C3 and R4●C4 as Close to Design Value as Possible

In order to best match the time constants **T3** and **T4**, choose **R3** such that the product of **R3●C3** is as close to the design value as possible and that **R4●C4** is as close to design value as possible.

A Component Rounding Example

Parameter	Units	Ideal Components	Basic Method	Advanced Method
$K\phi$	mA	4		
Kvco	MHz/V	20		
N	n/a	4500		
Loop Bandwidth	kHz	5	5.21	4.59
Phase Margin	Degrees	45	45.2	44.8
T3/T1	%	50	50.03	52.1
Gamma Optimization Factor	n/a	1.18	1.59	0.92
Lock Time (889-915 MHz to 1 kHz)	uS	442.1	622	610
Spur Gain @ 200 kHz	dB	4.04	3.39	3.36
C1	nF	9.388859	10	10
C2	nF	112.220087	120	
C3	nF	1.240375		
R2	kΩ	0.763858	0.82	0.68
R3	kΩ	5.335533	5.6	

Table 30.1 *Example of Component Rounding with a Third Order Passive Filter*

The above table shows an example of rounding components to the nearest 10% value. In this case, even though components do not come with a 10% tolerance, it is a very common practice to order 5% components and stock every other value. The effect of this is the same as having standard 10% values. These values are a power of ten multiplied by one of the following values: 1.0, 1.2, 1.5, 1.8, 2.2, 2.7, 3.3, 3.9, 4.7, 5.6, 6.8, or 8.2. For the case of the basic method, the components were simply rounded to the nearest value.

The advanced method requires a little bit more work. The first step is to round **C2**. In this case, it rounds to 120 nF. Now to calculate **R2**, the adjusted target value is 0.713 kΩ, which rounds to 0.68 kΩ. The next step is to choose **C1** as close as possible to the adjusted target value of 10.05 nF, which works out to 10 nF. All the other values for the advanced method work out the same as in the basic method. The advanced method slightly outperforms the basic method in this case for both lock time and spur gain.

Dealing With Capacitor Dielectrics

When it comes to loop filters, there is not much more to resistors than their value. Power dissipation is not an issue, so there is no advantage to choosing a larger footprint. However, with capacitors, there are some issues. There are situations where there is a trade-off between the physical size of the capacitor and the quality of the dielectric. Dielectric type

has no noticeable impact on spurs or phase noise, but can have a very large impact on lock time in some applications. From practical experience, capacitors with a Film dielectric or NP0/C0G dielectric perform very close to how a theoretical capacitor would do. However, these capacitors may require a larger footprint or simply not be available for larger capacitor values. X7R dielectric can cause increases in lock time from 0-500%. In general, it seems that designs with higher comparison frequencies are less susceptible to capacitor dielectrics. High comparison frequencies would be considered several Megahertz. Tantalum capacitors are not recommended for loop filters. By far, the capacitor for which the dielectric is most important is capacitor **C2**, which is also the largest capacitor. Capacitor **C1** has an impact, but not nearly as much as **C2**.

It seems that the theoretical performance parameter for the capacitor is dielectric absorption. Dielectric absorption is measured by applying a voltage to a capacitor, then shorting the capacitor, then removing the short. A residual voltage develops across the capacitor and is related to this dielectric absorption. The impact of this is to draw out the final fine frequency settling time of the PLL.

What is a nanofarad (nF)?

The nanofarad is 10^{-9} Farads. This is no surprise, but the use of this unit is controversial. There are some that feel that one should express all capacitance values in terms of picofarads (pF) and micorfarads (µF). A search of the National Institutes of Standards and Technology (www.nist.gov) will reveal that nF is used in various places. Since this book is more focused on new ideas and not just following the status quo, this book boldly uses the unit of nF in the face of harsh criticism.

Conclusion

The impacts of standard components should be considered. The first consideration is standard component values. Although the easiest approach is to simply round off the theoretical component values to their standard values, performance can often be enhanced by using the advanced method of component rounding. Loop filter resistors tend to behave just as they should, but capacitors in the loop filter can often give undesired effects, especially the bigger ones. Note that this chapter is only concerned with how these components behave in a loop filter. There are many more non-ideal effects that resistors and capacitors can have at high frequency as well, but these do not impact loop filter performance.

Chapter 31   Partially Integrated Loop Filters
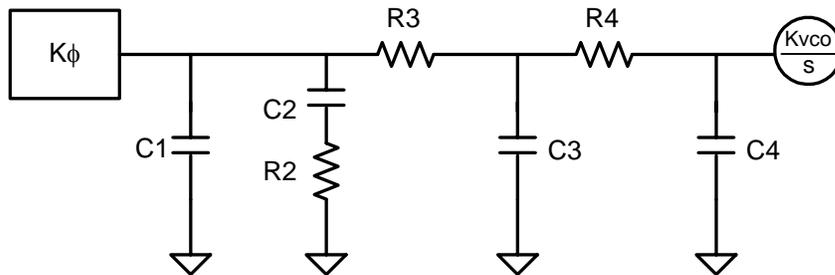
Introduction

In the age of higher integration, it is becoming more common practice that the VCO and loop filter can also be integrated with the PLL synthesizer. Aside from cost and size, another advantage of partially integrating the loop filter is that it may be able to help filter crosstalk on the chip that can get to the VCO. The biggest disadvantage is that it is less flexible. A good compromise is for the loop filter to be partially integrated.   Although it is possible to integrate capacitances on silicon, it is a very expensive use of die area and reduces flexibility. A good compromise is to leave some of the components external to the chip.

Considering the combinations between active filters and passive filters and second, third, and fourth order, there are 356 possible combinations. This chapter covers many of the more likely combinations. For those designs not covered, the logic and reasoning used to derive the examples can be used as a guide for the other cases. In those cases where most of the components are fixed, the easiest approach may be to simply have a computer try different values and simulate the result. In this chapter, the cases covered will fall under one of the following categories.

1.   Any order loop filter and a small capacitance integrated in front of the VCO.
2.   Second order loop filter with exactly one component integrated.
3.   Third order loop filter with exactly one component integrated.
4.   Third order loop filter with R3 and C3 integrated.
5.   Fourth order with R3 and C3 integrated.

Any Order Loop Filter with a Small Capacitance Integrated in Front of the VCO

The most basic form of a partially integrated loop filter is when there is a small capacitance in front of the VCO. This capacitance could be an actual capacitor placed there, the input capacitance of the VCO, or both. Regardless of which case, the easiest approach is to go ahead and design the loop filter as normal, and then subtract the value of this capacitance the calculated capacitance value goes in parallel with the VCO. This method works very well, provided that the value of the capacitor that goes in parallel with the VCO, after the integrated capacitance is subtracted, is not negative. If it is negative, then another approach is needed, or the pole ratios and loop bandwidth can be reduced. When dealing with a VCO input capacitance, it is typically good practice to make the loop filter capacitor that goes in parallel with this several times larger to swamp it out, because the VCO input capacitance may vary.

Second Order Loop Filter with Exactly One Component Integrated

In the case that one component is integrated, the loop bandwidth, gamma optimization parameter, and phase margin can not all be specified. This is because there are only two components that are free to choose. Regardless of the situation, the following constant needs to be calculated from the gamma optimization parameter and the phase margin:

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{(1+\gamma)^2 \bullet \tan^2 \phi + 4\gamma} - (1+\gamma) \bullet \tan \phi}{2} \qquad (31.1)$$

The reason that this constant is so useful is because of the following approximate relationship.

$$T1 = \frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad (31.2)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet T1} = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.3)$$

From this, the ratio, the ratio of T2 to T1 can be found:

$$\frac{T2}{T1} = \frac{\gamma}{k^2} \qquad (31.4)$$

And this ratio can be expressed in terms of the components, C1 and C2.

$$\frac{T2}{T1} = \frac{R2 \bullet C2}{\left(\frac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{C1 + C2}\right)} = 1 + \frac{C2}{C1} \qquad (31.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{C2}{C1} = \frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1$$

$$T1 = \frac{R2 \bullet C2 \bullet C1}{C1 + C2} = \frac{T2}{\left(1 + \frac{C2}{C1}\right)} = \frac{T2}{\left(\gamma/k^2\right)} = \frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad (31.6)$$

In the case of a second order filter, only T1 is non-zero, and the relationships are exact, not an approximation. So now all that needs to be done is find the relationship between T1 and T2, once one of the components is known. The following relationship can be derived from the loop filter coefficient for A0. The solving for the other components is trivial.

$$C1 + C2 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \left(\gamma/k\right)^2}{1 + k^2}} \qquad (31.7)$$

This can be manipulated in various ways to find the loop bandwidth.

C1 is Integrated

In this case, one strategy is to simply ignore this and realize that this integrated value adds in parallel with the value in the loop filter. However, if does not want to use an extra capacitor, or if the integrated capacitance is too large, it is necessary to design around the integrated capacitance. These formulas show how to do this.

$$\omega c = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C1 \bullet \left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2}\right)} \sqrt{\frac{1+\left(\frac{\gamma}{k}\right)^2}{1+k^2}}} \qquad (31.8)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.9)$$

$$C2 = C1 \bullet \left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1\right) \qquad (31.10)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.11)$$

C2 is Integrated

This case has many similarities to the case that **C1** is integrated, except now **C2** is the unknown.

$$\omega c = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C2 \bullet \left(\frac{k^2}{\gamma - 1}\right)} \sqrt{\frac{1+\left(\frac{\gamma}{k}\right)^2}{1+k^2}}} \qquad (31.12)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.13)$$

$$C1 = \frac{C2}{\left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1\right)} \qquad (31.14)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.15)$$

R2 is Integrated
In the case of a second order filter, this basically replaces the theoretical value. If the theoretical value for **R2** is much less than the integrated value can achieve, design such that it is higher, by reducing the charge pump current or increasing the loop bandwidth; if it is lower, do the opposite. The comparison frequency can also be adjusted to achieve this effect. If the resistor **R2** and charge pump current are both selectable, many different loop bandwidths can be achieved. This would be treated just like fastlock.

If there is no way to adjust the charge pump current or integrated resistance, then the phase margin and gamma optimization factor that are actually achieved may differ from the actual values designed for. Regardless of this issue, the constant **k**, is calculated from the desired phase margin and gamma optimization index values, and then the components are found. The loop bandwidth will be correct, but the phase margin and gamma optimization factor will be off. Once this is found, **T2** can be found, then **C2**, and then **C1**.

The first step is to calculate the loop bandwidth:

$$\omega c = \frac{\dfrac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\left(\gamma/k\right)^2}{1+k^2}}}{(\omega c \bullet C1)+(\omega c \bullet C2)} \qquad\qquad (31.16)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad\qquad (31.17)$$

$$\Rightarrow \omega c \bullet T2 = \frac{\gamma}{k}$$

$$\Rightarrow \omega c \bullet C2 = \frac{\gamma}{k \bullet R2}$$

$$\omega c \bullet C1 = (\omega c \bullet C2)\bullet\frac{C1}{C2} = \frac{\dfrac{\gamma}{k \bullet R2}}{\left(\dfrac{\gamma}{k^2}-1\right)} = \frac{\gamma \bullet k}{R2 \bullet\left(\gamma - k^2\right)} \qquad\qquad (31.18)$$

After some labor, the loop bandwidth can also be found:

$$\omega c = \frac{\dfrac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\left(\gamma/k\right)^2}{1+k^2}}}{\left(\dfrac{\gamma \bullet k}{R2 \bullet\left(\gamma - k^2\right)}\right)+\left(\dfrac{\gamma}{k \bullet R2}\right)} = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}\bullet\frac{R2 \bullet\left(\gamma - k^2\right)\bullet k}{\gamma^2}\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\left(\gamma/k\right)^2}{1+k^2}} \qquad\qquad (31.19)$$

From the loop bandwidth, it is easy to calculate the other components.

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \cdot k} \qquad (31.20)$$

$$C2 = \frac{T2}{R2} \qquad (31.21)$$

$$C1 = \frac{C2}{\left(\dfrac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1\right)} \qquad (31.22)$$

Third Order Loop Filter with Exactly One Component Integrated

In the case of a third order passive filter, recall that there was one degree of freedom. An additional constraint was specified to maximize the value of *C3*. In the case of a partially integrated third order loop filter, this additional constraint needs to be relaxed, so that all design parameters can be theoretically met. Despite this constraint being relaxed, there still are restrictions on the design parameters in many cases.

Active Third Order Loop Filter with Exactly One Component Integrated
R3 or C3 is Integrated
In this case, calculate the active filter components as they normally would be for a non-integrated loop filter. In an active filter, the value for *C3* is typically chosen. In this case, it is already determined. If *R3* or *C3* is the integrated component, then the other one can be found, since the product of *R3* and *C3* is *T3*, which is known. From this, treat this just like the case that *R3* and *C3* are integrated, and the filter is active, which is discussed later in this chapter. In this case, this puts no restrictions on the loop filter parameters.

C1, C2, or R2 is Integrated
The case that *C1*, *C2*, or *R2* is specified, this puts restrictions on the values that can be chosen. The easiest solution is to keep *T1* and *T3* as originally calculated and tolerate the fact that the loop bandwidth, phase margin, gamma optimization parameter, and *T3/T1* ratio will be close, but slightly off.

This case can be treated by solving a system of 2 equations and 2 unknowns.

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2$$
$$A0 = C1 + C2$$

(31.23)

From inspection of the equations above, if *C2* is not specified, it can easily be found from either the first or last equation. From this, *R2* and *C1* can be calculated. Once these two constraints are forced, then *T3* is left variable to satisfy the equations. The equations for *A1* and *A2* are neglected because *A0* and *T2* dominate. Nevertheless, this is an approximation, and it does put some restrictions on the loop bandwidth, phase margin, and gamma optimization factor.

Passive Third Order Loop Filter with Exactly One Component Integrated
Recall that for the third order passive filter, there is an extra degree of freedom in choosing the component values. An extra constraint was applied that maximized C3. However, if a component is already specified, then all that is necessary to do is to drop this constraint, and plug in the known value and solve.

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad\qquad (31.24)$$

$$A2 = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3$$

$$A1 = C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3$$

$$A0 = C1 + C2 + C3$$

C1 is Integrated

Now all the expressions on the left hand side of the equations are known. This leads to a system of 4 equations and 4 unknowns, which can be solved.

In the case that C1 is known, the product of C3 and R3 can be found from the top two equations. This can be applied to the third equation to get an expression with C2 and C3. Combined with the last equation, this is a linear system of 2 equations and 2 unknowns that can be solved.

$$A1 - C1 \bullet T2 - C1 \bullet \left(\frac{A2}{C1 \bullet T2} \right) = C3 \bullet T2 + C2 \bullet \left(\frac{A2}{C1 \bullet T2} \right) \qquad (31.25)$$

$$A0 - C1 = C2 + C3 \qquad\qquad (31.26)$$

This leads to the solution of:

$$C2 = \frac{A1 \bullet C1 \bullet T2 - A2 \bullet C1 - C1 \bullet A0 \bullet T2^2}{A2 - T2^2 \bullet C1} \qquad (31.27)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad\qquad (31.28)$$

$$C3 = A0 - C1 - C2 \qquad\qquad (31.29)$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C1 \bullet C3} \qquad\qquad (31.30)$$

C2 or R2 is Integrated

If either **C2** or **R2** is specified, the other component can easily be found since their product is the constant, **T2**. The range that these components can be specified and still have positive component values resulting for the other components is relatively narrow. So there are restrictions on the specified values for **C2** or **R2** that can be used and still achieve all the specified design parameters.

The first step is to order to solve for the product of **R3•C3** by making the appropriate substitutions can be made into the equation for **A1**.

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \text{ or } C2 = \frac{T2}{R2} \tag{31.31}$$

$$C3 \bullet R3 = \frac{A1 - T2 \bullet (A0 - C2) - \frac{A2}{T2}}{C2} \tag{31.32}$$

Once this product is known, then the components can easily be found.

$$C1 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3} = \frac{A2 \bullet C2}{A1 \bullet T2 - T2^2 \bullet (A0 - C2) - A2} \tag{31.33}$$

$$C3 = A0 - C1 - C2 \tag{31.34}$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C1 \bullet C3} \tag{31.35}$$

C3 is Integrated
The first approach should be to simply ignore **C3** and calculate the loop filter as normal. Then the integrated value is subtracted from the value of **C3**. However, if one wants to save a component, or the integrated value for **C3** is too large, then more calculation is necessary.

If **C3** is specified, then this is like the case of having a small capacitance integrated on front of the VCO. In order to handle this case, a third order passive non-integrated loop filter is calculated. If the calculated value for **C3** for this filter is larger than the specified value, then simply subtract the specified value from the calculated value to get the desired final value for **C3**. If the specified value is larger than the calculated value, then one of the design parameters needs to be changed, such as the charge pump current, loop bandwidth, or **T3/T1** ratio. Assuming that the specified value for **C3** is below this limit, then the other components can be calculated. From the second equation, the product of **C1** times **R3** can be found. From the last equation, the sum of **C1 + C2** can be found. From this, the third equation can be reduced to a quadratic equation, which has **C1** as its solution.

$$T2 \bullet C1^2 + (C3 \bullet T2 - A1) \bullet C1 + \frac{A2}{T2} \bullet (A0 - C3) = 0 \tag{31.36}$$

$$C1 = \frac{A1 - C3 \bullet T2 \pm \sqrt{(A1 - C3 \bullet T2)^2 - 4 \bullet A2 \bullet (A0 - C3)}}{2 \bullet T2} \tag{31.37}$$

Once **C1** is solved for, then the other components are easy to find. Note that there are actually two solutions for **C1** that are both valid, provided that they both lead to real component values. If one chooses the larger value for **C1** then this minimizes **R3**, which is more likely to have lower resistor noise.

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3 \qquad\qquad (31.38)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad\qquad (31.39)$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{C1 \bullet T2 \bullet C3} \qquad\qquad (31.40)$$

R3 is Integrated
Although this case can be solved, it is unlikely, and involves solving a cubic polynominal, so it is not covered. However, it has some similarities to the case that **C3** is integrated. If **R3** is too small, it causes issues, just as having **C3** too large.

The Loop Filter is Third Order and R3 and C3 are Integrated

The challenge when **R3** and **C3** are integrated is that it puts restrictions on the **T3/T1** ratio. Since this can not be specified, no time constants or loop filter coefficients are initially known. Nevertheless, with time and effort, they can be found. Regardless of whether the filter is active or passive, the following relationships will be used to first find the sum of the poles and the zero:

$$T1 + T3 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad (31.41)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3)} \approx \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.42)$$

Case of an Active Loop Filter
The first step is to calculate the pole, T3

$$T3 = C3 \bullet R3 \qquad (31.43)$$

From this, T1 can be found, and then T2 can be found by:

$$T1 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} - T3 \qquad (31.44)$$

The next step is to calculate the total capacitance:

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c \bullet T3^2\right)}} \qquad (31.45)$$

Once A0 is known, it is easy to calculate the components

$$C1 = \frac{T1 \bullet A0}{T2} \qquad (31.46)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad (31.47)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.48)$$

Note that since **T2 > T1** is required for stability, **C2** will always be positive. However, there is a maximum loop bandwidth that can be obtained. It can be seen that by setting **T1 = 0**, the following constraint is obtained.

$$\omega c_{max} = \frac{k}{T3} \qquad (31.49)$$

Case of a Passive Loop Filter

This is the most challenging scenario, but also a realistic one. The zero, T2, and the sum of the poles, T1 + T3, have already been found. The challenge is that another equation is necessary to find some expression involving T1 and T3. In order to do this, the fact that T2 and T1+T3 are known is substituted into the following equations:

$$T2 = R2 \bullet C2 \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad (31.50)$$

$$A2 = A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \quad = C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3$$

$$A1 = A0 \bullet (T1 + T3) = C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C2 \bullet R2 + C1 \bullet C3 \bullet R3 + C2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3$$

$$A0 \qquad\qquad\quad = C1 + C2 + C3$$

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2)(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2)}} \qquad (31.51)$$

After the first wave of substitutions, the following relationship is obtained.

$$\frac{A0}{T2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3} = \frac{C1}{T1 \bullet T3} \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad (31.52)$$

$$A0 \bullet \frac{k}{\omega c} = C3 \bullet T2 + C1 \bullet T2 + (A0 - C3) \bullet R3 \bullet C3 \qquad (31.53)$$

$$A0 = \frac{\dfrac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 T2^2}}{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3)^2 - 2 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \bullet \omega c^2 + \omega c^4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}} \qquad (31.54)$$

After eliminating A0 and C1 from these equations by substitution, we get:

$$a2 \bullet (T1 \bullet T3)^2 + a1 \bullet (T1 \bullet T3) + a0 = 0 \qquad\qquad (31.55)$$

$$a2 = \omega c^4 \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad (31.56)$$

$$a1 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{R3 \bullet C3^2 \bullet (T2 - R3 \bullet C3)} - 2 \bullet \omega c^2 \qquad (31.57)$$

$$a0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{C3^2 \bullet (T2 - R3 \bullet C3)} \bullet \left(C3 \bullet R3 - \frac{k}{\omega c} \right) + 1 + k^2 \qquad (31.58)$$

Then T1 and T3 satisfy the following system of equations:

$$T1 + T3 = \frac{k}{\omega} \qquad (31.59)$$

$$T1 \bullet T3 = \frac{-a1 - \sqrt{a1^2 - 4 \bullet a2 \bullet a0}}{2 \bullet a2} \qquad (31.60)$$

Once these quantities are known, *T1* and *T3* can finally be calculated:

$$T1 = \frac{(T1 + T3) + \sqrt{(T1 + T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad (31.61)$$

$$T3 = \frac{(T1 + T3) - \sqrt{(T1 + T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad (31.62)$$

Once *T1* and *T3* are known, *A0* can be calculated, and from this flows *C1* and the other components.

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2)(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2)}} \qquad (31.63)$$

$$C1 = \frac{A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}{R3 \bullet C3 \bullet T2} \qquad (31.64)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3 \qquad (31.65)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.66)$$

For the reader who has not grown weary of this case, the maximum possible loop bandwidth for realizable components can also be solved for. This constraint can apply in many cases. If the loop bandwidth specified is too large, then there will be negative components. In the case that the loop bandwidth is at the critical limit, *C1 = 0*. If *C1* is zero, this implies that

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

T3 is zero, and the product of *T1* and *T3* is zero. Recall that this product satisfied equation (31.55). If zero is substituted into this equation for the product of *T1* and *T3*, the maximum loop bandwidth constraint can be found:

$$a0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c_{max}^2} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c_{max}^2 \bullet T2^2}}{C3^2 \bullet (T2 - R3 \bullet C3)} \bullet \left(C3 \bullet R3 - \frac{k}{\omega c_{max}} \right) + 1 + k^2 = 0 \qquad (31.67)$$

This implies that:

$$(\omega c_{max})^3 + \left[\frac{-\gamma}{C3 \bullet R3 \bullet k} \right] \bullet (\omega c_{max})^2 - \left[\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C3 \bullet k} \sqrt{\frac{k^2 + \gamma^2}{1 + k^2}} \right] \bullet (\omega c_{max}) + \left[\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C3^2 \bullet R3} \sqrt{\frac{k^2 + \gamma^2}{1 + k^2}} \right] = 0 \qquad (31.68)$$

This is a cubic polynomial, which can be solved exactly in closed form. However, this solution is easier using numerical methods and computers. On seeing the complexity of these calculations, many will be tempted to approximate a passive filter with an active filter. This is valid if the third pole, *T3* is much less than *T1*. In a narrow bandwidth situation, this might be a fair assumption. However, as the loop bandwidth approaches its maximum limit, this approximation breaks down, so this approximation should be used with caution.

The Loop Filter is Fourth Order and R3, R4, C3, and C4 are Integrated

The challenge when these four components are integrated are integrated is that it puts restrictions on the **T3**/**T1** and the **T4**/**T3** ratios. Since these ratios can not be specified, no time constants or loop filter coefficients are initially known. Nevertheless, with time and effort, they can be found. Regardless of whether the filter is active or passive, the following relationships will be used to first find the sum of the poles and the zero:

$$T1 + T3 + T4 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad (31.69)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c^2 \bullet (T1 + T3 + T4)} \approx \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.70)$$

Case of an Active Loop Filter
The first step is to calculate the poles, T3 and T4

$$T3 = \frac{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4) + \sqrt{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2} \qquad (31.71)$$

$$T4 = \frac{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4) - \sqrt{(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2} \qquad (31.72)$$

From this, T1 can be found, and then T2 can also easily be found.

$$T1 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} - T3 - T4 \qquad (31.73)$$

There is a maximum loop bandwidth requirement for this filter, which can be found by setting T1 equal to zero.

$$\omega c_{max} = \frac{k}{T3 + T4} \qquad (31.74)$$

The next step is to calculate the total capacitance:

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2) \bullet (1 + \omega c \bullet T3^2) \bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4^2)}} \qquad (31.75)$$

Once A0 is known, it is easy to calculate the components

$$C1 = \frac{T1 \bullet A0}{T2} \qquad (31.76)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad (31.77)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.78)$$

Note that since T2 > T1 is required for stability, C2 will always be positive.

Case of an Passive Loop Filter
When the case of a third order filter was considered, an approximation was already introduced. In this case of a fourth order passive partially integrated filter, the attempt to find the solution without introducing any other approximations or resulting to numerical methods is left to the avid and very determined reader. For everybody else, it greatly simplifies the problem to approximate **R3**, **R4**, **C3**, and **C4** as a simple RC low pass filter and then apply the third order passive formulas. In order to get this approximate low pass filter, two constraints need to be applied. Two possible constraints are that at a frequency equal to the loop bandwidth, the loading on the filter and the transfer function through these components need to be the same as it would be if all four components were used. The load of the four components is:

$$L = R3 + \frac{\dfrac{1}{s \bullet C3} \bullet \left(R4 + \dfrac{1}{s \bullet C4}\right)}{\dfrac{1}{s \bullet C3} + \dfrac{1}{s \bullet C4} + R4} \qquad (31.79)$$

$$s = j \bullet \omega c$$

The transfer function of the four components is:

$$T = \frac{1}{1 + s \bullet (C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4 + C4 \bullet R3) + s^2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4} \qquad (31.80)$$

Now, since there are actually two components, these two constraints can be met exactly. The component, C, will always be real. However, R will be complex in general. So an approximation needs to be introduced where R is approximated with its real component.

$$C = \frac{-1}{\omega c \bullet \text{Im}(L)}$$ *(31.81)*

$$R = \text{Re}\left(\frac{\frac{1}{T} - 1}{s \bullet C}\right)$$ *(31.82)*

From this, the equations for the third order filter can be applied.

Conclusion

Partially integrated loop filters have come about in the age that more and more is being integrated. This chapter has discussed many possible configurations for this type of filter. Aside from saving components, partially integrated loop filters may be useful because they have the ability to filter noise on the chip itself. If the loop filter is integrated on chip, then there is a good probability that the VCO may also be integrated. Crosstalk on chips should always be taken as a serious issue, and if at least part of the loop filter is on the chip, it may be able to filter noise that otherwise could not be filtered.

Appendix A: Design Examples for Partially Integrated Loop Filters

All Loop Filters
Unless otherwise specified, the conditions below apply to all of the examples presented in this appendix.

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	10.01	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	50.01	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.01	none
Kϕ	Charge Pump Gain	5	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	20	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	2450	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	200	kHz

Calculate k and N

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{(1+\gamma)^2 \bullet \tan^2 \phi + 4\gamma} - (1+\gamma) \bullet \tan \phi}{2} \qquad (31.83)$$

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \qquad (31.84)$$

Second Order Loop Filters
C1 is Integrated

$$\omega c = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C1 \bullet \gamma}} \sqrt{\frac{k^2 + \gamma^2}{1 + k^2}} \qquad (31.85)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.86)$$

$$C2 = C1 \bullet \left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1 \right) \qquad (31.87)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.88)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
k	Calculation Constant	0.3657	n/a
$C1$	Specified C1 Value	0.82	nF
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Respecified Loop Bandwidth	9.5972	kHz
$T2$	Loop Filter Zero	3.9043×10^{-5}	sec
$C2$	Loop Filter Capacitor	3.9043	nF
$R2$	Loop Filter Resistor	8.5241	kΩ

C2 is Integrated

$$\omega c = \sqrt{\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C2 \bullet \left(\frac{k^2}{\gamma - 1}\right)}} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \left(\frac{\gamma}{k}\right)^2}{1 + k^2}} \qquad (31.89)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.90)$$

$$C1 = \frac{C2}{\left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1\right)} \qquad (31.91)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.92)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C2	Specified C2 Value	**4.7**	**nF**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Respecified Loop Bandwidth	**10.2617**	**kHz**
T2	Loop Filter Zero	**4.2837 x 10-5**	**sec**
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	**0.7172**	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	**9.1142**	**kΩ**

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

R2 is Integrated

$$\omega c = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N} \bullet \frac{R2 \bullet (\gamma - k^2) \bullet k}{\gamma^2} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \left(\frac{\gamma}{k}\right)^2}{1 + k^2}}$$

(31.93)

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k}$$

(31.94)

$$C2 = \frac{T2}{R2}$$

(31.95)

$$C1 = \frac{C2}{\left(\frac{\gamma}{k^2} - 1\right)}$$

(31.96)

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
R2	Specified R2 Value	10	**kΩ**
$\frac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Respecified Loop Bandwidth	11.2590	**kHz**
T2	Loop Filter Zero	3.9043 x 10^{-5}	**sec**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	3.9043	**nF**
C1	Loop Filter Resistor	0.5958	**nF**

Third Order Loop Filters

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	10.01	kHz
φ	Phase Margin	50.01	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.01	none
T3/T1	T3 to T1 Ratio	50.01	%
Kφ	Charge Pump Gain	5	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	20	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	2450	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	200	kHz

Calculate Poles and Zero

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \qquad (31.97)$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \qquad (31.98)$$

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{(1+\gamma^2)\bullet \tan^2 \phi + 4\gamma} - (1+\gamma)\bullet \tan \phi}{2} \qquad (31.99)$$

$$T1 = \frac{root\left[\phi - \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet (1+T31)}\right) - \tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1) - \tan^{-1}(\omega c \bullet T1 \bullet T31)\right]}{\omega c} \qquad (31.100)$$

$$T3 = T1 \bullet T31 \qquad (31.101)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad (31.102)$$

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2)\bullet (1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2)}} \qquad (31.103)$$

$$A1 = A0 \bullet (T1 + T3) \qquad (31.104)$$

$$A2 = A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3 \qquad (31.105)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
k	Calculation Constant	0.3657	n/a
T1	Loop Filter Pole	3.8190×10^{-6}	sec
T2	Loop Filter Zero	4.4568×10^{-5}	sec
T3	Loop Filter Pole	1.9099×10^{-6}	sec
A0	Loop Filter Coefficient	5.9292	nF
A1	Loop Filter Coefficient	3.3968×10^{-5}	sec•nF
A2	Loop Filter Coefficient	4.3247×10^{-11}	sec²•nF

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Active Third Order Filter with Exactly One Component Integrated
If R3 or C3 is the Integrated Component

$$C1 = A0 \bullet \frac{T1}{T2} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.106)}}$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.107)}}$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.108)}}$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.5081	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	5.4211	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	8.2212	**kΩ**

If R3 is specified:

$$R3 = 10\,k\Omega \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.109)}}$$

$$C3 = \frac{T3}{R3} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.110)}}$$

$$C3 = 0.191\,nF \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.111)}}$$

If C3 is specified:

$$C3 = 100\,pF \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.112)}}$$

$$R3 = \frac{T3}{C3} \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.113)}}$$

$$R3 = 19.0990\,k\Omega \qquad \textbf{\textit{(31.114)}}$$

Case that C1, C2, or R2 is the Integrated Component
If **C1** is not the component specified, it is very easy to solve for **C1** from the other components. Therefore, without loss of generality, assume **C1** is the integrated component. For active filters, C3 is also specified.

$$C1 = 470 \, pF \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.115)}$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.116)}$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.117)}$$

$$C3 = 100 \, pF \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.118)}$$

$$R3 = \frac{T3}{C3} \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.119)}$$

$$R3 = 19.0990 \, k\Omega \qquad \qquad \textbf{(31.120)}$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.47	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	5.4592	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	8.1638	**kΩ**
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	0.1	**nF**
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	19.0990	**kΩ**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Achieved Loop Bandwidth	9.83	**kHz**
ϕ	Achieved Phase Margin	48.83	**deg**
γ	Achieved Gamma Factor	1.042	**n/a**

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Passive Third Order Filter with Exactly 1 Component Integrated
C1 is Integrated and the Loop Filter is Passive

$$C2 = \frac{A1 \bullet C1 \bullet T2 - A2 \bullet C1 - C1 \bullet A0 \bullet T2^2}{A2 - T2^2 \bullet C1} \qquad (31.121)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.122)$$

$$C3 = A0 - C1 - C2 \qquad (31.123)$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C1 \bullet C3} \qquad (31.124)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C1	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	0.47	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	5.4408	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	8.1914	**kΩ**
C3	Loop Filter Capacitor	18.3399	**pF**
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	112.5745	**kΩ**

C2 or R2 is Integrated and the Loop Filter is Passive

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \ \text{ or } \ C2 = \frac{T2}{R2} \qquad (31.125)$$

$$C3 \bullet R3 = \frac{A1 - T2 \bullet (A0 - C2) - \dfrac{A2}{T2}}{C2} \qquad (31.126)$$

$$C1 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C3 \bullet R3} = \frac{A2 \bullet C2}{A1 \bullet T2 - T2^2 \bullet (A0 - C2) - A2} \qquad (31.127)$$

$$C3 = A0 - C1 - C2 \qquad\qquad \textit{(31.128)}$$

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{T2 \bullet C3 \bullet C1} \qquad\qquad \textit{(31.129)}$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C2	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	0.56	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Capacitor	7.9585	**kΩ**
C1	Loop Filter Resistor	0.2965	**nF**
C3	Loop Filter Capacitor	32.6636	**pF**
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	100.1947	**kΩ**

C3 is Integrated and the Loop Filter is Passive

$$C1 = \frac{A1 - C3 \bullet T2 + \sqrt{(A1 - C3 \bullet T2)^2 - 4 \bullet A2 \bullet (A0 - C3)}}{2 \bullet T2}$$

(31.130)

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3$$

(31.131)

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2}$$

(31.132)

$$R3 = \frac{A2}{C1 \bullet T2 \bullet C3}$$

(31.133)

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	33	**pF**
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.4320	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Resistor	5.4642	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Capacitor	8.1563	**kΩ**
R3	Loop Filter Resistor	68.0709	**kΩ**

Active Third Order Loop Filter with R3 and C3 Integrated

$$T3 = C3 \bullet R3 \qquad\qquad (31.134)$$

$$\omega c_{max} = \frac{k}{T3} \qquad\qquad (31.135)$$

$$T1 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} - T3 \qquad\qquad (31.136)$$

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c \bullet T3^2\right)}} \qquad\qquad (31.137)$$

$$C1 = \frac{T1 \bullet A0}{T2} \qquad\qquad (31.138)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \qquad\qquad (31.139)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad\qquad (31.140)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
R3	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ
$\dfrac{\omega c_{max}}{2\pi}$	Maximum Achievable Loop Bandwidth. Equations work out because 10.01 kHz is less than this.	14.5501	kHz
T3	Recalculated Loop Filter Pole	4.0000×10^{-6}	sec
T1	RecalculatedLoop Filter Pole	1.8142×10^{-6}	sec
A0	Recalculated Loop Filter Coefficient	5.9177	nF
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.2413	nF
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	5.5994	nF
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	7.8426	kΩ
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Actual Loop Bandwidth	10.01	kHz
ϕ	Actual Phase Margin	49.47	deg
γ	Actual Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.01	n/a
T3/T1	Actual T3/T1 Ratio	220.48	%

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Passive Third Order Loop Filter with R3 and C3 Integrated

$$b2 = \frac{-\gamma}{C3 \bullet R3 \bullet k} \qquad\qquad (31.141)$$

$$b1 = -\frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C3 \bullet k} \sqrt{\frac{k^2 + \gamma^2}{1 + k^2}} \qquad\qquad (31.142)$$

$$b0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C3^2 \bullet R3} \sqrt{\frac{k^2 + \gamma^2}{1 + k^2}} \qquad\qquad (31.143)$$

$$\omega c_{max} = root\left[\omega c_{max}^{\;3} + b2 \bullet \omega c_{max}^{\;2} + b1 \bullet \omega c_{max} + b0 = 0 \right] \qquad\qquad (31.144)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
R3	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ
b2	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	6.9049×10^5	sec^{-1}
b1	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	-2.2520×10^{11}	sec^{-2}
b0	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	2.0588×10^{16}	sec^{-3}
$\dfrac{\omega c_{max}}{2\pi}$	Maximum Achievable Loop Bandwidth. Equations work out because 10.01 kHz is less than this.	12.0568	kHz

$$a2 = \omega c^4 \qquad\qquad (31.145)$$

$$a1 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{R3 \bullet C3^2 \bullet (T2 - R3 \bullet C3)} - 2 \bullet \omega c^2 \qquad\qquad (31.146)$$

$$a0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet \omega c^2} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}}{C3^2 \bullet (T2 - R3 \bullet C3)} \bullet \left(C3 \bullet R3 - \frac{k}{\omega c} \right) + 1 + k^2 \qquad\qquad (31.147)$$

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma \bullet \omega c}{k} \qquad\qquad (31.148)$$

$$T1+T3=\frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad (31.149)$$

$$T1 \bullet T3 = \frac{-a1 - \sqrt{a1^2 - 4 \bullet a2 \bullet a0}}{2 \bullet a2} \qquad (31.150)$$

$$T1 = \frac{(T1+T3) + \sqrt{(T1+T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad (31.151)$$

$$T3 = \frac{(T1+T3) - \sqrt{(T1+T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad (31.152)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
T2	Loop Filter Zero	4.3914×10^{-5}	**sec**
T1+T3	Sum of Loop Filter Poles	5.8142×10^{-6}	**sec**
a2	Coefficient for *T1•T3* calculation	-1.5648×10^{19}	**sec^{-4}**
a1	Coefficient for *T1•T3* calculation	-3.7177×10^{11}	**sec^{-2}**
a0	Coefficient for *T1•T3* calculation	1.6215	**n/a**
T1•T3	Product of Loop Filter Poles	4.3609×10^{-12}	**sec^2**
T1	Loop Filter Pole	4.9296×10^{-6}	**sec**
T3	Loop Filter Pole	8.8464×10^{-7}	**sec**

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 T2^2}{(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2)(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2)}} \qquad (31.153)$$

$$C1 = \frac{A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}{R3 \bullet C3 \bullet T2} \qquad (31.154)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C3 \qquad (31.155)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.156)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
A0	Loop Filter Coefficient	5.7810	**nF**
A1	Loop Filter Coefficient	3.3612×10^{-5}	**sec•nF**
A2	Loop Filter Coefficient	2.5210×10^{-11}	**sec²•nF**
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.1435	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	7.9304	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	5.5374	**kΩ**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Achieved Loop Bandwidth	9.84	**kHz**
φ	Achieved Phase Margin	49.79	**deg**
γ	Achieved Gamma Optimization Factor	1.00	**n/a**
T3/T1	Achieved T3/T1 Ratio	18.25	**%**

Fourth Order Loop Filters

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
Fc	Loop Bandwidth	10.01	kHz
ϕ	Phase Margin	50.01	degrees
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter	1.01	none
Kϕ	Charge Pump Gain	5	mA
Kvco	VCO Gain	20	MHz/V
Fout	Output Frequency	2450	MHz
Fcomp	Comparison Frequency	200	kHz
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
C4	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
R3	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ
R4	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ

Calculate Poles and Zero

$$N = \frac{Fout}{Fcomp} \qquad (31.157)$$

$$\omega c = 2 \bullet \pi \bullet Fc \qquad (31.158)$$

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{\left(1 + \gamma^2\right) \bullet \tan^2 \phi + 4\gamma} - \left(1 + \gamma\right) \bullet \tan \phi}{2} \qquad (31.159)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
k	Calculation Constant	0.3657	n/a

Case of an Active Loop Filter

$$T3 = \frac{\left(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4\right) + \sqrt{\left(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4\right)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2} \qquad (31.160)$$

$$T4 = \frac{\left(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4\right) - \sqrt{\left(C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4\right)^2 - 4 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4}}{2} \qquad (31.161)$$

$$\omega c_{max} = \frac{k}{T3 + T4} \qquad (31.162)$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
T3	Loop Filter Pole	1.0472×10^{-5}	**sec**
T4	Loop Filter Pole	1.5279×10^{-6}	**sec**
$\dfrac{\omega c_{\max}}{2\pi}$	Maximum Allowable Loop Bandwidth	9.84	**kHz**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Redefined Loop Bandwidth	4.0	**kHz**

Note what happened here. The specified loop bandwidth was too wide, so some parameter has to change. For this reason, the loop bandwidth is being reduced to 4 kHz.

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \tag{31.163}$$

$$T1 \approx \frac{k}{\omega c} - T3 - T4 \tag{31.164}$$

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T2^2}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c \bullet T3^2\right) \bullet \left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T4^2\right)}} \tag{31.165}$$

$$C1 = \frac{T1 \bullet A0}{T2} \tag{31.166}$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 \tag{31.167}$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \tag{31.168}$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
T2	Loop Filter Coefficient	1.0989×10^{-4}	**sec**
T1	Loop Filter Coefficient	2.5501×10^{-6}	**sec**
A0	Loop Filter Coefficient	36.6096	**nF**
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.8495	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	35.7601	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	3.0731	**kΩ**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Achieved Loop Bandwidth	4.00	**kHz**
ϕ	Achieved Phase Margin	49.49	**deg**
γ	Achieved Gamma Optimization Factor	1.01	**n/a**
T3/T1	Achieved T4/T3 Ratio	410.67	**%**
T4/T3	Achieved T3/T1 Ratio	14.59	**%**

Case of a Passive Fourth Order Loop Filter with C3, C4, R3, and R4 Integrated

$$L = \left[R3 + \frac{\dfrac{1}{s \bullet C3} \bullet \left(R4 + \dfrac{1}{s \bullet C4} \right)}{\dfrac{1}{s \bullet C3} + \dfrac{1}{s \bullet C4} + R4} \right]_{s=j \bullet \omega c} \qquad (31.169)$$

$$T = \left[\frac{1}{1 + s \bullet (C3 \bullet R3 + C4 \bullet R4 + C4 \bullet R3) + s^2 \bullet C3 \bullet C4 \bullet R3 \bullet R4} \right]_{s=j \bullet \omega c} \qquad (31.170)$$

$$C = \frac{-1}{\omega c \bullet \mathrm{Im}(L)} \qquad (31.171)$$

$$R = \mathrm{Re}\left(\frac{\dfrac{1}{T} - 1}{s \bullet C} \right) \qquad (31.172)$$

$$b2 = \frac{-\gamma}{C \bullet R \bullet k} \qquad (31.173)$$

$$b1 = -\frac{\dfrac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C \bullet k} \sqrt{k^2 + \gamma^2}}{1 + k^2} \qquad (31.174)$$

$$b0 = \frac{\dfrac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N \bullet C^2 \bullet R} \sqrt{k^2 + \gamma^2}}{1 + k^2} \qquad (31.175)$$

$$\omega c_{max} = root\left[\omega c_{max}{}^3 + b2 \bullet \omega c_{max}{}^2 + b1 \bullet \omega c_{max} + b0 = 0 \right] \qquad (31.176)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
C3	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
C4	Specified Loop Filter Capacitor	100	pF
R3	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ
R4	Specified Loop Filter Resistor	40	kΩ
L	Load of integrated components at loop bandwidth	49.8442 – j80.7363	kΩ
T	Transfer function value of integrated components at loop bandwidth	0.6473 – j0.5216	n/a
C	Equivalent Resistance at Loop Bandwidth	0.1969	nF
R	Equivalent Capacitance at Loop Bandwidth	60.9346	kΩ
b2	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	-2.3016 x 10^5	sec^{-1}
b1	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	- 1.1436 x 10^{11}	sec^{-2}
b0	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	3.4848 x 10^{15}	sec^{-3}
$\dfrac{\omega c_{max}}{2\pi}$	Maximum Achievable Loop Bandwidth.	4.6146	kHz

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

In this case, the loop bandwidth specified was larger than the maximum achievable loop bandwidth. Because the equivalent resistance and capacitance involve the loop bandwidth calculation, they also need to be recalculated. So the same exercise will now be done with the new loop bandwidth of 4 kHz.

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	New Specified Loop Bandwidth	4.0	**kHz**
L	Load of integrated components at loop bandwidth	49.9748 – j199.45	**kΩ**
T	Transfer function value of integrated components at loop bandwidth	0.9244 – j0.2816	**n/a**
C	Equivalent Resistance at Loop Bandwidth	0.1995	**nF**
R	Equivalent Capacitance at Loop Bandwidth	60.1512	**kΩ**
b2	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	-2.3016 x 10^5	**sec^{-1}**
b1	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	- 1.1289 x 10^{11}	**sec^{-2}**
b0	Coefficient for max loop bandwidth calculation	3.4400 x 10^{15}	**sec^{-3}**
$\dfrac{\omega c_{max}}{2\pi}$	Maximum Achievable Loop Bandwidth. Note that this limit was not exceeded this time.	4.6118	**kHz**

On the second time around, the loop bandwidth was not chosen too large. Also note that the maximum loop bandwidth is slightly different due to the small errors introduced by approximating the 4 integrated components by only 2 integrated components. Now the equations for the third order passive filter can be applied

$$T2 = \frac{\gamma}{\omega c \bullet k} \qquad\qquad (31.177)$$

$$T1+T3 = \frac{k}{\omega c} \qquad\qquad (31.178)$$

$$T1 \bullet T3 = \frac{-a1 - \sqrt{a1^2 - 4 \bullet a2 \bullet a0}}{2 \bullet a2} \qquad\qquad (31.179)$$

$$T1 = \frac{(T1+T3) + \sqrt{(T1+T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad\qquad (31.180)$$

$$T3 = \frac{(T1+T3) - \sqrt{(T1+T3)^2 - 4 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}}{2} \qquad\qquad (31.181)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
T2	Loop Filter Zero	1.0989×10^{-4}	**sec**
T1+T3	Sum of Loop Filter Poles	1.4550×10^{-5}	**sec**
a2	Coefficient for *T1•T 3* calculation	-3.9989×10^{17}	**sec^{-4}**
a1	Coefficient for *T1•T3* calculation	-1.6072×10^{11}	**sec^{-2}**
a0	Coefficient for *T1•T3* calculation	3.8231	**n/a**
T1•T3	Product of Loop Filter Poles	2.3786×10^{-11}	**sec^2**
T1	Loop Filter Pole	1.2673×10^{-5}	**sec**
T3	Loop Filter Pole	1.8769×10^{-6}	**sec**

$$A0 = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{\omega c^2 \bullet N} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \omega c^2 T2^2}{\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T1^2\right)\left(1 + \omega c^2 \bullet T3^2\right)}} \qquad (31.182)$$

$$C1 = \frac{A0 \bullet T1 \bullet T3}{R \bullet C \bullet T2} \qquad (31.183)$$

$$C2 = A0 - C1 - C \qquad (31.184)$$

$$R2 = \frac{T2}{C2} \qquad (31.185)$$

Symbol	Description	Value	Units
A0	Loop Filter Coefficient	36.1314	**nF**
A1	Loop Filter Coefficient	5.2571×10^{-4}	**sec•nF**
A2	Loop Filter Coefficient	8.5941×10^{-9}	**sec^2•nF**
C1	Loop Filter Capacitor	0.6517	**nF**
C2	Loop Filter Capacitor	3.1149	**nF**
R2	Loop Filter Resistor	35.2802	**kΩ**
$\dfrac{\omega c}{2\pi}$	Achieved Loop Bandwidth	4.03	**kHz**
φ	Achieved Phase Margin	49.57	**deg**
γ	Achieved Gamma Optimization Factor	1.02	**n/a**

Additional Topics

VCO Output
Impedance

Trace
Impedance

Zo

50Ω

PLL and Matching
Circuit Impedance

Zpll

Vcc

R2

Lock
Detect
Pin

R1

Vout

C
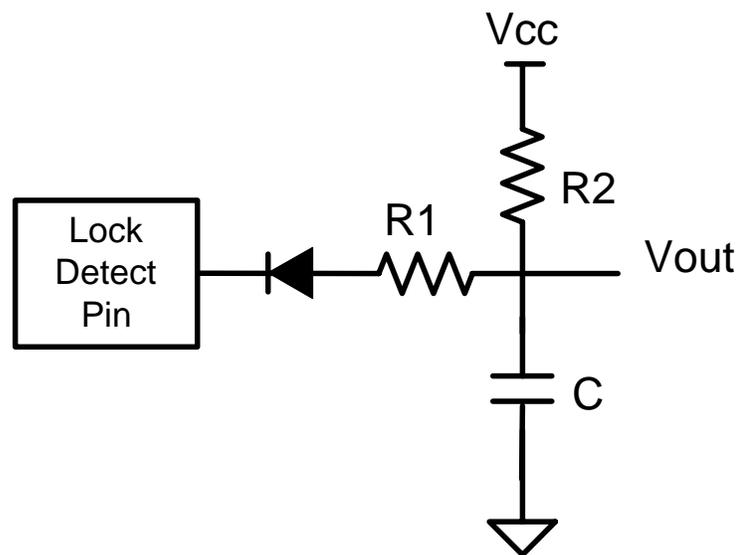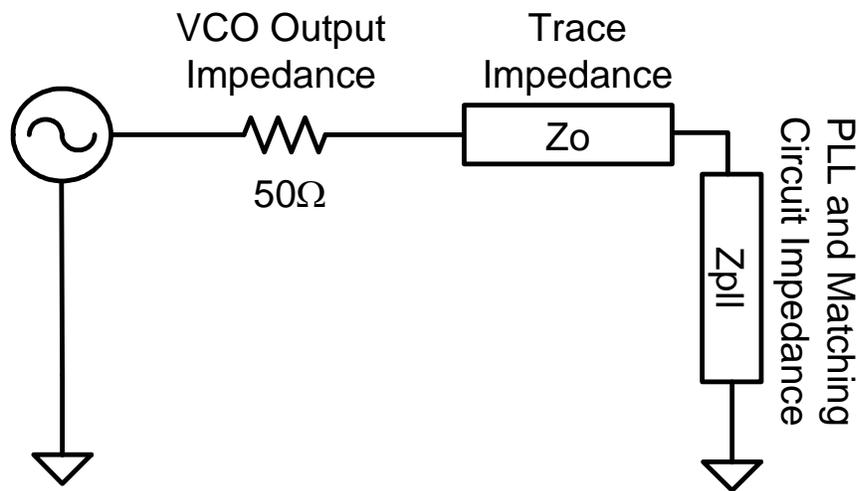
Chapter 32   Lock Detect Circuit Construction and Analysis

Introduction

Although many newer PLLs have a lock detect pin that give a logic level output to indicate whether or not the PLL is in lock, there are still many PLLs, including the LMX2330 series from National Semiconductor, that do not put out a logic level signal to indicate whether or not the part is in lock; external circuitry is necessary in order to make meaningful sense of the signal. This chapter discusses the design and simulation of such a circuit.

Using the Analog Lock Detect Pin

The state of analog lock detect pin is high when the charge pump is off and low when the charge pump turns on. When viewed with an oscilloscope, one can observe narrow negative pulses that occur when the charge pump turns on. When the PLL is in the locked state, these pulses are on the order of 25-70 ns in width; however, this number can vary based on the VCO gain, loop filter transfer equations, phase detector gain, and other factors, although it should be constant for a given application. For some PLLs, the output is open drain and requires a pull-up resistor to see the pulses.
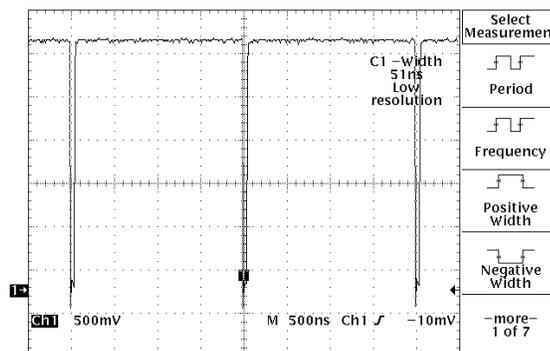
Figure 32.1 *Lock Detect Pin Output for a PLL in the Locked State*

When the PLL is not in the locked state, the average width of these pulses changes. The information concerning the PLL in or out of the locked state is in no individual pulse, but rather in the average pulse width. If the VCO kept on but disconnected from the charge pump, then the signal from the lock detect pin will have a duty cycle that oscillates between a low and high duty cycle. However, this is unrealistic, since the PLL tries to keep the VCO in phase. When the VCO is connected to the PLL, but is off frequency, the pulse width is much more predictable and closer to being constant. The pulses are sort of triangular due to the turn on times of transistors and other effects. For the sake of simplicity and simplifying calculations, they will be treated as rectangular. For a ballpark estimate of how much the average width of the pulses will change and a rough idea on how sensitive the circuit is, the average change in the width of the pulses at any given time could be approximated by the difference in the periods of the N counter and the R counter. This result was discussed in a

previous chapter concerning the performance of the phase detector. In other words,

$$Change\ in\ Average\ Pulse\ Width\ =\ Tlow - Tloc\ =\ \frac{1}{Fcomp}\ -\ \frac{N}{Fout} \qquad (32.1)$$

Lock Detect Circuit Construction

The basic strategy for the type of lock detect circuit described in this chapter is to integrate over some number of reference periods in order to accumulate some DC value which can then be compared to a threshold value. This comparison can be made with a comparator or transistor. In cases where only a gross lock detect is needed, the lock detect circuit output can be sent directly to the input logic gate, provided the difference in the voltage level produced between the in lock and out of lock conditions is large enough to be recognized as a high or low. Some microprocessors also have A/D input pins that can also be used for this function.

Since the average DC contributions of the pulses are so small relative to the rest of the time, it may be necessary to use unbalanced time constants to maximize sensitivity. The recommended circuit is shown in Figure 32.2 . Note that there are some PLLs in which the lock detect output is open drain, which eliminates the need for the diode. There are still other PLLs with digital lock detect, that eliminate the need for a lock detect circuit entirely.
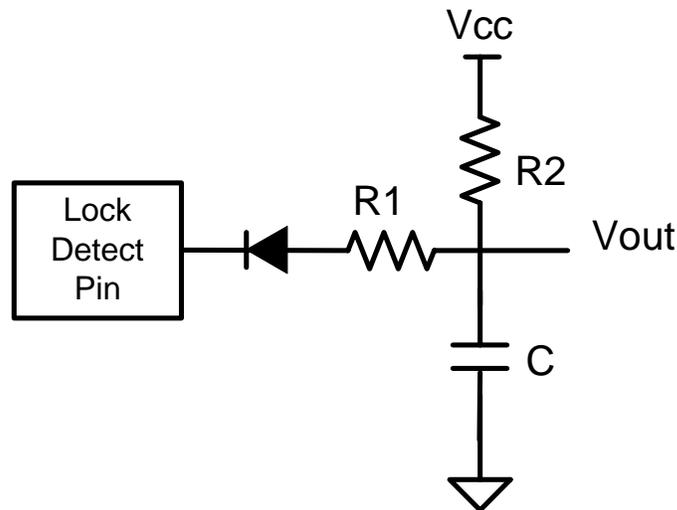
Figure 32.2 *Lock Detect Circuit*

Theoretical Operation of the Lock Detect Circuit

Consider the event when the lock detect pin first goes to its low voltage, V_{OL}. The voltage drop across the diode is V_D. The diode will conduct, and if **R2 >> R1** then the following holds:

$$V_{out} = -R1 \bullet C \bullet \frac{dV_{out}}{dt} + V_L \qquad (32.2)$$

$$V_L = V_D + V_{OL} \qquad (32.3)$$

What is really of interest is how much does the voltage V_{out} change during the period that the lock detect pin is low. To simplify the mathematics, it is easiest to discretize the problem. The size of the discrete time step is T_L, which is the time which the lock detect pin stays low. The following definitions can be used to convert the differential equation into a difference equation:

$$V_n = V_{out}(0) \qquad (32.4)$$

$$V_{n+1} = V_{out}(T_L) \qquad (32.5)$$

The above differential equation has the following solution:

$$V_{n+1} = V_L + (V_n - V_L) \bullet \beta \qquad (32.6)$$

$$\beta = e^{\frac{-T_L}{R1 \bullet C}} \qquad (32.7)$$

When the lock detect output goes high, then the diode will not conduct, and the capacitor will charge through the resistor **R2**. In an analogous way that was done for the case of the lock detect pin state being low, the results can also be derived for the case when the lock detect pin is high. In this case, T_H represents the time period that the lock detect pin stays high.

$$V_{n+1} = Vcc + (V_n - Vcc) \bullet \alpha \qquad (32.8)$$

$$\alpha = e^{\frac{-T_H}{R2 \bullet C}} \qquad (32.9)$$

Now if one considers the two cases for V_n, then a general expression can be written for V_n. For sufficiently large n, the series will alternate between two steady state values. Call these two values V_{High} and V_{Low}. These values can be solved for by realizing that the initial voltage when the lock detect pin just goes low will be V_{High} and the final voltage will be V_{Low}. Also, the initial voltage when the lock detect pin just goes high will be V_{Low} and the final voltage will be V_{High}. This creates a system of two equations and two unknowns.

$$V_{Low} = V_L + \left(V_{High} - V_L\right) \bullet \beta \qquad\qquad (32.10)$$

$$V_{High} = Vcc + \left(V_{Low} - Vcc\right) \bullet \alpha \qquad\qquad (32.11)$$

This system of equations has the following solution:

$$V_{Low} = Vcc + \frac{(1 - \beta) \bullet (V_L - Vcc)}{1 - \alpha \bullet \beta} \qquad\qquad (32.12)$$

$$V_{High} = V_L + \frac{(1 - \alpha) \bullet (Vcc - V_L)}{1 - \alpha \bullet \beta} \qquad\qquad (32.13)$$

Lock Detect Circuit Design

The above expressions for V_{Low} and V_{High} show what two values the voltage will oscillate between in the locked condition, once the component values are known. These equations can be worked backwards to solve for component values as well. For design of the circuit, the following information is needed.

T_{lock} The width of the pulses in the locked condition. This should be around 25 ns for the 4X current mode and 50 ns for the 1X current mode.

T_{switch} The width of the LD pulses that are to be detected.

V_{high} The "trip point". In the unlocked condition, the maximum voltage output would be V_{high}. In the locked condition, the voltage output should be higher

$Ripple = V_{high} - V_{low}$. This should be a couple hundred millivolts. Designing for too much ripple can cause a noisy circuit, while designing for too little will cause the circuit to take longer to settle to its final values of V_{low} and V_{high}

Using the expressions for V_{high} and V_{low}, the following equations can be derived.

$$\alpha^2 \bullet A + \alpha \bullet B + C = 0 \qquad\qquad (32.14)$$

$$A = K \bullet \left(V_L - V_{High}\right)$$
$$B = Vcc - V_{High} - K \bullet V_L + K \bullet V_{High}$$
$$C = V_{High} - Vcc$$
$$K = \frac{Vcc - V_{Low}}{V_{High} - V_{Low}}$$

α and β can be solved for as follows:

$$\alpha = \frac{-B + \sqrt{B^2 - 4 \bullet A \bullet C}}{2 \bullet A} \qquad\qquad (32.15)$$
$$\beta = 1 + (\alpha - 1) \bullet K$$

Finally, the components can be solved for. To do so, the capacitor, C, can be chosen arbitrarily. Once C is known, the other components can also be found.

$$R1 = \frac{-T_L}{C \bullet \ln \beta} \qquad\qquad (32.16)$$
$$R2 = R1 \bullet \frac{\ln \alpha}{\ln \beta} \bullet \frac{T_H}{T_L}$$

Voltages	*Volts*	Times	*ns*	Design Specification	*Volts*
V_D	0.7	T_L	55	$V_{High\ (unlocked)}$	2.1
V_{OL}	0.5	T_H	1600	*Ripple Voltage*	0.1
Vcc	4.1				
Constants		Components		Calculated Values	
K	2.3333	*Choose C1*	220 pF	*R1*	2.12 $K\Omega$
A	-2.1			*R2*	149.1 $K\Omega$
C	-2			$V_{Low\ (unlocked)}$	2 Volts
α	0.9524				
β	0.8889				

Table 32.1 *Typical Lock Detect Circuit Design*

Simulation

Note that after the design is done, it is necessary to assure that the lowest voltage in the locked state $V_{Low\ (locked)}$ is higher than the highest voltage unlocked condition $V_{High\ (unlocked)}$. In Table 30.2, the circuit designed in Table 30.1 is simulated. The simulation shows that in ten reference cycles, the circuit gets reasonably close to its final steady state values. When the PLL is in lock, the lock detect circuit output voltage will not go below 2.54 Volts; in the unlocked state, the output voltage will not go above 2.10 Volts. This may not seem like much voltage difference, but this is because this circuit is extremely sensitive. If one was to use a pulse width of 100 ns out of lock, then this voltage difference would be much greater.

Table 30.2 shows the simulation of a lock detect circuit. It is necessary to include a lot of margin for error, since it is very difficult to get an accurate idea of the width of the negative pulses from the lock detect pin. It was also assumed that these pulses were square and of constant period, which may be a rough assumption. Furthermore, as shown below, it does take time for the system to settle down to its final state.

Par.	*Volts*	**Components**			**Time s**	*ns*	**Const.**	*Volts*	**Locked Parameters**		
V_D	0.7	*C*	220	*pF*	T_L	55	α	0.9524	T_{lock}	25	*ns*
V_{OL}	0.5	*R1*	2.1	*KΩ*	T_H	1600	β	0.8888	$β_{lock}$	0.9478	*V*
Vcc	2.1	*R2*	149	*KΩ*							
Vstart	4.5										

Iter.	Vhigh	Vlow		Iter.	Vhigh	Vlow		**Steady State Parameters**		
0	2.5000	2.3554	*Volts*	*8*	2.2051	2.0933	*Volts*	$V_{High\ (unlocked)}$	*2.0996*	*Volts*
1	2.4385	2.3007	*Volts*	*9*	2.1889	2.0789	*Volts*	$V_{Low\ (unlocked)}$	1.9995	*Volts*
2	2.3864	2.2545	*Volts*	*10*	2.1751	2.0667	*Volts*	*Ripple*	0.1001	*Volts*
3	2.3424	2.2153	*Volts*	*11*	2.1635	2.0564	*Volts*	$V_{Low\ (locked)}$	*2.5451*	*Volts*
4	2.3051	2.1822	*Volts*	*12*	2.1537	2.0476	*Volts*			
5	2.2735	2.1541	*Volts*	*13*	2.1454	2.0402	*Volts*			
6	2.2468	2.1304	*Volts*	*14*	2.1384	2.0340	*Volts*			
7	2.2242	2.1103	*Volts*	*15*	2.1324	2.0287	*Volts*			

***Table 32.2** Typical Lock Detect Circuit Simulation*

Conclusion

This chapter investigated some of the concepts behind a lock detect circuit design. It is necessary for the designer to have some idea how much the width of the lock detect pulses are changing between the locked and unlocked condition. For both of these situations, T_L was used to represent the width of these lock detect pulses. It is here that it may be necessary to make some gross estimates. Once T_L is known, then the voltage levels of the circuit in the locked and unlocked condition can be calculated. Since there is ripple on this voltage, the minimum voltage level in the locked state should be greater than the maximum voltage level in the high state. From this pulse width, the components can be calculated. Note that there is a trade-off between the sensitivity of the circuit and the time it takes the circuit to respond, as seen in the simulation. Although ripple is undesirable, some ripple must be tolerated in order for the circuit to have sufficient sensitivity. One possible variation of the circuit is to design for a high amount of ripple and then add additional low pass filtering stages afterwards. There is also a specific choice of time constants for theoretical optimum sensitivity. However, assumptions need to be made about the pulse width and the pulse shape, there will be some tinkering left to the lock detect circuit designer.

Chapter 33   Impedance Matching Issues and Techniques for PLLs

Introduction

This chapter is devoted to matching the VCO output to the PLL input. In most cases, the VCO has a 50 Ω output impedance. However, the PLL input impedance is usually not purely real and not 50 Ω. This can be the cause of many strange problems and a source of tremendous confusion. If the PLL impedance differs greatly from the trace impedance, then power will be reflected back towards the VCO, and significant power will be lost. Furthermore, if the PLL input impedance is not 50 Ω, then this can also cause misinterpretations of the VCO output power level, since it is typically specified for a 50 Ω load. This chapter discusses some of the issues and problems that can arise because of the PLL input impedance not being 50 Ω, and also provides some general matching techniques.
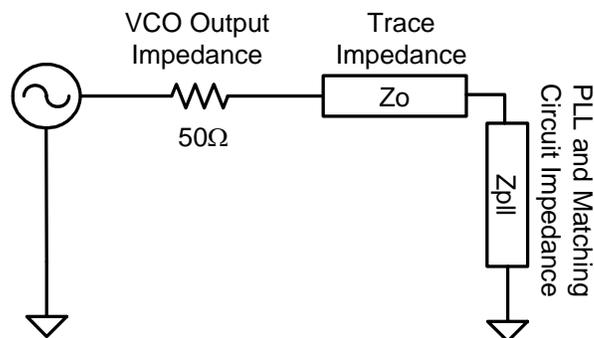
Figure 33.1 Circuit Between VCO and PLL

Calculation of the Trace Impedance

The characteristic impedance of the trace between the PLL and the VCO is determined by the width of the trace, **W**, the height of the trace above the ground plane, **H**, and the relative dielectric constant, ε_r, of the material used for the PCB board. The reader should be careful to not confuse the characteristic impedance of a microstrip line with the input impedance of the PLL or the output impedance of the VCO; these things are all different.
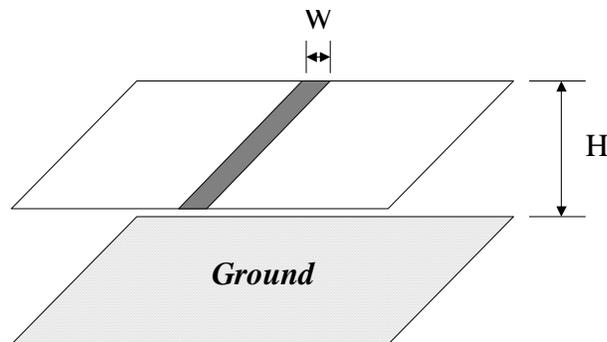
Figure 33.2 Calculation of Trace Impedance

The precise calculation of the trace impedance is rather involved, as is the solution. It is a reasonable approximation to say that the trace impedance is independent of frequency, and it can be approximately calculated with the following formula from the first reference:

$$Zo \equiv \sqrt{\frac{L}{C}} = \frac{87}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_r + 1.41}} \bullet ln\left(7.5 \bullet \frac{H}{W}\right) \qquad (33.1)$$

In this formula, L represents the inductance per unit length and C represents the capacitance per unit length. This formula can also be rearranged in order to determine what ratio of height to width is necessary to produce the desired impedance:

$$\frac{H}{W} = \frac{e^{\frac{Zo \bullet \sqrt{\varepsilon_r + 1.41}}{87}}}{7.5} \qquad (33.2)$$

FR4 is a commonly used material to make PCB boards which has the property that $\varepsilon_r = 4$. This implies that the ratio of the height to the width is about 0.5 for a 50 Ω trace. In other words, if the thickness from the top layer to the ground plane is 31 mils (thousandths of an inch), then the width of the trace should be 62 mils. There are many online calculators for microstrip impedance, such as the first reference presented.
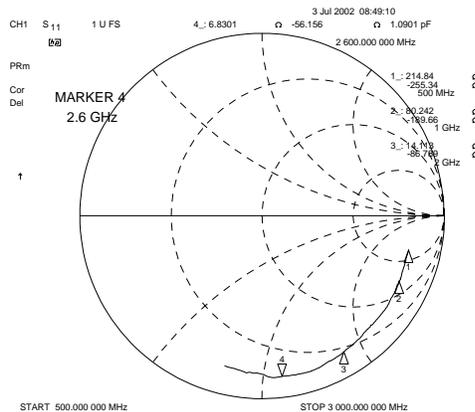
Figure 33.3 *Smith Chart for Typical Input Impedance for a PLL*

Problems with Having the Load Unmatched to the PCB Trace

Throughout this chapter, the trace impedance will be assumed to be 50 Ω, but the PLL impedance will be assumed to be something different. Note from Smith Chart in Figure 33.3 that the input impedance of the PLL is far from 50 Ω and is also frequency dependent.

It is very common for PLLs to have an input impedance with a negative imaginary part (i.e. capacitive). In cases where the signal frequency is low, few problems arise. However, for signals in the GHz range, impedance matching problems are common. In the GHz range, a trace of more than a couple centimeters can cause problems if the PLL impedance is poorly matched to the trace impedance. This typically causes a loss of power and can agitate sensitivity problems in the PLL. Also, since VCOs also put out harmonics, it could cause the prescaler to miscount on a higher harmonic of the VCO if the mismatch is severe enough. In most cases, it is not necessary to use any matching network at all. One way to determine how well the PLL is matched to a 50 Ω line is to calculate the reflection coefficient.

$$\rho = \sqrt{\frac{(Ra - Ro)^2 + Xa^2}{(Ra + Ro)^2 + Xa^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{reflected\ power}{transferred\ power}} \qquad (33.3)$$

The above formula assumes the impedance of the transmission line is **Ro**, and the impedance of the PLL is **Ra** + **j•Xa**. If the reflection coefficient is one, then no power is transferred to the PLL, if it is zero, all the power is transferred to the PLL. If the reflection coefficient gets too large, then this could cause problems. These problems are most pronounced when there is a long trace between the VCO and the PLL.

Impedance Matching Strategies

Eliminating the Imaginary Part of the Impedance

Without loss of generality, both the output impedance of the VCO and the input impedance of the PLL can be assumed to be real. If this is not the case, it can be made so by putting a series capacitor or inductor to cancel out the imaginary part. It is common for PLLs to have a negative reactance; and in this case, an inductor can be placed in series to cancel this out. Note that inductors tend to add cost, and this is not necessary unless the negative reactance of the PLL is fairly large. With a maximum of two components, the reactances of both the source and the load can be canceled. In the most common case, the impedance of the trace and VCO are both 50 Ω, but the PLL is something different. In this case, it makes most sense to place the impedance matching network as close to the PLL as possible.

An alternative approach is to use a capacitor past its self-resonant frequency. Because a capacitor is required as a DC blocking component, this does not require any additional components. If the self-resonant frequency of a capacitor is exceeded, then it becomes inductive.
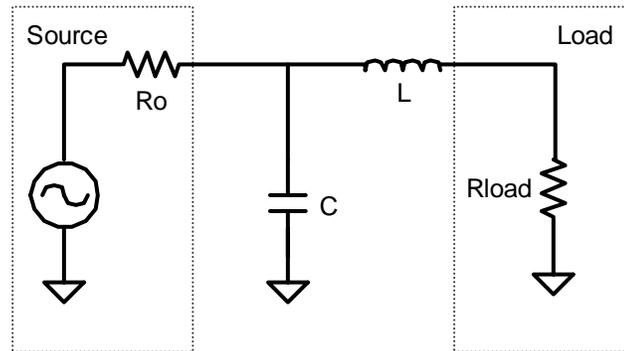
Figure 33.4 *Typical Impedance Matching Circuit*

For this type of match, the frequency must be specified. Note also that this assumes that the load resistance is greater than the source resistance. If this is not the case, then the inductor L, needs to be moved to the left hand side of capacitor **C**, instead of the right hand side and the values for the load and source resistance need to be switched. The matching circuit is designed so that both the load and source see a matching impedance. This yields a system of two equations and two unknowns that can be calculated **L** and **C**. In the case that the load has a negative reactance and also has less resistance than the source, it is convenient to compensate for the negative reactance by making the inductor, **L**, bigger by the appropriate amount.

$$\frac{Ro}{1+s \bullet C \bullet Ro} + s \bullet L = Rload \tag{33.4}$$

$$\frac{s \bullet L + Rload}{s^2 \bullet L \bullet C + s \bullet Rload \bullet C + 1} = Ro \tag{33.5}$$

Solving these simultaneous equations yields the following:

$$C = \frac{\sqrt{\dfrac{Ro}{Rload} - 1}}{\omega \bullet Ro} \tag{33.6}$$

$$L = C \bullet Ro \bullet Rload \tag{33.7}$$

The Resistive Pad

Although the method in the previous section can match any load to any source exactly, it is often not used because inductors are expensive. Also this method is only designed for a fixed frequency and PLL input impedance. If the input impedance of the load varies drastically, then this network will become unoptimized. The resistive pad is a method of matching that does not match exactly, but is very good at accounting for variations in impedance. The biggest disadvantage of the resistive pad is that VCO power must be sacrificed. As more VCO power is sacrificed, the matching ability of the pad increases.
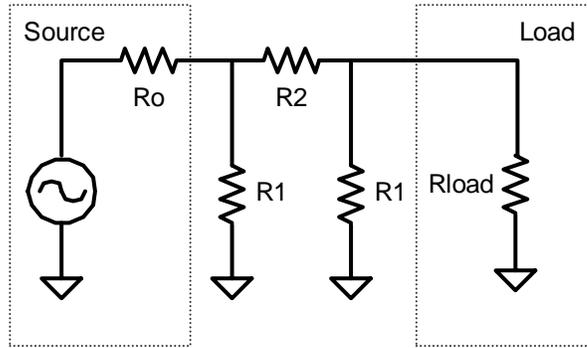
Figure 33.5 *Typical Resistive Pad*

For the resistive pad, the attenuation of the pad is specified, and it is designed assuming that both the source and load impedance are equal to **Ro**, usually 50 Ω. The resistor values satisfy the following equations.

$$R1 \| (R2 + R1 \| Ro) = Ro \tag{33.8}$$

$$\frac{(R1 \| Ro) \bullet R1}{R1 + R2 + R1 \| Ro} = 10^{\frac{Atten}{20}} = K \tag{33.9}$$

In these equations, **Ro** is the source impedance, **Atten** is the attenuation of the pad, and **x ∥ y** is used to denote the parallel combination of two components, **x** and **y**. The components **R1** and **R2** can be calculated as follows:

$$R1 = Ro \bullet \frac{K+1}{K-1} \tag{33.10}$$

$$R2 = \frac{2 \bullet Ro \bullet R1}{R1^2 - Ro^2} \tag{33.11}$$

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Adjusting the Trace Width to Match the PLL Input Impedance and Keeping Traces Short

Regardless of whether a resistive pad or LC matching network is used, the idea was to make the load impedance look the same as the source impedance. If these impedances are matched, then the trace impedance can be made equal to these impedances, and there will theoretically be no undesired transmission line effects, such as standing waves. Another matching strategy is to match the trace impedance to the PLL input impedance, instead of the VCO output impedance. The matching of the trace impedance to the PLL impedance is much more important than the matching of the trace impedance to VCO output impedance. Also, if the trace is short ($1/10^{th}$ of a wavelength or less), then transmission line effects are much less likely to be present.

Real World Component Effects at High Frequencies

In the design of impedance matching networks for high frequency, one should be aware of some of the characteristics of real-world components. Some of the relevant behaviors of resistors and capacitors are discussed below.

Capacitors

One classical problem is choosing what capacitor is optimal to filter out a given frequency. Theoretically, the larger the capacitor, the more the filtering. However, capacitors have an equivalent series resistance (ESR) which limits the minimum impedance at high frequencies. At higher frequencies the impedance due to the ESR can be larger than the impedance due to the capacitance value. In general, larger capacitor values tend to lead to a bigger ESR. Although the ESR is component specific, a quick estimate for this would be on the order of 1 Ω.

Figure 33.6 *High Frequency Capacitor Model*

Another phenomenon of capacitors is the self-resonant frequency. Above this frequency, the capacitor ceases to look like a capacitor, and looks more like an inductor, although it still blocks DC voltages.

The instance where high frequency effects of capacitors come into play for PLL design is in power supply decoupling and the high frequency input pin. For the power supply pins, it is good practice to put a small capacitor for higher frequencies and a large capacitor for smaller frequencies. As for the high frequency input pin, a series capacitor is usually required to block DC voltages at this pin. Because the input impedance of a PLL is typically capacitive, it might actually be beneficial to exceed the self-resonant frequency of the capacitor in order to better match this impedance. If the capacitor chosen for this purpose is too small, then impedance matching problems can result. As a rough rule, 100 pF is a good value for frequencies of 500 MHz up to about 2 GHz, and beyond this, it might make sense to decrease this to a lower value.

Resistors

The real-world resistor has an equivalent parallel capacitance (EPC) and equivalent series inductance (ESL). Although this is component specific, a rough rule of thumb is to assume that the EPC = 0.2 pF and ESL = 1 nH. One guideline to get from this model is not to believe high resistance values at high frequencies. For instance, a real 1 kΩ resistor at 2 GHz operation is probably going to look a lot different than an ideal resistor under these conditions.
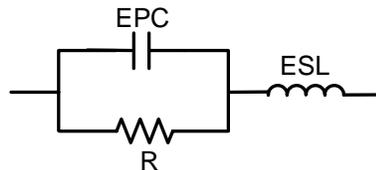
Figure 33.7 *High Frequency Model for a Resistor*

Conclusion

Although impedance matching networks are often unnecessary for matching the PLL to the VCO, there are enough situations where they are needed. Actually, what is really more critical is that the PLL input impedance be matched to the characteristic impedance of the PCB trace. When the trace length between the VCO and PLL approaches one-tenth of a wavelength, the trace is considered long and undesired transmission line effects can result. If there is plenty of VCO power to spare, the resistive pad serves as an economical and process-resistant solution. Otherwise, if the PLL is grossly mismatched to the VCO, the approach with inductors and capacitors can provide a good match. When using any sort of matching network, it is important to put this network as close to the PLL as possible.

References

Online Microstrip Impedance Calculator Tool
http://www.emclab.umr.edu/pcbtlc/microstrip.html

Danzer, Paul (editor) *The ARRL Handbook (Chapter 19)* The American Radio Relay
        League. 1997

I had useful conversations with Thomas Mathews regarding real-world component behavior.

Chapter 34   Crystal Oscillators and VCOs

Introduction

There are two places that the PLL loop contains an oscillator. The first oscillator is the crystal reference, which is a fixed, high quality source. The second one is the VCO (Voltage Controlled Oscillator), which translates a voltage to a frequency. This chapter first starts out with the principles of oscillation that are common to both. Then it discusses crystal oscillators, VCOs, and then phase noise performance.

Principles of Oscillation

The general idea for an oscillator is to have an amplifier with the output fed back to the input through a filter. Since it is not possible to filter without delay, the filter can also be thought of as a delay. In order for a circuit to oscillate, it must satisfy the following conditions at the frequency of oscillation:
1.   The open loop gain at the oscillation frequency must be 1.
2.   The phase of the open loop gain at the oscillation frequency, including the phase shift of the inverter must be a zero or some other multiple of 360 degrees.

The most basic oscillator is called the ring oscillator. This is basically a series of inverter with the output fed back to the input. A delay is added to set the frequency. If the gate delays of the inverters is significant, it adds to this delay. This delay can also be thought of as a filter.   The only difference is that a filter produces a sine wave instead of a square wave. This circuit model works especially well for crystal oscillators and is very intuitive. The fundamental frequency of oscillation, f_{osc}, is easy to calculate once the delay, τ is known.

$$f_{osc} = \frac{1}{\tau}$$

(34.1)
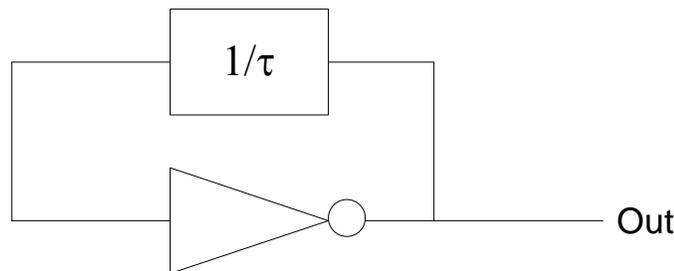
Figure 34.1 A Typical Crystal Oscillator Diagram

Note that there is no input. In reality, the oscillator relies on noise to get it started. Once it does, the inverter sustains the oscillations. It also may take a non-zero amount of time for the oscillator to start up, which is governed by the gain of the inverter and also the external components around it.

Crystal Oscillators

The crystal oscillator uses a crystal to as the resonant circuit. The crystal can be viewed as a filter with a very low bandwidth, which has high frequency accuracy. *Lm* (motional inductance), *Cm* (motional capacitance), and *Cp* (parallel capacitance) represent the circuit equivalent of a quartz crystal.
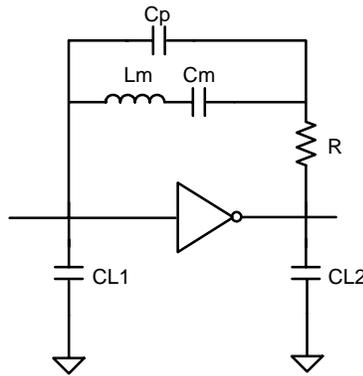
Figure 34.2 *A Typical Crystal Oscillator Circuit*

The output of the inverter is what is used to drive the rest of the circuit. Load capacitors of *CL1* and *CL2* are the load capacitors, which are supplied externally. The resistor, *R*, is optional and can be used to reduce the oscillator harmonics. Note that in many inverter circuits *R* = 0 Ω. Other strategies like making *CL2* > *CL1* also can reduce the crystal harmonics.

Frequency accuracies of ten parts in one million are not uncommon for crystal oscillators. The main cause of frequency accuracy in these oscillators is drift over temperature. The TCXO (Temperature Compensated Crystal Oscillator) has a temperature sensor and compensation to correct the crystal frequency over temperature.   This improves the frequency accuracy by a factor of ten. The OCXO (Oven Controlled Crystal Oscillator) improves the performance by approximately another factor of ten by having an oven heat the crystal to a constant temperature.

Voltage Controlled Oscillators
Although the concept of an amplifier with a filter in the feedback path does apply to a VCO, this is a hard way to visualize the VCO. This is because transistors and FETs do not deal strictly with voltage gains. In order to understand VCOs, it is easier to understand them as a tank circuit and amplification circuitry.

VCO Tank Circuits
The tank circuit consists of an inductor and a capacitor and has many analogies to the pendulum. In the pendulum, the energy changes from potential to kinetic. For the tank circuit, the energy changes from the magnetic field in the inductor to the magnetic field in the capacitor plates. This can be though of as an electronic spring, or others compare it to a pendulum.
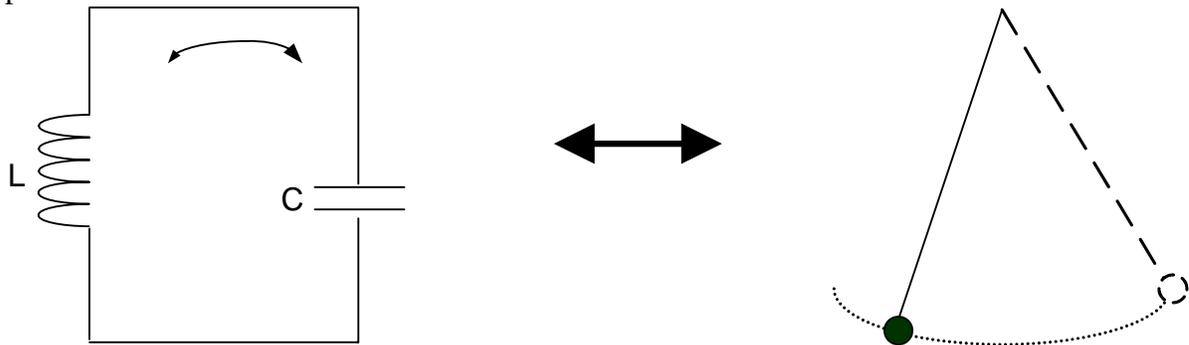
Figure 34.3 *Comparison of a VCO Tank Circuit to a Pendulum*

Disregarding the effects of losses due to friction and resistances, the following formulas apply:

Characteristic	Pendulum	Tank Circuit
Conservation of Energy	$m \bullet g \bullet l \bullet \sin\theta + \frac{1}{2} \bullet m \bullet \left(d\theta/dt\right)^2 = E$	$\frac{1}{2} \bullet C \bullet V^2 + \frac{1}{2} \bullet L \bullet C^2 \bullet \left(dV/dt\right)^2 = E$
Frequency	$\sqrt{\dfrac{g}{l}}$	$\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$

Table 34.1 *Tank Circuit and Pendulum Equations*

So in the tank circuit, when the voltage is maximum, the energy stored in the capacitor is maximized, and the energy stored in the inductor is zero. When the voltage is minimized, the capacitor has no energy and the inductor has a maximum amount of energy in its magnetic field. The reason that this is called a tank circuit is that the energy inside sloshes between the inductor and the capacitor. If there were no parasitic resistances, this circuit could continue forever. This is very similar to the pendulum, where the potential energy is maximized and the kinetic energy is zero when the pendulum is at its highest position. Likewise, when the pendulum is at its lowest position, the potential energy is minimized, but the kinetic energy is maximized; the pendulum is moving at maximum speed here. However, there are resistances, so amplification is needed to sustain the oscillation.

Implementation of Amplifier
If an op-amp is used as the amplifier, this is very intuitive and it is easy to spot this in the circuit. The traditional model of an amplifier and a filter makes a lot of sense. However, at higher frequencies, it is typical to use transistors or FET devices. In this case, trying to think of a VCO as an amplifier with a filter in the feedback path can be confusing because transistors and FETs typically work with current gains and not purely voltage gains. A better way to think of it is as a tank circuit with some active circuit to sustain the oscillation, then this makes more sense. The basic idea is that the full voltage of the tank circuit drives the amplifier, but the output of the amplifier is lightly coupled to the tank circuit so as not to disturb the natural oscillations of the circuit. Aside from coupling in the amplified signal to the tank, the coupling network is also actually part of the tank as well. In Figure 34.4 , capacitors C1 and C2 form the coupling network.

Oscillator Topologies
The common types of VCOs are Colpitts, Clapp, and Hartley. The thing that makes them different is how the output of the amplifying device is applied to the tank circuit.

In the Colpitts design, there is a capacitive divider that forms part of the resonant capacitance to which this is applied.
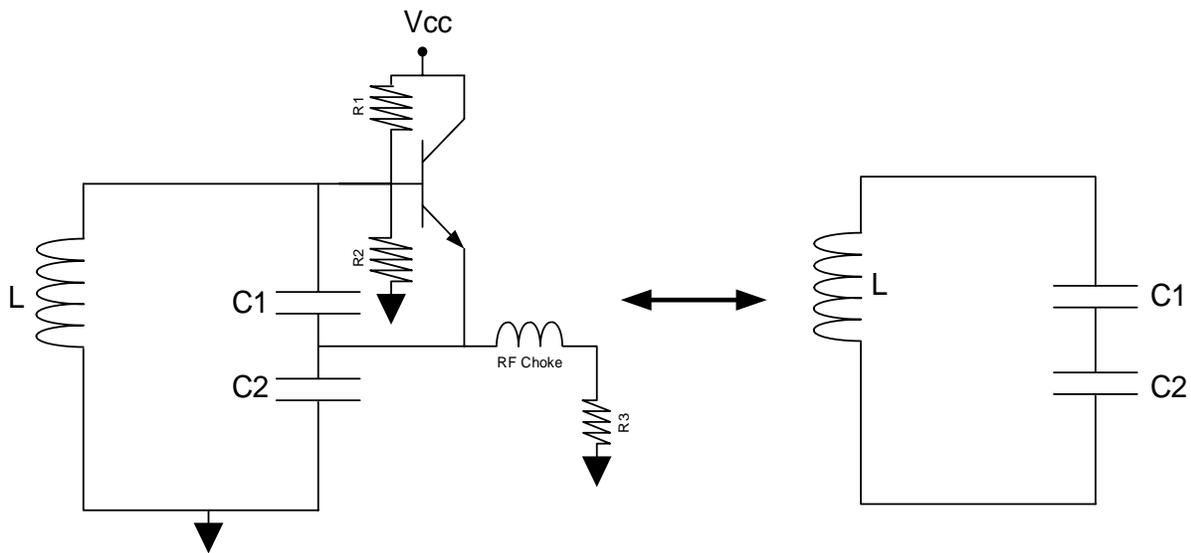
Figure 34.4 *Colpitts Oscillator and Its Tank Circuit*
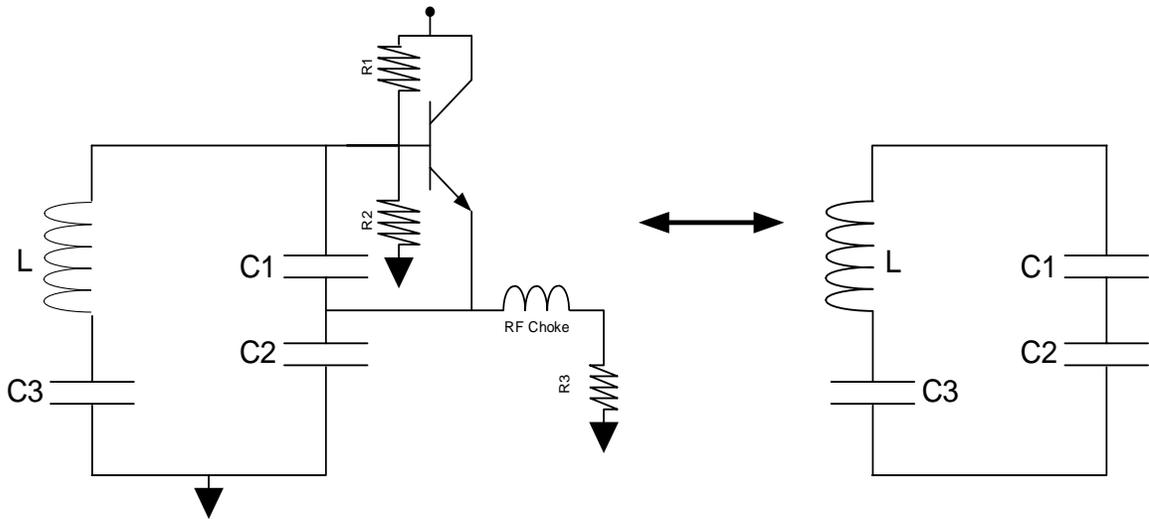
Figure 34.5 Clapp Oscillator and Its Tank Circuit

The Clapp oscillator is very similar to the Colpitts oscillator, except for the fact that there is a series capacitor, C3 in this case, added in series with the inductor. It also goes by the name of Clapp-Gouriet and Series Tuned Colpitts Oscillator.
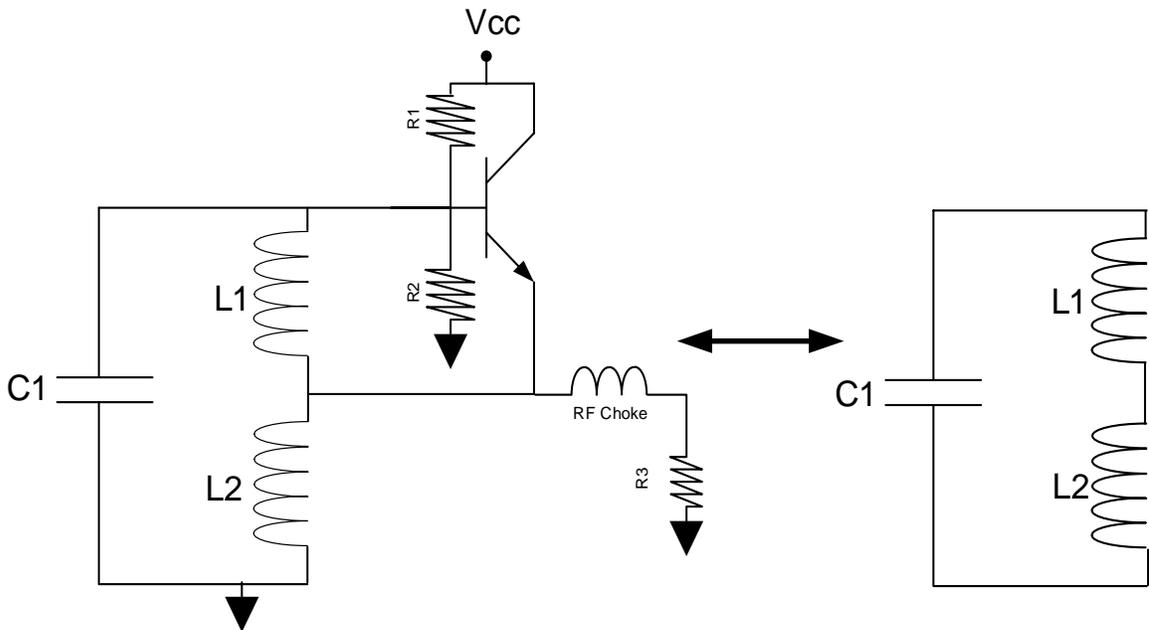
Figure 34.6 Hartley Oscillator and Its Tank Circuit

In the Hartley oscillator, the feedback from the amplifier is applied to the inductor. To implement this, there are two inductors, and the voltage is applied between them. The sum of the two inductors forms the total inductance.

The Varactor Diode

The concept of the tank circuit has been discussed, but the circuits are only designed to operate at a single frequency -- not how to adjust the frequency. For the VCO, the varactor diode is the component that does this. It is a reverse biased diode that has a junction capacitance between the P and N junctions. Between these two junctions, there is a depletion layer. The width of this depletion layer widens as the reverse voltage across the diode is increases. Recall that for two parallel plates, the capacitance is inversely proportional to the distance between the plates. This situation applies to the varactor diode. As the voltage is increased, the capacitance becomes less in accordance with the formula below.

$$C_{Varactor}(V) = \frac{C_{Varactor}(0)}{\sqrt{\phi + V}}$$

(34.2)

$C_{Varactor}(V)$ is the capacitance of the varactor diode, $C_{Varactor}(0)$ is the diode capacitance specified at a zero volts . ϕ is the diode potential voltage, typically 0.7 volts, and V is the voltage applied. In a typical datasheet for a varactor diode, the capacitance at a few different voltages should be given. It is also possible for the radical on the bottom to of the formula be a cube root or a fourth root, but these situations are less common.

The varactor diode is typically placed in parallel with one of the capacitors in the tank circuit. The quality factor of a fixed value capacitor is typically higher than that for the varactor, so this improves phase noise at the expense of tuning range. For maximum tuning range, the varactor diode can completely replace one of these capacitors. There are also tricks that can be done. For instance, more than one varactor can be used to adjust more than one of these capacitor values. Varactor diodes have a noise resistance, which becomes half when two are added in parallel.

Oscillation Frequency Calculation

In order to calculate the theoretical oscillation frequency, one first must find the circuit inductance and circuit capacitance. The value for the circuit inductance, L, is pretty easy to calculate. However, the value for the total capacitance, C_{Total}, takes some more work. This is the sum of the equivalent capacitance, $C_{Equivalent}$, and the parasitic capacitance, $C_{Parasitic}$. In order to calculate the equivalent capacitance it is helpful to first simplify the circuit. The first simplification is to remove the amplifier and all supporting bias circuitry. Another simplifying assumption is to remember that the frequency is the same anywhere in the tank, so the placement of the ground can be ignored. This is done in Figure 34.4 , Figure 34.5 , and Figure 34.6 .

Oscillator Type	Equivalent Inductance	Equivalent Capacitance
Colpitts (Figure 34.4)	L	$C_{Eqivalent} = \dfrac{1}{\left(\dfrac{1}{C1} + \dfrac{1}{C2}\right)}$
Clapp (Figure 34.5)	L	$C_{Eqivalent} = \dfrac{1}{\left(\dfrac{1}{C1} + \dfrac{1}{C2}\right)}$
Hartley (Figure 34.6)	$L1 + L2$	$C_{Eqivalent} = C1$

Table 34.2 Resonant Component Calculations

For the purposes of this calculation, it is important to remember that the varactor diode capacitance will add to one of the capacitances, **C1**, **C2**, or **C3**. Be aware that there are many different oscillator topologies and this formula for the equivalent capacitance is only good for this topology.

Another thing to watch out for is parasitic capacitances of the transistor and from other sources, like the board. In order to model the parasitics, which are typically on the order of a few pF, it suffices as a first order approximation to add them to the theoretical capacitance. The impact of this parasitic capacitance is that it will make the measured oscillation frequency slightly lower. In practice, it remains relatively constant, provided that the VCO frequency is not made too high, where higher order effects can distort this. If uncertain, or just designing a VCO for the first time, perhaps this can be assumed to be zero, or a few pF. If the actual VCO frequency, $f_{measured}$, is available, then the parasitic capacitance can be calculated as follows:

$$C_{Parasutuc} = \frac{1}{L \bullet \left(2\pi \bullet f_{measured}\right)} - C_{Equivalent} \tag{34.3}$$

The total capacitance can then be calculated as:

$$C_{Total} = C_{Equivalent} + C_{Parasitic} \tag{34.4}$$

The theoretical oscillation frequency is given by:

$$f_{vco} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{L \bullet C_{Total}}} \tag{34.5}$$

VCO Performance Parameters

Frequency Range

The frequency range of the VCO is set by the capacitors in the circuit and how much the varactor diode capacitance can change. A wider frequency range is always desirable, but this comes at the cost of phase noise. Because the frequency accuracy of the VCO is typically process and temperature dependent, the guaranteed frequency range of the datasheet is typically much less than the actual frequency range the VCO is capable of tuning over.

VCO Gain

The gain of the VCO is expressed in MHz/V and is how much the output frequency changes for a change in the input voltage. This gain typically amplifies noise voltages, and therefore it is desirable to keep this low for noise purposes, but this makes the tuning range narrower. A simplified way of viewing the VCO gain is to treat this as a constant. If this assumption is grossly wrong, then the tuning range can be broken up into several regions. Under this assumption, it can be calculated from the extreme frequencies and extreme tuning voltages.

$$Kvco \approx \frac{f_{max} - f_{min}}{V_{Tune,Max} - V_{Tune,Min}} \qquad (34.6)$$

The beauty of the above formula is that all the required terms are easy to measure. If it is understood how the capacitance of the varactor changes over voltage, then the VCO gain can be theoretically calculated. Note that the calculation uses the varactor diode equation presented in this book. One derivative of the total capacitance as a function of the varactor diode capacitance is a function of the topology of the circuit and is therefore not explicitly calculated.

$$Kvco(V) = \frac{df}{dV} = \frac{df}{dC_{Total}} \bullet \frac{dC_{Total}}{dC_{Varactor}} \bullet \frac{dC_{Varactor}}{dV} = \frac{[C_{Total} \bullet (\phi + V)]^{-3/2}}{2\pi\sqrt{L}} \bullet \frac{dC_{Total}}{dC_{Varactor}} \qquad (34.7)$$

Pushing and Power Supply Noise Rejection

Pushing refers to how much a change in voltage at the power supply pins of the VCO impact the output frequency. If a PLL is used to lock the VCO, then the VCO will just re-lock to the correct frequency. But this is still relevant for two reasons. The first reason is that if there is an abrupt change in voltage, it could cause a glitch in the VCO frequency which would then need to settle out. The other reason is that this is also related to noise. The best way to think of the power supply pins is that they have a gain in MHz/Volt, just as the tuning voltage pin does. Any noise voltage acting on these pins goes to the output of the VCO. If the gain at this pin is high, then the noise at the output of the VCO will be worse.

Pulling

Pulling refers to how much the VCO frequency will shift when a load is placed on the output. One example of where this can be an issue is in a circuit when the power amplifier is first turned on. This changes the load presented to the VCO and can cause a frequency disturbance that needs to settle out.

Harmonics
VCOs generate harmonics, which occur at a multiple of the out frequency. In general, these are considered undesirable.   The two exceptions is if the desired output is a square wave, which is very rich in harmonics. The other exception is when one wants to intentionally lock the PLL to one of these harmonics in order to get a higher frequency. In this case, the higher harmonics of the VCO are intentionally used to as a higher frequency power. The drawback of this approach is a lot of power is sacrificed.

Other Issues with VCOs
- The output power can vary with frequency, voltage, and temperature
- If there is not sufficient isolation, then the LC resonant circuit can react with the loop filter capacitor that is on the tuning voltage.
- For a small number of VCOs, the varactor diode can leak current, especially if the minimum tuning voltage specification is violated.
- For a small number of VCOs, they may not oscillate if the tuning voltage is 0 V.
- VCOs typically have a input capacitance, which adds impacts the loop filter. Typically this is the varactor diode and whatever is in parallel with this. Since the varactor diode capacitance varies, the loop filter capacitor in parallel with the VCO should be larger than this input capacitance.

VCO Phase Noise

The VCO phase noise improves as one goes to farther offsets from the carrier. Although there could be more regions with different slopes to the phase noise, a reasonable model for this is to divide this noise into three regions. The first region is close to the carrier, and the phase noise drops off at 30 dB/decade. This is often due to the flicker noise of the transistors. The second region is the $1/f^2$ noise and the phase noise decreases at 20 dB/decade. This phase noise is controlled by many factors. A traditional equation that describes phase noise in this region is called Lesson's Equation and is given below:

$$L(f) = 10 \bullet \log \left(\frac{1}{2} \bullet \frac{F \bullet k \bullet T}{P} \bullet \left(\frac{f_{vco}}{2 \bullet Q_L \bullet f} \right)^2 \right)$$

(34.8)

$L(f)$	=	Phase noise in dBc/Hz		
f	=	Offset Frequency where phase noise is measured		
F	=	Noise Figure of Active Device		
k	=	Boltzman's constant	=	1.380658×10^{-23} J/K
T	=	Temperature in Kelvin		
P	=	RF Power at input of active device		
f_{vco}	=	Operating Frequency of the VCO		
Q_L	=	Loaded Quality Factor of the inductor	=	X_L / R_L

This formula implies a 20 dB/decade slope to the phase noise. However, it only works in one region of the VCO and neglects the noise contribution due to the noise resistance of the noise resistance of the varactor diode. The formula below is an expanded version of Lesson's equation that shows the phase noise in all three regions.

$$L(f) = 10 \bullet \log \left(\frac{1}{2} \bullet \left[\left(\frac{f_{vco}}{2 \bullet Q_L \bullet f} \right)^2 + 1 \right] \bullet \left[\frac{f_{1/f^3}}{f} + 1 \right] \bullet \left[\frac{F \bullet k \bullet T}{P} \right] + \frac{2 \bullet k \bullet T \bullet R_{var} \bullet Kvco^2}{f^2} \right)$$

(34.9)

f_{1/f^3}	=	$1/f^3$ noise (flicker noise) corner frequency
R_{var}	=	Noise resistance of the varactor diode
$Kvco$	=	VCO Gain

Note that for all regions, lower noise figure and higher output power are theoretically better on a dB for dB basis. Also, lower temperatures are theoretically better. The noise in the $1/f^3$ and $1/f^2$ regions degrade at higher output frequencies and lower Q_L factors in a 20 log sense. In other words, if the output frequency is doubled, the noise in these regions degrades 6 dB. Q_L is a critical parameter and discussed much when the objective is to minimize the VCO phase noise. This is measured at the operating frequency and defined as the real ratio of the reactance of the inductor divided by its resistance. Ideally, the resistance of the inductor should be zero, and Q should be infinite, but this is never the case since there will

always be some resistance in the inductor. Just as friction stops the motion of the pendulum, the resistance in the inductor damps the oscillation of the tank circuit. A considerable amount of time spent optimizing phase noise in VCOs involves trying to get as high of a *Q* factor as possible. The *Q* factor of the inductor goes down considerably as it is loaded, so one must be sure to use the loaded *Q* for Lesson's Equation. Also, in the $1/f^2$ region, there is an additional term that contains Kvco. What this implies is that the noise resistance of the varactor diode becomes relevant at higher VCO gains. Making the VCO gain smaller will improve the phase noise, but at some point, the other term becomes dominant, and there are diminishing returns.

A Simple VCO Model

The Lesson's equation model for the VCO is nice, but there are many terms that the user may not know the value of. One simple way to model a VCO is to measure it and try to fit a model to all three regions of the VCO. The tricky part is that it is very possible that noise sources from more than one region are contributing to noise at a particular point. For this strategy, one measures the phase noise at 3 points. The first one should be targeting the $1/f^3$ region, the second one should be targeting the $1/f^2$ region, and the third one should be far out. The above model can be approximated in three different regions and can be re-stated as:

$$L(f) = 10 \bullet \log\left(N3 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f}\right)^3 + N2 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f}\right)^2 + N0 \right) \qquad (34.10)$$

$$N3 = \frac{1}{f^3} \text{ Noise Coefficient } = \frac{F \bullet k \bullet T}{P} \bullet \frac{f_{1/f^3} \bullet f_{vco}^2}{8 \bullet Q_L^2 \bullet f_{default}^3} \qquad (34.11)$$

$$N2 = \frac{1}{f^2} \text{ Noise Coefficient } = \frac{F \bullet k \bullet T}{P} \bullet \frac{f_{vco}^2}{8 \bullet Q_L^2 \bullet f_{default}^2} + \frac{2 \bullet k \bullet T \bullet R_{var} \bullet Kvco^2}{f_{default}^2} \qquad (34.12)$$

$$N0 = VCO \text{ Noise Floor } = \frac{F \bullet k \bullet T}{P} \qquad (34.13)$$

$$f_{default} = \text{ Normalized offset for phase noise} \qquad (34.14)$$

Application of Model to Measured Phase Noise
Consider that the following data is taken:

Phase Noise	Phase Noise Offset	Region Targeted	Typical Offset
$p3 = 10^{P3/10}$	f3	$1/f^3$	1 kHz
$p2 = 10^{P2/10}$	f2	$1/f^2$	100 kHz
$p0 = 10^{P0/10}$	f0	Flat	10 MHz

***Table 34.3** Phase Noise Measurements*

It will save a lot of work in the future if the units are converted to scalar units, as they are done in the table. The first thing to do is check the slope between P3 and P2. This slope should be less than 30, but more than 20. If it is more than 30, then this noise model will not work close in. If it is within measurement error of 30, then both points are on the $1/f^3$ slope. If it is less than 20, then none of the points are on the $1/f^3$ slope.

$$\frac{P2 - P3}{\log\left(\dfrac{f2}{f3}\right)} \qquad (34.15)$$

The second thing to do is to check the slope between P2 and P0. This slope should be less than 20, but more than 0. If it is more than 20, then one of these points is on the $1/f^3$ slope. If it is equal to 20, then both points are on the $1/f^2$ slope. If it is zero, clearly both measurements are on the floor.

$$\frac{P2 - P3}{\log\left(\dfrac{f2}{f3}\right)} \qquad (34.16)$$

Once it is know what slope the points are on, then this leads to a system of at most 3 equations and unknowns. Complex values can occur for A, B, and C if the VCO being modeled does not fit the assumptions of the model. In the case of 3 equations and 3 unknowns, a simplifying assumption that can be applied is that the noise floor and the $1/f^3$ noise will not be acting on the same point. The equations are as follows:

$$p3 = n3 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f3}\right)^3 + n2 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^2 + n0 \qquad (34.17)$$

$$p2 = n3 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^3 + n2 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^2 + n0 \qquad (34.18)$$

$$p0 = n3 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f0}\right)^3 + n2 \bullet \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f0}\right)^2 + n0 \qquad (34.19)$$

Now it may be the case that one or more of these equations is redundant and can be ignored. In the case that an equation is ignored, then one of the noise coefficients will be zero, and the work will be simplified. In the case that all three equations are valid, then it simplifies calculations to assume that the $1/f^3$ and noise floor terms will not be acting at the same offset. Furthermore, it seems to reduce the occurrences of getting complex values for *n3*, *n2*, and *n0*. In the case of point *p2*, one doesn't know which one of these two sources is acting there, so all terms have to be left in. Using this assumption, this can be reduced to the following matrix equation that has the following solution:

$$(34.20)$$

$$
\begin{bmatrix} n3 \\ n2 \\ n0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f3}\right)^3 & \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f3}\right)^3 & 0 \\[2ex] \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^3 & \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^3 & 1 \\[2ex] 0 & \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f0}\right)^3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \bullet \begin{bmatrix} p3 \\ p2 \\ p0 \end{bmatrix}
$$

$$(34.21)$$

$$
N3(f) = 10 \bullet \log\left[\frac{n3 \bullet \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f}\right)^3}{10} \right]
$$

$$(34.22)$$

$$
N2(f) = 10 \bullet \log\left[\frac{n2 \bullet \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f}\right)^2}{10} \right]
$$

$$(34.23)$$

$$
N0 = 10 \bullet \log\left[\frac{n0}{10} \right]
$$

The $1/f^3$ to $1/f^2$ corner point, which is where these two noise sources contribute equally can be calculated as follows:

$$
f_{Corner3} = f_{default} \bullet \frac{n3}{n2} \tag{34.24}
$$

The $1/f^2$ to phase noise floor corner point, which is where these two noise sources contribute equally can be calculated as follows:

$$
f_{CornerF} = f_{default} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{n2}{n0}} \tag{34.25}
$$

Types of VCOs

So far, the resonant circuit of the oscillator was implemented with an inductor(s) and capacitors. However, there are actually many ways that resonant circuits can be implemented.

Circuit Type	Resonant Circuit	Tuning Range	Phase Noise
RC Oscillator	Resistor and Capacitor	Wide	Poor
Standard LC VCO	Inductor(s) and Capacitor(s)	Wide	Fair
Stripline VCO	Microstrip	Wide	Fair
SAW (Surface Acoustic Wave) Oscillator	SAW Filter	Narrow	Excellent
VCXO (Voltage Controlled Crystal Oscillator)	Crystal	Very Narrow	Best
CRO (Ceramic Resonator Oscillator)	Ceramic	Wide	Excellent
DRO (Dielectric Resonator Oscillator)	Dielectric	Wide	Excellent
YIG Oscillator	YIG Sphere	Very Wide	Fair
Silicon VCO	Varies, but often bond wires are used to implement the inductance.	Very Wide	Fair

Table 34.4 Different Types of Oscillators

Silicon VCOs

One of the VCO types that is worth special attention is the silicon VCO. Exactly how the VCO is implemented may change from design to design, but there are many common techniques that are used. Among some common methods used are switched capacitors for expanded tuning range, using bond wires and packaging to create an inductance for the tank, and using digital optimization routines to optimize phase noise.

One traditional trade-off in VCO design is tuning range versus phase noise. One technique commonly used on silicon VCOs is to use a bank of switched capacitors for the tank circuit. This gives the advantage that the VCO gain can be kept narrow while still allowing the VCO to tune over a wide range. Silicon VCOs that have this type of circuitry need to go through a calibration process whenever the frequency is changed. This calibration is necessary to determine which capacitor combination is best to center the tank at the new desired frequency. This circuitry is typically transparent to the user included on the chip and runs through various combinations of the capacitors to determine the best combination. This most fundamental way to implement this is with a "divide and conquer" approach. In this approach, the capacitors are in the relative values of 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, and so on. Initially, the largest capacitor is switched in. If the achieved frequency of the VCO is higher than the target frequency, then the next largest capacitor is switched in. Otherwise, the largest capacitor is switched out, and the second largest capacitor is switched in. The frequency

error in each step is half of what it was in the previous step. This process is repeated until the value of the smallest capacitor is set. After this, the VCO is allowed to settle to the final frequency in analog mode. The method used to determine whether the current frequency is too high or too low can change. If this is based on the tuning voltage, then the loop filter response needs to be fast enough to allow the tuning voltage to be near the correct voltage before the next decision is made. If it is based on a frequency lock loop, this restriction is eliminated. For this reason, this method lends itself well when the PLL is included with the VCO. The rate at which these capacitors are switched in and is typically based on the crystal oscillator frequency or some sub multiple of it. The challenge with the divide and conquer approach happens when the target frequency lies close to the border frequency between two capacitor codes. For this reason, and also to allow for temperature drift, the frequency ranges covered by each capacitor code must have some overlapping with the others. There are also other methods of dealing with this issue as well.
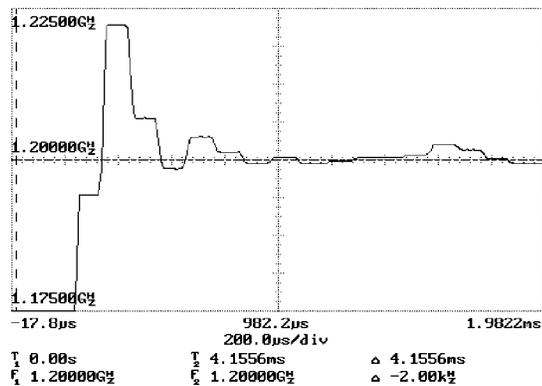
Figure 34.7 *Silicon VCO Using a Divide and Conquer Approach*

There are several methods that are commonly employed in order to form the inductance for the tank circuit. In all cases, the inductance of the bond wires, typically on the order of 1 nH, are taken into consideration. If the frequency is low, and the inductance required is high, then requiring the user to add an external inductance is often the approach. This requires an extra component, but allows the part to be more flexible for more frequencies. The inductance of the bond wires adds to this inductance to form the inductor for the tank circuit, and typically the way to achieve the highest frequency possible is to short the pin to ground. Another approach is simply use the bond wires of the package alone. There are also some silicon VCOs that direct the user to create some sort of inductance using traces. Typically, the tolerances on the values for these inductors formed by bond wires and traces may not be that great. In addition, the tolerances for capacitors on chip may also not be that great. For this reason, the actual tuning range of the VCO is typically much more than the value specified on the datasheet. This is the same for other types of VCOs as well.

Another common technique used in silicon VCOs are digital optimization techniques for phase noise. For a traditional VCO, one can spend considerable time tinkering with components and bias levels for the active device in order to optimize phase noise. Instead of trying several different values for components, some silicon VCOs can have routines that do this automatically, or have certain settings that are software programmable. This makes it easier to tweak and look for the optimal settings. It is very common on silicon VCOs to

have many hidden test functions are for optimizing the transient response of the VCO and the phase noise and are set to optimum conditions for the user.

Another common practice with silicon VCOs is to include a lot of extra bells and whistles. One of the most common is frequency dividers that allow the user to get the VCO frequency divide by 2, 4, or some other value. Silicon VCOs can also be integrated with other components, perhaps part of a complete chipset. Another possibility is programmable output power. The number of extra components and features included with the silicon VCO is limited by imagination, cost, and fear of crosstalk.

Conclusion
This chapter has covered the basics of oscillators and VCOs, but in no way has it covered all the issues and details. Nevertheless, the reader should have some fundamental understand of how the VCO works after reading this chapter. Many VCOs are commercially available and can be bought in a module. In general, higher frequency VCOs are more challenging and it is more common practice to buy these in module or integrated form.
Oscillators for low phase noise performance applications such as microprocessor clocks have been integrated on silicon for a long time. However, there has previously been a barrier to entry for silicon VCOs into high performance applications. The primary issue was phase noise, but many advancements have been recently made in the area of improving VCO phase noise.

References

Carlini, Jim A 2.45 GHz Low Cost, High Performance VCO
  Microwave Journal Technical feature
  http://www.ansoft.con/news/articles/MWJ.04.00.pdf

Gardner, F.M. *Phaselock Techniques*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, 1980

Massovich, Vadim *Frequency Synthesis: Theory and Design*, 3rd ed., John Wiley & Sons
  1987

1997 ARRL Handbook, 74th ed. The American Radio Relay League, 1996

Rohde, Ulrich L. *Microwave and Wireless Synthesizers: Theory and Design*, John
  Wiley & ,1997

Appendix A: A Closer Look at a Clapp Oscillator
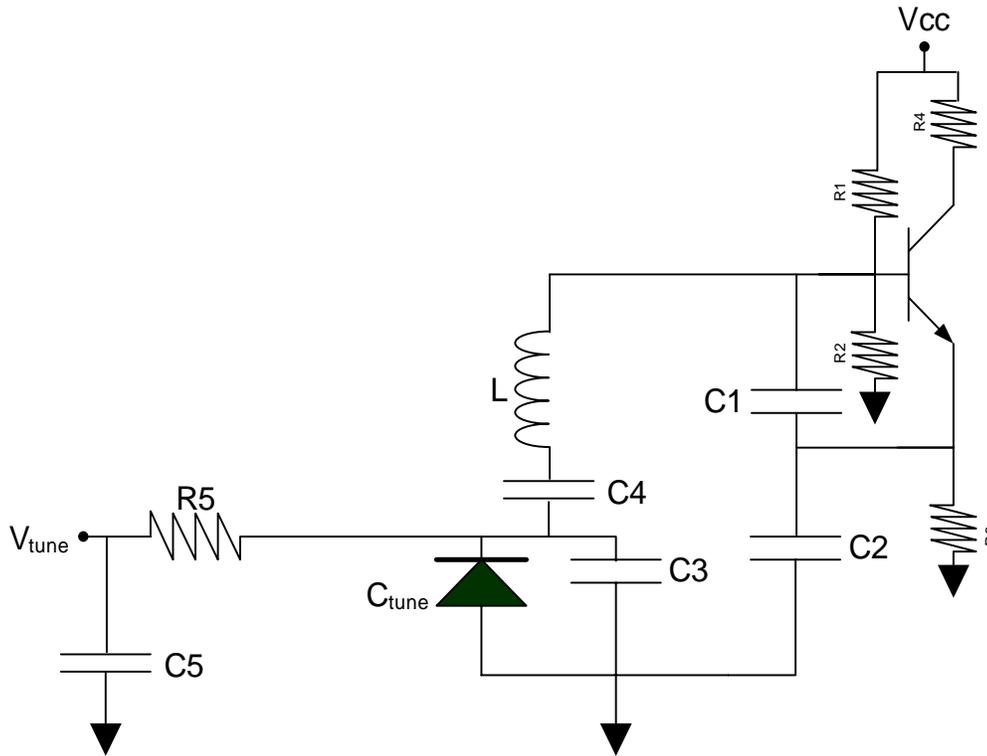
Component	Primary Purpose	Value
C_{Vtune}	Varactor Diode, which is a voltage variable capacitance	~32 pF (@ 0 V) 15pF (@ 2 V) ~12.5pF (@ 3V)
T1	Amplifier	
L	Inductor for the Tank	56 nH
C1	Couples Output into Tank and forms part of resonant tank.	27 pF
C2		27 pF
C3	Helps improve phase noise due to varactor diode resistance by adding in parallel to varactor.	Open
C4	Forms a DC block, so the tuning voltage does not fight the transistor bias level.	100 pF
C5	Works with R5 to prevent noise from VCO from exiting out through the tuning voltage. Especially important for a VCO module.	Open
R1		10 kΩ
R2		8.2 kΩ
R3	Transistor Biasing	10 kΩ
R4		75 Ω
R5	Isolates VCO tank circuit from the loop filter so that the loop filter capacitance will not shift the VCO frequency.	10 kΩ

Impact of Components on VCO Frequency

For this tank circuit, there are two additional components; the varactor diode and **C4**. The simplified tank circuit is shown below.
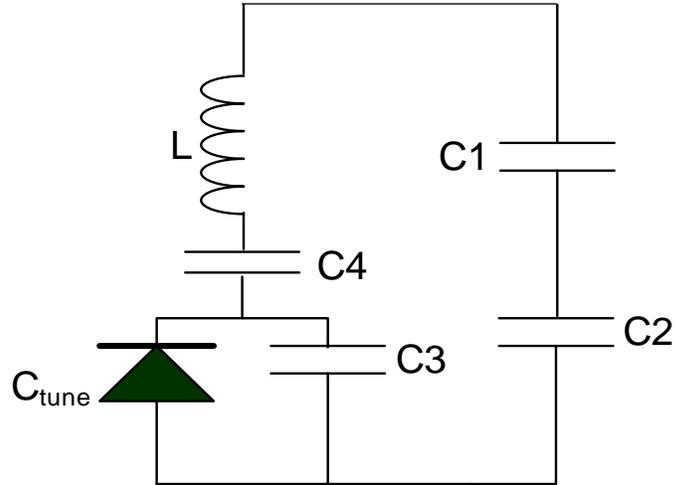
Figure 34.8 *Simplified Tank Circuit*

In order to better understand the impact of the components on this VCO Frequency, it was theoretically calculated assuming that the parasitic capacitance was zero. Then components were changed and the parasitic capacitance was calculated under these different circumstances to see how much it changed. The theoretical VCO frequency was calculated from the following formulae:

$$f_{Theoretical} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{L \bullet C_{Equivalent}}}$$

(34.26)

$$C_{Equivalent} = \frac{1}{\left(\dfrac{1}{C1} + \dfrac{1}{C2} + \dfrac{1}{C3+C_{tune}} + \dfrac{1}{C4}\right)}$$

(34.27)

The impact of **C4** on frequency is very small, but it is easy to account for it, since it is just in series with the other capacitors. Note that in a string of series capacitors, the smallest capacitor value dominates. The value for the parasitic capacitance, C_{Par}, was initially assumed to be zero, but then was extrapolated by comparing the theoretical and measured operating frequencies via the formula:

$$C_{Parasitic} = \frac{1}{\left(2\pi \bullet f_{measured}\right)^2 \bullet L} - C_{Equivalent}$$

(34.28)

Once the parasitic capacitance was extrapolated when the varactor was at a fixed frequency of 2 volts, then the frequency range of the VCO could be calculated. In order to measure the extreme frequencies of the VCO, it was tuned to frequencies far above and below its tuning capabilities, and the actual frequency achieved was noted.

	C1	C2	C3	L	Measured Frequency			Theoretical Frequency (Cpar=0)	C_{Par}
	pF	pF	pF	nH	Min	Vtune =2V	Max	Vtune =2V	pF
#1	27	27	OPEN	12	385.3	430.3	445.3	564.1	4.8
#2	27	27	OPEN	56	204.8	227.8	235.2	261.1	2.1
#3	27	27	OPEN	120	139.8	155.1	160.0	178.4	2.1
#4	27	27	10	56	194.1	205.4	208.5	230.5	2.2
#5	15	150	OPEN	56	204.7	226.2	233.3	260.5	2.2
#6	18	56	OPEN	56	203.3	226.3	233.7	260.5	2.2

The first thing to note is that the calculated value for the parasitic capacitance is very constant, except for the first row, where this is higher frequency, and there could be other effects. Also, the inductor value is changing. The fact that this parasitic capacitance is constant shows how effective this model is at predicting VCO frequency. It is not shown in the table, but the minimum and maximum frequencies can also be predicted with textbook accuracy.

The first three lines of the table show the impact of changing the inductor value. Note that the absolute tuning range goes up with frequency, but as a percentage, it is roughly constant. Comparing the fourth line to the third line, we see the impact of adding a capacitance in parallel with the varactor. This greatly reduces the tuning range, but will be shown later to improve phase noise slightly in the $1/f^2$ region, as Lesson's equation would theoretically predict.

The last two lines are dealing with the coupling capacitors in the tank. They were chosen to keep their series value roughly constant, and the frequency does not shift as one would theoretically expect.. When the output frequency is high, then there are other effects that cause the calculated parasitic capacitance to be higher. For the second and third lines, and for the rest of the table, there is textbook agreement. This shows how powerful this parasitic capacitance can be as a modeling tool. Note also that when the inductor is changed, this could be changing parasitics as well.
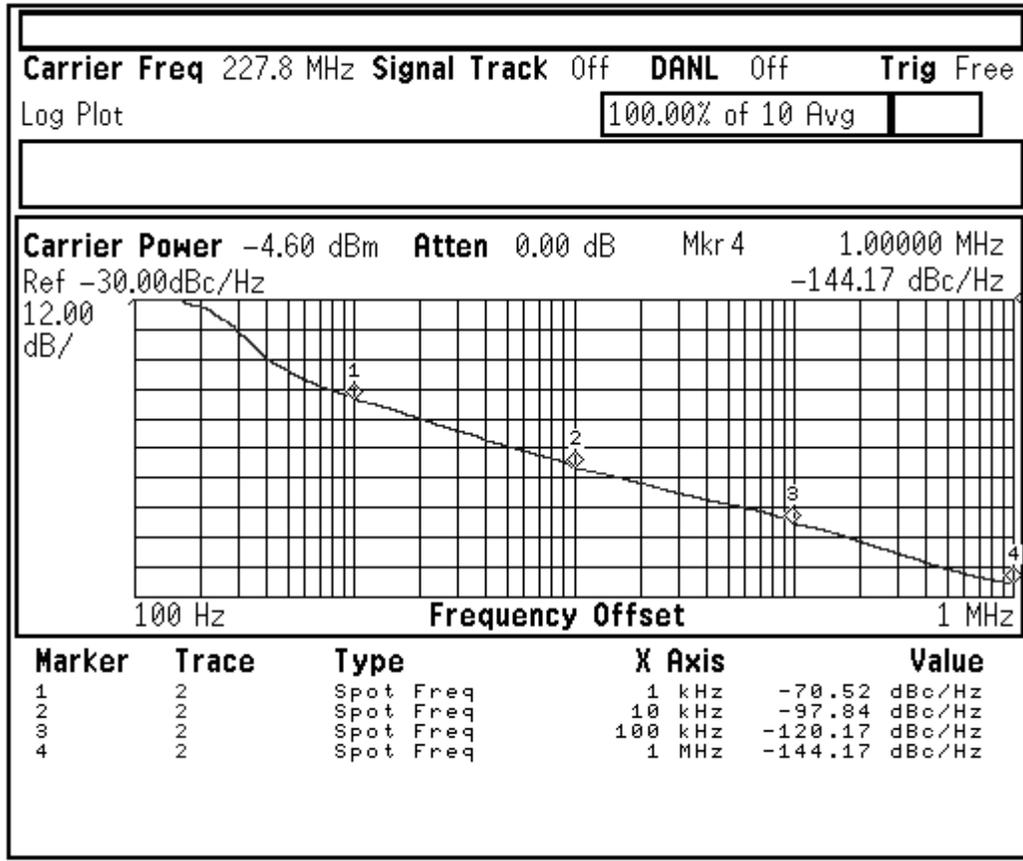
**Figure 34.9** *Measured Phase Noise of the VCO with the Agilent E4445A*
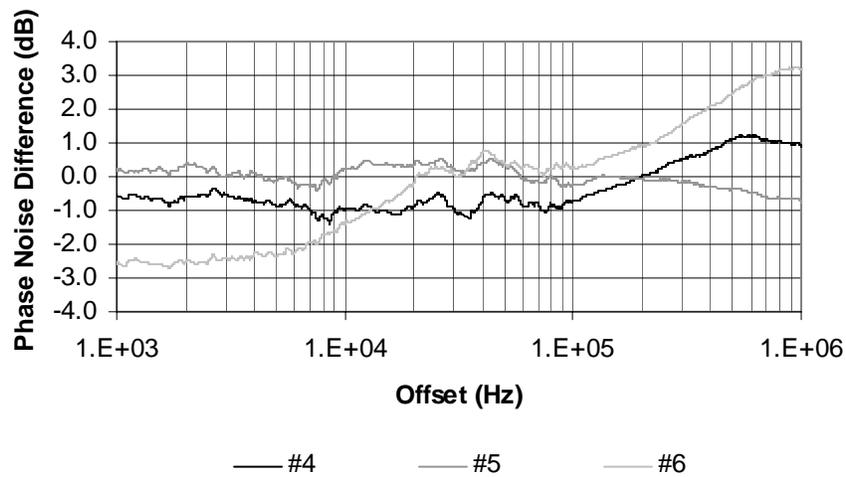
Figure 34.10 *Relative Phase Noise to Case #2*

All of these plots were taken at a tuning voltage of 2 volts. Recall that Case #2 was with when there was no capacitance I parallel with the varactor diode and the coupling capacitors were equal. Case #4 is where 10 pF is added in parallel to the varactor diode. This improves phase noise out to about 200 kHz. However, this also decreases the tuning range by more than a factor of two.

Options #5 and #6 explore the impact of changing the coupling capacitors. These do not impact the tuning range, but do have some effect on phase noise. Disregarding all practical limitations, the optimal phase noise would be when C2 is infinite and C1 was zero, or to make the ratio C2/C1 as high as possible. However, the gain of the amplifier is what will limit how high this ratio can practically be. As with the pendulum analogy, this would be disturbing the tank as little as possible. In this case, the minimum possible gain would be applied to the $1/f^3$ and $1/f^2$ noise. However, this is not practical. The thing that usually limits this ratio is how large C2 can be. A practical limit is given in reference [Rhode]. The maximum allowable limit for C3 gets larger for a higher Q inductor and a higher gain transistor.

Appendix: Modeling of a VCO from Data Points

Offset	Phase Noise	Scalar Units
f3=1 kHz	-90 dBc/Hz	$10^{\frac{-90}{10}} = 1.0000 \times 10^{-9}$
f2=100 kHz	-115 dBc/Hz	$10^{\frac{-11.5}{10}} = 1.9953 \times 10^{-10}$
f1=10 MHz	-155 dBc/Hz	$10^{\frac{-90}{10}} = 6.3096 \times 10^{-16}$

$$\frac{P2 - P3}{\log\left(\frac{f2}{f3}\right)} = -27 \qquad \textit{(34.29)}$$

$$\frac{P2 - P3}{\log\left(\frac{f2}{f3}\right)} = -18.33 \qquad \textit{(34.30)}$$

From the above two results, one would expect this to lead to a system of 3 equations and 3 unknowns. Expressed in matrix form, it is:

$$\textit{(34.31)}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} n3 \\ n2 \\ n0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f3}\right)^3 & \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f3}\right)^3 & 0 \\ \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^3 & \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f2}\right)^3 & 1 \\ 0 & \left(\frac{f_{default}}{f0}\right)^3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \bullet \begin{bmatrix} 1.0000 \times 10^{-9} \\ 1.9953 \times 10^{-9} \\ 6.3096 \times 10^{-9} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 \times 10^3 & 1 \times 10^2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \times 10^{-6} & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \bullet \begin{bmatrix} 1.0000 \times 10^{-9} \\ 1.9953 \times 10^{-9} \\ 6.3096 \times 10^{-9} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 8.8942 \times 10^{-11} \\ 1.1058 \times 10^{-10} \\ 5.2037 \times 10^{-16} \end{bmatrix}$$

Parameter	Value
n3	8.8942×10^{-9}
n2	11058×10^{-9}
n0	5.2037×10^{-9}

The noise contribution can be translated to any offset via the formulae below:

$$N3(f) = 10 \bullet \log \left[\frac{n3 \bullet \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f} \right)^3}{10} \right] \tag{34.32}$$

$$N2(f) = 10 \bullet \log \left[\frac{n2 \bullet \left(\dfrac{f_{default}}{f} \right)^2}{10} \right] \tag{34.33}$$

$$N0 = 10 \bullet \log \left[\frac{n0}{10} \right] \tag{34.34}$$

f	L(f)	N3(f)	N2(f)	N0
1 kHz	-70.0000	- 70.5090	- 79.5631	-152.8369
8.0429 kHz	-94.6601	-97.6713	-97.6713	-152.8369
10 kHz	-97.0000	-100.5090	- 99.5631	-152.8369
100 kHz	-119.2252	-130.5090	-119.5631	-152.8369
1 MHz	-139.3301	-160.5090	-139.5631	-152.8369
4.6099 MHz	-149.8228	-180.4196	-152.8369	-152.8369
10 MHz	-151.9994	-190.5090	-159.5631	-152.8369

The $1/f^3$ to $1/f^2$ corner point, which is where these two noise sources contribute equally can be calculated as follows:

$$f_{Corner3} = f_{default} \bullet \frac{n3}{n2} \tag{34.35}$$

The $1/f^2$ to phase noise floor corner point, which is where these two noise sources contribute equally can be calculated as follows:

$$f_{CornerF} = f_{default} \bullet \sqrt{\frac{n2}{n0}}$$

(34.36)

Corner Frequency	Symbol	Value
$1/f^3$ to $1/f^2$	$f_{Corner3}$	8.0429 kHz
$1/f^2$ to phase noise floor	$f_{CornerF}$	4.6099 MHz

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Chapter 35   Other PLL Design and Performance Issues

Introduction

This is a collection of small topics that have not been addressed in other chapters. Included topics are N counter determination, the relationship between phase margin and peaking, and counter sensitivity.

N Counter Determination for a Fixed Output Frequency PLL

In the case that the output frequency of the PLL is to be fixed, the choice of a comparison frequency may not be so obvious. The comparison frequency should always be chosen as large as possible.   Recall the relationship between comparison frequency and output frequency:

$$Fout = \left(\frac{N}{R}\right) \bullet Xtal \qquad\qquad (35.1)$$

It therefore follows that:

$$\frac{N}{R} = \frac{Fout}{Xtal} \qquad\qquad (35.2)$$

Since the output frequency and crystal frequency are both known quantities, the right hand side of this equation is known and can be reduced to a lowest terms fraction. Once this lowest terms fraction is known, the numerator is the N value and the denominator is the R value. If this solution results in illegal N divider ratios, or comparison frequencies that are higher than the phase detector can operate at, then double the N and R values. If there are still problems, then triple them. Keep increasing these quantities until there are no illegal divide ratios and the comparison frequency is within the specification of the part. In the case where there is freedom to choose the crystal frequency, it is best to choose it so that it has a lot of common factors with the output frequency so that the N value is as small as possible.

On the Pitfalls of Sensitivity

Sensitivity is a feature of real world PLLs. The N counter will actually miscount if too little or too much power is applied to the high frequency input. The limits on these power levels are referred to as the sensitivity. The PLL sensitivity changes as a function of frequency. At the higher frequencies, the curve degrades because the of process limitations, and at the lower frequencies, the curve can also degrade because of problems with the counters making thresholding decisions (the edge rate of the signal is too slow). At the lower frequencies, this limitation can sometimes be addressed by running a square wave instead of a sine wave into the high frequency input of the PLL. Sensitivity can also change from part to part, over voltage, or over temperature. When the power level of the high frequency input approaches sensitivity limits, this can introduce spurs and degradation in phase noise. When the power level gets even closer to this limit, or exceeds it, then the PLL loses lock.

Power Level (dbm)

Upper Sensitivity
Limit

Useful Operating Range of the
PLL Semiconductor Chip

Lower Sensitivity
Limit
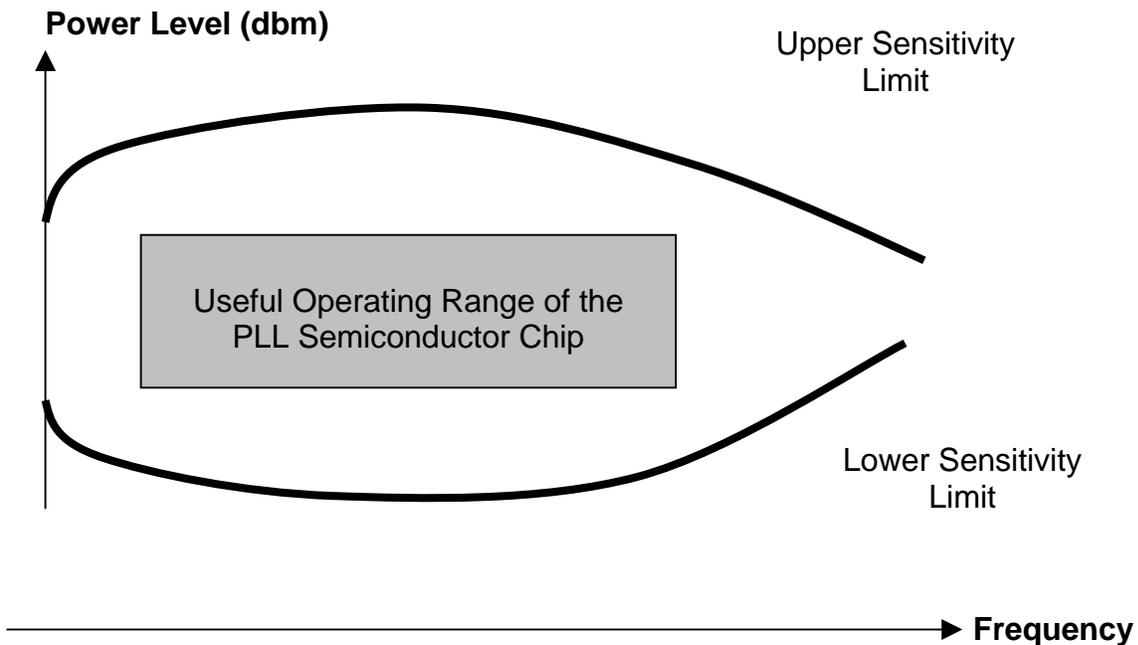
Frequency

Figure 35.1 *Typical Sensitivity Curve for a PLL*

The sensitivity curve applies to both the desired signal from the VCO and all of its harmonics. VCO harmonics can especially be troublesome when a part designed for a very high operating frequency is used at a very low operating frequency. Unexpected sensitivity problems can also be agitated by poor matching between the VCO output and the high frequency input of the PLL.

Although sensitivity issues are most common with the *N* counter, because it usually involves the higher frequency input, these same concepts apply to the *R* counter as well. In order to for the sensitivity of the PLL to be tested in production, it is necessary to have access to the *R* and *N* counters. These test modes are also an excellent way of diagnosing and debugging sensitivity problems. Sensitivity related problems also tend to show a strong dependence on the Vcc voltage and temperature. If poor impedance matching is causing the sensitivity problem, then sometimes pressing one's finger on the part will temporarily make the problem go away. This is because the input impedance of the part is being impacted.

Sensitivity problems with either the *N* or *R* can cause spurs to appear, increase phase noise, or cause the PLL to tune to a different frequency than it is programmed to. In more severe cases, they can cause the PLL to steer the VCO to one of the power supply rails. *N* counter sensitivity problems usually cause the VCO to go higher than it should. *R* counter sensitivity problems usually cause the PLL to tune lower than it should. In either case, the VCO output is typically very noisy. Figure 35.2 shows a PLL locking much lower than it is programmed to lock due to an *R* counter sensitivity problem. It is also possible for the *N* counter to track a higher harmonic of the VCO signal, which causes the PLL to tune the VCO lower than it should. This problem is most common when parts are operated at frequencies much lower than they are designed to run at. One should be aware that it is possible to be operating within the datasheet specifications for sensitivity with a few dB of margin, and still have degraded phase noise as a result of a

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

sensitivity problem. This is because the datasheet specification for sensitivity is a measurement of when the counters actually miscount, not when they become noisy.
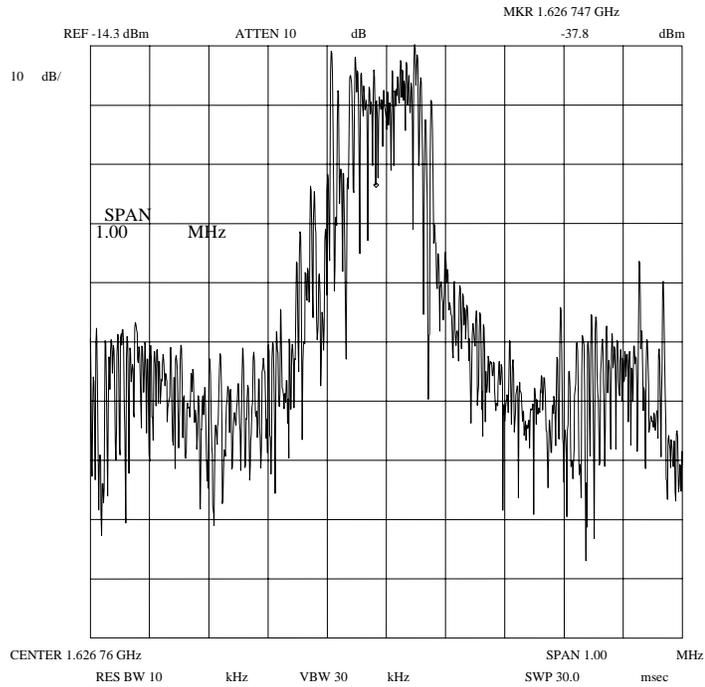
Figure 35.2 *PLL Locking to Wrong Frequency Due to R Counter Sensitivity Problem*

PLL Accidentally Locking to VCO Harmonics

All VCOs put out harmonics. If the harmonic levels are too high, the PLL may lock to them instead of the intended signal. But what is too high? The theoretical result can be found by looking at the sum of two sine waves and inspecting what amplitude of a harmonic causes a miscount. For instance, when considering the second harmonic, it is found that if the voltage level is exactly one-half of the fundamental, which is 6 dB down, the PLL would theoretically be just about to miscount.
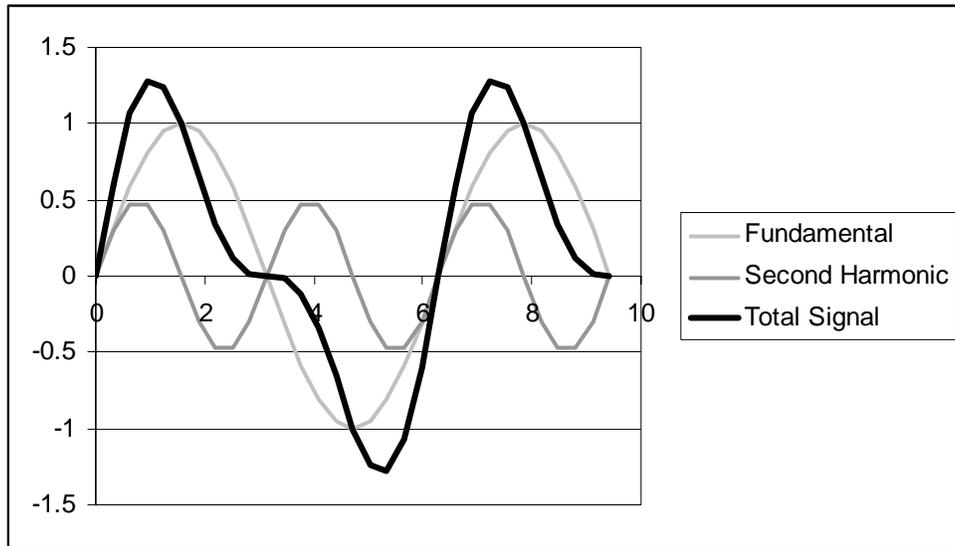
Figure 35.3 *Second Harmonic Illustration*

Assuming that these signals are in phase, the maximum tolerable harmonic for the higher order harmonics can also be calculated. Note that the even harmonics are much more of a problem than the odd harmonics. In fact, if the odd harmonics are in just the right mixture to make a square wave, the sensitivity is actually theoretically improved.

Harmonic	Maximum Tolerable Level *dBc*
2nd	-6.0
3rd	0.0
4th	-12.0
5th	-1.9
6th	-15.6
7th	-4.3
8th	-5.3
9th	-6.2
10th	-7.0

Table 35.1 *Theoretical Maximum Tolerable Harmonics*

The table above gives a theoretical maximum for the harmonic levels. However, as the harmonics approach the maximum tolerable levels, it becomes easier for any noise riding on the signal to cause the counters to miscount. There is also the fact that the PLL sensitivity varies as a function of frequency and will probably be different for the fundamental and harmonic. A LMX2326 PLL was tested with two signal generators. One signal generator simulated the fundamental frequency, where the second signal generator was used to simulate the second harmonic. It was found that the closer that the main signal was to the sensitivity limits, the more sensitive it was to the second harmonic. The sensitivity numbers used for the calculations here are actual measured data, not the datasheet limits, which tend to be much more conservative to accommodate for voltage, temperature, and process. The Normalized Harmonic is calculated by finding the harmonic level as normal, but   then adjusting this:

$$\textit{Normalized Harmonic =} \hspace{4cm} \textit{(35.3)}$$
(Harmonic Signal Strength - Fundamental Signal Strength)
+ (Sensitivity to Fundamental Signal - Sensitivity to Harmonic Signal)

Sensitivity Margin	Max Tolerable Normalized Harmonic
1 dB	-12 dBc
5 dB	-5 dBc
10 dB	-2 dBc
20 dB	0 dBc

Table 35.2 *Maximum Tolerable Normalized Second Harmonic*

For instance, consider an application where the user is operating at 400 MHz output with a +2.0 dBm signal. Further suppose that the sensitivity limit on this part is measured to be –8 dBm at 400 MHz and –20 dBm at 800 MHz. This means that this application has 10 dB margin on the sensitivity and can tolerate a normalized harmonic of –2 dBc, which translates to a harmonic level of –12 dBc after the sensitivity difference is considered. However, this does not have any margin. So if one adds in 5 dB margin, that works out to –17 dBc. Note that this table is empirical and not exact, but does serve as a rough guideline as to what harmonic levels are tolerable.

Note that there is a discrepancy between the theoretical results and the measured results. Theoretically, a second harmonic of greater than –6 dBc would cause a miscount, yet the measured results show 0 dBc is tolerable before considering sensitivity. The true answer probably lies somewhere between the theoretical and measured results, but is not critical to be exact because the whole goal is to stay away from these marginal designs.

Cusping Effects for Spurs

In some circumstances when the loop bandwidth is wide relative to the comparison frequency, there can be a cusping effect. This effect occurs at the same offset frequency as the reference spurs and can sometimes be beneficial. The root cause of this is the discrete sampling action of the phase detector. Although not discussed in this book, the discrete sampling action of the phase detector can change the transfer function of the PLL in this condition. It should be emphasized that this phenomenon is relatively rare and these effects are very small for most designs.
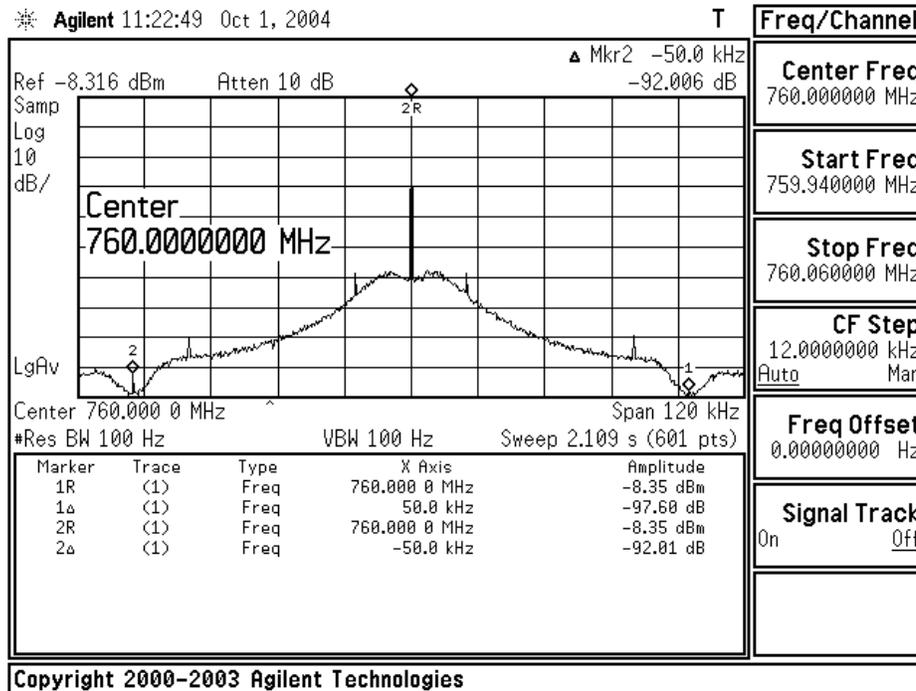
Figure 35.4 Example of Cusping

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Common Problems and Debugging Techniques for PLLs

Things often do not work the same way in practice as they do on paper. Or for that matter, the first PLL design often does not work at all. This section gives three common steps to get a PLL design up and working.

Step 1: *Confirm that the PLL is Responding to Commands Sent*

This is actually one of the most common problems. If a PC is being used to drive the PLL programming, this step is greatly simplified. Usually there is a bit that can be used to power the PLL up and down. If this bit is toggled, the current consumption should change, provided there is sufficient resolution on the current meter. Also, the high frequency input pins, and the crystal input pin usually have a DC bias level when the part is powered up (typically 1.6 volts), and zero volts when the part is powered down. If there is no power down bit, then sometimes there are I/O pins that can be toggled and observed. If none of these things can be done, proceed to *Step 2*. If there is a problem with this step, there are several possible causes.

If a PC is being used, the parallel port may not be working, or there could be a conflict. The operating instructions for the CodeLoader 2 software at wireless.national.com has a lot of information on things that could go wrong with the parallel port. There could be problems with the voltage levels also. Low pass filters put on the CLOCK and DATA lines can also cause programming problems. Another possibility is that the PLL is actually being programmed, but is powered down due to the state of some bit or some pin. Some PLLs will also not program if the crystal reference or VCO is not connected.

Step 2: *Confirm that the Carrier Frequency Can Be Changed*

The next step is to confirm that the carrier frequency can be moved. This can be done by toggling the phase detector polarity bit or programming the counters. Another technique is to program the *N* counter to zero and it's maximum value to see if the carrier will move.

Besides the reasons presented in *Step 1*, there are several things that could cause this problem. One common problem is that the PCB board actually accommodates a higher loop filter order than is needed, and 0 Ω resistors are not placed for the higher order resistors. Another possibility is that the loop filter is shorted to ground. This can be checked with a ohmmeter or it should also be apparent from the current consumption.

Sometimes, it is the case that the VCO frequency actually can be changed and the user makes some sort of mistake. For instance, if the span used on the spectrum analyzer is too large relative to the VCO tuning range, then it could appear that the PLL frequency is not changing, when it actually is. Many spectrum analyzers show a frequency spike at 0 Hz, which can sometimes also be mistaken for a signal. Yet another mistake sometimes done is to attempt to tune the VCO beyond its frequency range. In this case, it just stays at the frequency rails.

Step 3: In the Case of a PLL Carrier that Does React, but Shows Peaking, Instability, Lock to the Wrong Frequency, or Bad Phase Noise

Peaking and Instability

One possible problem is for the loop filter components to be wrong. One quick way to diagnose any loop filter issue is to observe the impact of reducing the loop gain, *K*. Also, if a loop filter is not very stable, this also shows up as an excessive lock time with a lot of ringing. This can be done by reducing the charge pump current or increasing the *N* counter value. A common mistake is to accidentally switch the capacitors *C1* and *C2* in the loop filter. Usually, the PLL will lock in this case, but there will be severe peaking. Another thing that can cause peaking or instability is when the VCO input capacitance is large compared to the capacitors it adds in parallel with. Yet a third common problem is for the VCO gain or charge pump gain to be off, which can cause peaking and instability. Aside from issues with the loop filter, sensitivity issues can cause a "Christmas Tree" spectrum which looks like instability.

Lock to the Wrong Frequency

The first thing to observe here is if the PLL locks clean or if there is a lot of noise. If there is a lot of noise, the cause could be sensitivity or harmonics. Both of these have already been discussed. One other mistake is to mistake one of the VCO harmonics for the actual carrier. If the PLL locks clean, this is more likely to be a programming error, or a attempt to program an illegal divide ratio.

Bad Phase Noise

There are many potential causes for this. If a signal generator is being used, assume it is dirty unless it can be proven otherwise. Another issue is when the loop bandwidth of the PLL is too narrow to filter out the VCO noise. It may look flat, but the VCO noise can crop inside the loop bandwidth. Aside from these causes, there are many other things that can cause degraded phase noise.

Conclusion and Author's Parting Remarks

This chapter has addressed some of the issues not addressed in other chapters. The reader who has reached this point in this book should hopefully have an appreciation on how involved PLL design and simulation can be.

It was the aim of this book to tell the reader everything they wanted to know, and things they probably never cared to know about the designing and simulating a PLL frequency synthesizer. However, there are still many other topics that have been left out. The concepts presented in this book have come from a solid theoretical understanding backed with measured data and practical examples. All of the data in this book was gathered from various National Semiconductor Synthesizer chips, which include the *R* counter, *N* counter, charge pump, and phase-frequency detector.

Supplemental Information

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition
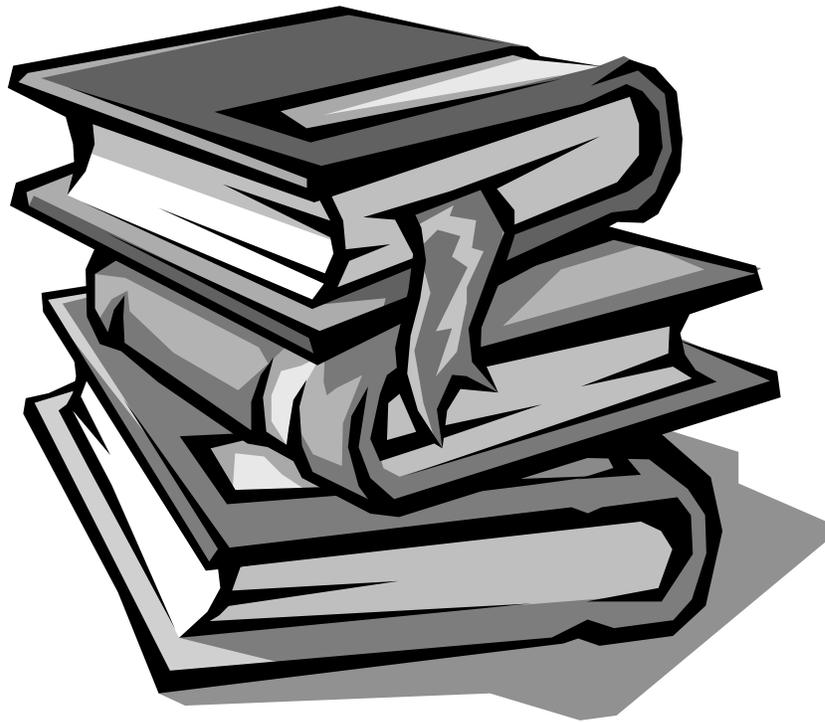
Chapter 36   Glossary and Abbreviation List

Atten

The attenuation index, which is intended to give an idea of the spurious attenuation added by the components *R3* and *C3* in the loop filter of other loop filter design papers, but not this book. Also used in reference to the attenuation of a resistive pad in dB.

Bloomer

(slang) A very high spur that –30 dBc or higher and part of a collection of undesired spurs. If the spur is in-band, the spur needs to be –10 dBc or higher to be classified as a bloomer.

Channel and Channel Spacing

In many applications, a set of frequencies is to be generated that are evenly spaced apart. These frequencies to be generated are often referred to as channels and the spacing between these channels is often referred to as the channel spacing.

Charge Pump

Used in conjunction with the phase-frequency detector, this device outputs a current of constant amplitude, but variable polarity and duty cycle. It is usually modeled as a device that outputs a steady current of value equal to the time-averaged value of the output current.

Closed Loop Transfer Function , *CL(s)*

This is given by $\dfrac{G(s)}{1+G(s)\bullet H}$, where $H=\dfrac{1}{N}$ and *G(s)* is the Open Loop Transfer Function

Comparison Frequency, *Fcomp*

The crystal reference frequency divided by the *R* counter value. This is also sometimes called the reference frequency.

Continuous Time Approximation

This is where the discrete current pulses of the charge pump are modeled as a continuous current with magnitude equal to the time-averaged value of the current pulses.

Control Voltage , *Vtune*

The voltage that controls the frequency output of a VCO.

Crystal Reference, *Xtal*

A stable and accurate frequency that is used for a reference.

Damping Factor , ζ

For a second order transient response, this determines the shape of the exponential envelope that multiplies the frequency ringing.

Dead Zone

This is a property of the phase frequency detector caused by component delays. Since the components making up the PFD have a non-zero delay time, this causes the phase detector to be insensitive to very small phase errors.

Dead Zone Elimination Circuitry

This circuitry can be added to the phase detector to avoid having it operating in the dead zone. This usually works by causing the charge pump to always come on for some minimum amount of time.

Delta Sigma PLL

A fractional PLL that achieves fractional N values by alternating the N counter value between two or more values. Usually, the case of two values is considered a trivial case.

Fractional Modulus, *FDEN*

The fractional denominator used for in the fractional word in a fractional PLL.

Fractional *N* PLL

A PLL in which the *N* divider value can be a fraction.

Fractional Spur

Spurs that occur in a fractional N PLL at multiples of the comparison frequency divided by the fractional modulus that are caused by the PLL.

Frequency Jump, *Fj*

When discussing the transient response of the PLL, this refers to the frequency difference between the frequency the PLL is initially at, and the final target frequency.

Frequency Synthesizer

This is a PLL that has a high frequency divider (N divider), which can be used to synthesize a wide variety of signals.

Frequency Tolerance, *tol*

In regards to calculating or measuring lock time, this is the frequency error that is acceptable. If the frequency error is less than the frequency tolerance, the PLL is said to be in lock. Typical values for this are 500 Hz or 1 kHz.

Gamma Optimization Parameter, γ

A loop filter parameter that has some impact on the lock time. Usually chosen roughly close to one, but not exactly.

$$\gamma = \frac{\omega c^2 \bullet T2 \bullet A1}{A0}$$

G(s)

This represents the loop filter impedance multiplied by the VCO gain and charge pump gain, divided by s.

$$G(s) = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{s} \bullet Z(s)$$

K

This is the loop gain constant.

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}$$

Kvco

The gain of the VCO expressed in MHz/V.

Kϕ

This is the gain of the charge pump expressed in mA/(2π radians)

Locked PLL

A PLL such that the output frequency divided by *N* is equal to the comparison frequency within acceptable tolerances.

Lock Time

The time it takes for a PLL to switch from an initial frequency to a final frequency for a given frequency jump to within a given tolerance.

Loop Bandwidth , ωc or *Fc*

The frequency at which the magnitude of the open loop transfer function is equal to 1. ωc is the loop bandwidth in radians and Fc is the loop bandwidth in Hz.

Loop Filter

A low pass filter that takes the output currents of the charge pump and turns them into a voltage, used as the tuning voltage for the VCO. *Z(s)* is often used to represent the impedance of this function. Although not perfectly accurate, some like to view the loop filter as an integrator.

Loop Gain Constant

This is an intermediate calculation that is used to derive many results.

$$K = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco}{N}$$

Modulation Domain Analyzer

A piece of RF equipment that displays the frequency vs. time of an input signal.

Modulation Index , β

This is in reference to a sinusoidally modulated RF signal. The formula is given below, where *F(t)* stands for the frequency of the signal.

$$F(t) = const. + F_{dev} \bullet cos(\omega_m \bullet t)$$

$$\beta = \frac{F_{dev}}{\omega_m}$$

N Divider

A divider that divides the high frequency (and phase) output by a factor of N.

Natural Frequency , ωn

For a second order transient response, this is the frequency of the ringing of the frequency response.

Open Loop Transfer Function, *G(s)*

The transfer function which is obtained by taking the product of the VCO Gain, Charge Pump Gain and Loop Filter Impedance divided by N.

$$G(s) = \frac{K\phi \bullet Kvco \bullet Z(s)}{N \bullet s}$$

Overshoot

For the second order transient response, this is the amount that the target frequency is initially exceeded before it finally settles in to the proper frequency

Phase Detector

A device that produces an output signal that is proportional to the phase difference of its two inputs.

Phase-Frequency Detector, PFD

Very similar to a phase detector, but it also produces an output signal that is proportional to the frequency error as well.

Phase-Locked Loop, PLL

A circuit that uses feedback control to produce an output frequency from a fixed crystal reference frequency. Note that a PLL does not necessarily have an *N* divider. In the case that it does, it is referred to as a frequency synthesizer, which is the subject of this book.

Phase Margin, *ϕ*

180 degrees minus phase of the open loop transfer function at the loop bandwidth. Loop filters are typically designed for a phase margin between 30 and 70 degrees. Simulations show that around 48 degrees yields the fastest lock time. The formula is given below:

$$\phi = 180 - \angle C(j \bullet \omega c)$$

Phase Noise

This is noise on the output phase of the PLL. Since phase and frequency are related, it is visible on a spectrum analyzer. Within the loop bandwidth, the PLL is the dominant noise source. The metric used is dBc/Hz (decibel relative to the carrier per Hz). This is typically normalized to a 1 Hz bandwidth by subtracting 10*(Resolution Bandwidth) of the spectrum analyzer.

PLL Performance, Simulation, and Design © 2006, Fourth Edition

Phase Noise Floor

This is the phase noise minus *20•log(N).* Note that this is generally not a constant because it tends to be dominated by the charge pump, which gets noisier at higher comparison frequencies.

Prescaler

Frequency dividers included as part of the *N* divider used to divide the high frequency VCO signal down to a lower frequency.

Quality Factor (Q)

The real ratio of the imaginary reactance to the real resistance of an inductor at a given frequency.

R Divider

A divider that divides the crystal reference frequency (and phase) by a factor of R.

Reference Spurs

Undesired frequency spikes on the output of the PLL caused by leakage currents and mismatch of the charge pump that FM modulate the VCO tuning voltage.

Resolution Bandwidth , *RBW*

See definition for Spectrum Analyzer.

Sensitivity

Power limitations to the high frequency input of the PLL chip (from the VCO). At these limits, the counters start miscounting the frequency and do not divide correctly.

Smith Chart

A chart that shows how the impedance of a device varies over frequency.

Spectrum Analyzer

A piece of RF equipment that displays the power vs. frequency for an input signal. This piece of equipment works by taking a frequency ramp function and mixing it with the input frequency signal. The output of the mixer is filtered with a bandpass filter, which has a bandwidth equal to the resolution bandwidth. The narrower the bandwidth of this filter, the less noise that is let through.

Spurious Attenuation

This refers to the degree to which the loop filter attenuates the reference spurs. This can be seen in the closed loop transfer function.

Spur Gain, *SG*

This refers to the magnitude of the open loop transfer function evaluated at the comparison frequency. This gives a good indication of how the reference spurs of two loop filters compare.

_T31_ Ratio

This is the ratio of the poles of a third order loop filter. If this ratio is 0, then this is actually a second order filter. If this ratio is 1, then this turns out to be the value for this parameter that yields the lowest reference spurs.

_T41_ Ratio

This is the ratio of the poles *T4* to the pole *T1* in a fourth order filter. If this ratio is zero, then the loop filter is third order or less.

_T43_ Ratio

This is the ratio of the pole *T4* to the pole *T3*. A rough rule of thumb is to choose this no larger than the *T31* ratio.

Temperature Compensated Crystal Oscillator, TCXO

A crystal that is temperature compensated for improved frequency accuracy

Varactor Diode

This is a diode inside a VCO that is reverse biased. As the tuning voltage to the VCO changes,

it varies the junction capacitance of this diode, which in turn varies the VCO voltage.

Voltage Controlled Oscillator, VCO

A device that produces an output frequency that is dependent on an input (Control) voltage.

Abbreviation List

Loop Filter Parameters

A0, A1, A2, A3	Loop Filter Coefficients
C1, C2, C3, C4	Loop filter capacitor values
CL(s)	Closed loop PLL transfer function
f	Frequency of interest in Hz
Fc	Loop bandwidth in kHz
Fcomp	Comparison frequency
FDEN	Fractional denominator or fractional modulus
Fj	Frequency jump for lock time
FNUM	Fractional Numerator
Fout	VCO output frequency
fn	VCO frequency divided by N
fr	XTAL frequency divided by R
Fspur	Spur Frequency
G(s)	Loop filter transfer function
H	PLL feedback, which is 1/N
i, j	The complex number $\sqrt{-1}$
k	Fractional spur order
K	Loop gain constant.
Kϕ	Charge pump gain in mA/(2π radians)
Kvco	VCO gain in MHz/V
M	Loop bandwidth multiplier for Fastlock
N	The *N* counter Value
PFD	Phase/Frequency Detector
PLL	Phase-Locked Loop
r	Ratio of the spur frequency to the loop bandwidth
R	The *R* counter Value
Q	The quality factor of the inductor = Reactance/Resistance
R2, R3, R4	Loop filter resistor values
s	Laplace transform variable = $2\pi \bullet f \bullet j$
T2	The zero in the loop filter transfer function

T1, T3, T4	The poles in the loop filter transfer function
T31	The ratio of the pole *T3* to the pole *T1*
T41	The ratio of the pole *T4* to the pole *T1*
T43	The ratio of the pole *T4* to the pole *T3*
tol	Frequency tolerance for lock time
Vcc	The main power supply voltage
Vdo	The output voltage of the PLL charge pump
VCO	Voltage Controlled Oscillator
Vpp	The power supply voltage for the PLL charge pump
XTAL	Crystal Reference or Crystal Reference Frequency
Z(s)	Loop filter impedance

Greek Symbols

β	The modulation index
ϕ	The phase margin
ϕr	The XTAL phase divided by R
ϕn	The VCO phase divided by N
ω	The frequency of interest in radians
ωc	The loop bandwidth in radians
ωn	Natural Frequency
ζ	Damping Factor
γ	Gamma Optimization Parameter

Chapter 37   References

Best, Roland E.,   *Phase-Locked Loop Theory, Design, and Applications,* 3rd ed, McGraw-Hill, 1995

Danzer, Paul (editor) *The ARRL Handbook (Chapter 19)* The American Radio Relay
    League. 1997

Franklin, G., et. al., *Feedback Control of Dynamic Systems,* 3rd ed, Addison-Wesley, 1994

Gardner, F., *Charge Pump Phase-Lock Loops*, **IEEE Trans. Commun**. Vol COM-28, pp. 1849-1858, Nov. 1980

Gardner, F., *Phaselock Techniques*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, 1980

Keese, William O.   *An Analysis and Performance Evaluation for a Passive Filter Design technique for Charge Pump Phase-Locked Loops.*   AN-1001, National Semiconductor Wireless Databook

Lascari, Lance   *Accurate Phase Noise Prediction in PLL Synthesizers*, **Applied Microwave & Wireless,** Vol.12, No. 5, May 2000

Tranter, W.H. and R.E. Ziemer *Principles of Communications Systems, Modulation, and Noise*, 2nd ed, Houghton Mifflin Company, 1985

Weisstein, Eric   *CRC Concise Encyclopedia of Mathematics*, CRC Press 1998

Chapter 38   Useful Websites and Online RF Tools

http://www.anadigics.com/engineers/Receiver.html

Online receiver chain analysis tool for calculation of gain, noise figure, third order intercept point, and more.

http://www.emclab.umr.edu/pcbtlc/microstrip.html

This is an online microstrip impedance calculator that is useful in calculating the impedance of a PCB trace. It is very easy to use and also can be used to calculate the desired trace width in order to produce a desired impedance

http://ndbanerjee.home.insightbb.com

The author's personal website with both personal and professional information.

http://www.radioelectronicschool.com/raecourse.html

This page has many different lecture notes for a broad variety of electrical engineering topics.

http://tools.rfdude.com/

Lance Lascari's RF Tools Page. The Mathcad based PLL design worksheet is pretty good.

http://www.martindalecenter.com/Calculators.html

Jim Martindale's calculators for everything you can think of.

http://www.treasure-troves.com

The "Rolls Royce" of mathematics online reference site on the web. There is also a corresponding book, which is excellent. Compiled by Eric Weisstein.

http://wireless.national.com

National Semiconductor's wireless portal site. It contains the EasyPLL program for PLL selection, design, and simulation. The EasyPLL program is largely based on this book. There is also analog university which contains self-paced coursework for PLLs complete with certificates of completion that can be earned. There is also programming software, evaluation boards, datasheets, and much more.